AUCHE 110: GENERAL CHEMISTRY I



Brian Rempel
University of Alberta Augustana Campus

LibreTexts™

AUCHE 110: General Chemistry I (Rempel)

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (https://LibreTexts.org) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide and accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden born from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.



LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXone Expert and was supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptions contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at https://LibreTexts.org.

This text was compiled on 06/07/2025

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Licensing

1: Review

- 1.1: The Scientific Method
- 1.2: SI Units
- 1.3: Measurements
- 1.4: Significant Figures
- 1.5: Converting Units
- 1.6: Atomic Theory
- 1.7: Molecules and Ions
- 1.8: Polyatomic Ions
- 1.9: An Introduction to the Periodic Table
- 1.10: Measurement and Scale - The Mole Concept
- 1.11: Molar Mass
- 1.12: Mole-Mass Conversions
- 1.13: Concentration and Molarity
- 1.14: Balancing Chemical Equations
- 1.15: Stoichiometric Calculations- Amounts of Reactants and Products
- 1.16: Calculations Involving a Limiting Reactant

2: Molecules and Shapes

- 2.1: Prelude to Chemical Bonding and Molecular Geometry
- 2.2: Ionic Bonding
- 2.3: Covalent Bonding
- 2.4: Metallic Bonds
- 2.5: Electronegativity
- 2.6: Lewis Symbols and Structures
- 2.7: Formal Charges and Resonance
- 2.8: Organic Structural Representations- Bond-Line Notation
- 2.9: Functional Groups and Classes of Organic Compounds
- 2.10: Molecular Structure and Polarity

3: States of Matter

- 3.1: Overview of States of Matter
- 3.2: Intermolecular forces
- 3.3: Crystalline and Amorphous Solids
- 3.4: The Solid State of Matter
- 3.5: Gaseous Elements and Compounds
- 3.6: Gas Pressure
- 3.7: The Ideal Gas Law
- 3.8: Gas Mixtures
- 3.9: Kinetic Theory of Gases
- 3.10: Real Gases
- 3.11: Unique Properties of Liquids
- 3.12: Solubility
- 3.13: Vapor Pressure

4: Equilibrium

- 4.1: Prelude to Equilibrium
- 4.2: Chemical Equilibria
- 4.3: Equilibrium Constants
- 4.4: Shifting Equilibria - Le Chatelier’s Principle
- 4.5: Equilibrium Calculations
- 4.6: Precipitation and Dissolution

5: Acids and Bases

- 5.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases
- 5.2: pH and pOH
- 5.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases
- 5.4: Hydrolysis of Salt Solutions
- 5.5: Polyprotic Acids
- 5.6: Lewis Acids and Bases

6: Buffers and Titrations

- 6.1: Buffers
- 6.2: Acid-Base Titrations

Index

Glossary

Detailed Licensing

Licensing

*A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in **Back Matter/Detailed Licensing**.*

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

1: Review

1.1: The Scientific Method
1.2: SI Units
1.3: Measurements
1.4: Significant Figures
1.5: Converting Units
1.6: Atomic Theory
1.7: Molecules and Ions
1.8: Polyatomic Ions
1.9: An Introduction to the Periodic Table
1.10: Measurement and Scale - The Mole Concept
1.11: Molar Mass
1.12: Mole-Mass Conversions
1.13: Concentration and Molarity
1.14: Balancing Chemical Equations
1.15: Stoichiometric Calculations- Amounts of Reactants and Products
1.16: Calculations Involving a Limiting Reactant

1: Review is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

1.1: The Scientific Method

Learning Objectives

- To identify the components of the scientific method

Scientists search for answers to questions and solutions to problems by using a procedure called the **scientific method**. This procedure consists of making observations, formulating hypotheses, and designing experiments, which in turn lead to additional observations, hypotheses, and experiments in repeated cycles (Figure 1.1.1).

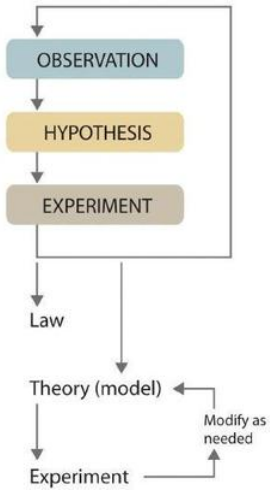


Figure 1.1.1: The Scientific Method. As depicted in this flowchart, the scientific method consists of making observations, formulating hypotheses, and designing experiments. A scientist may enter the cycle at any point.

Observations can be qualitative or quantitative. Qualitative observations describe properties or occurrences in ways that do not rely on numbers. Examples of qualitative observations include the following: the outside air temperature is cooler during the winter season, table salt is a crystalline solid, sulfur crystals are yellow, and dissolving a penny in dilute nitric acid forms a blue solution and a brown gas. Quantitative observations are measurements, which by definition consist of both a number and a unit. Examples of quantitative observations include the following: the melting point of crystalline sulfur is 115.21 °C, and 35.9 grams of table salt —whose chemical name is sodium chloride—dissolve in 100 grams of water at 20 °C. An example of a quantitative observation was the initial observation leading to the modern theory of the dinosaurs' extinction: iridium concentrations in sediments dating to 66 million years ago were found to be 20–160 times higher than normal. The development of this theory is a good exemplar of the scientific method in action (see Figure 1.1.2 below).

After deciding to learn more about an observation or a set of observations, scientists generally begin an investigation by forming a **hypothesis**, a tentative explanation for the observation(s). The hypothesis may not be correct, but it puts the scientist's understanding of the system being studied into a form that can be tested. For example, the observation that we experience alternating periods of light and darkness corresponding to observed movements of the sun, moon, clouds, and shadows is consistent with either of two hypotheses:

1. Earth rotates on its axis every 24 hours, alternately exposing one side to the sun, or
2. The sun revolves around Earth every 24 hours.

Suitable experiments can be designed to choose between these two alternatives. For the disappearance of the dinosaurs, the hypothesis was that the impact of a large extraterrestrial object caused their extinction. Unfortunately (or perhaps fortunately), this hypothesis does not lend itself to direct testing by any obvious experiment, but scientists collected additional data that either support or refute it.

After a hypothesis has been formed, scientists conduct experiments to test its validity. **Experiments** are systematic observations or measurements, preferably made under controlled conditions—that is, under conditions in which a single variable changes. For example, in the dinosaur extinction scenario, iridium concentrations were measured worldwide and compared. A properly designed and executed experiment enables a scientist to determine whether the original hypothesis is valid. Experiments often demonstrate that the hypothesis is incorrect or that it must be modified. More experimental data are then collected and analyzed, at which point

a scientist may begin to think that the results are sufficiently reproducible (i.e., dependable) to merit being summarized in a **law**, a verbal or mathematical description of a phenomenon that allows for general predictions. A law simply says what happens; it does not address the question of why.

One example of a law, the Law of Definite Proportions, which was discovered by the French scientist Joseph Proust (1754–1826), states that a chemical substance always contains the same proportions of elements by mass. Thus sodium chloride (table salt) always contains the same proportion by mass of sodium to chlorine, in this case 39.34% sodium and 60.66% chlorine by mass, and sucrose (table sugar) is always 42.11% carbon, 6.48% hydrogen, and 51.41% oxygen by mass. Some solid compounds do not strictly obey the law of definite proportions. The law of definite proportions should seem obvious—we would expect the composition of sodium chloride to be consistent—but the head of the US Patent Office did not accept it as a fact until the early 20th century.

Whereas a law states only what happens, a **theory** attempts to explain why nature behaves as it does. Laws are unlikely to change greatly over time unless a major experimental error is discovered. In contrast, a theory, by definition, is incomplete and imperfect, evolving with time to explain new facts as they are discovered. The theory developed to explain the extinction of the dinosaurs, for example, is that Earth occasionally encounters small- to medium-sized asteroids, and these encounters may have unfortunate implications for the continued existence of most species. This theory is by no means proven, but it is consistent with the bulk of evidence amassed to date. Figure 1.1.2 summarizes the application of the scientific method in this case.

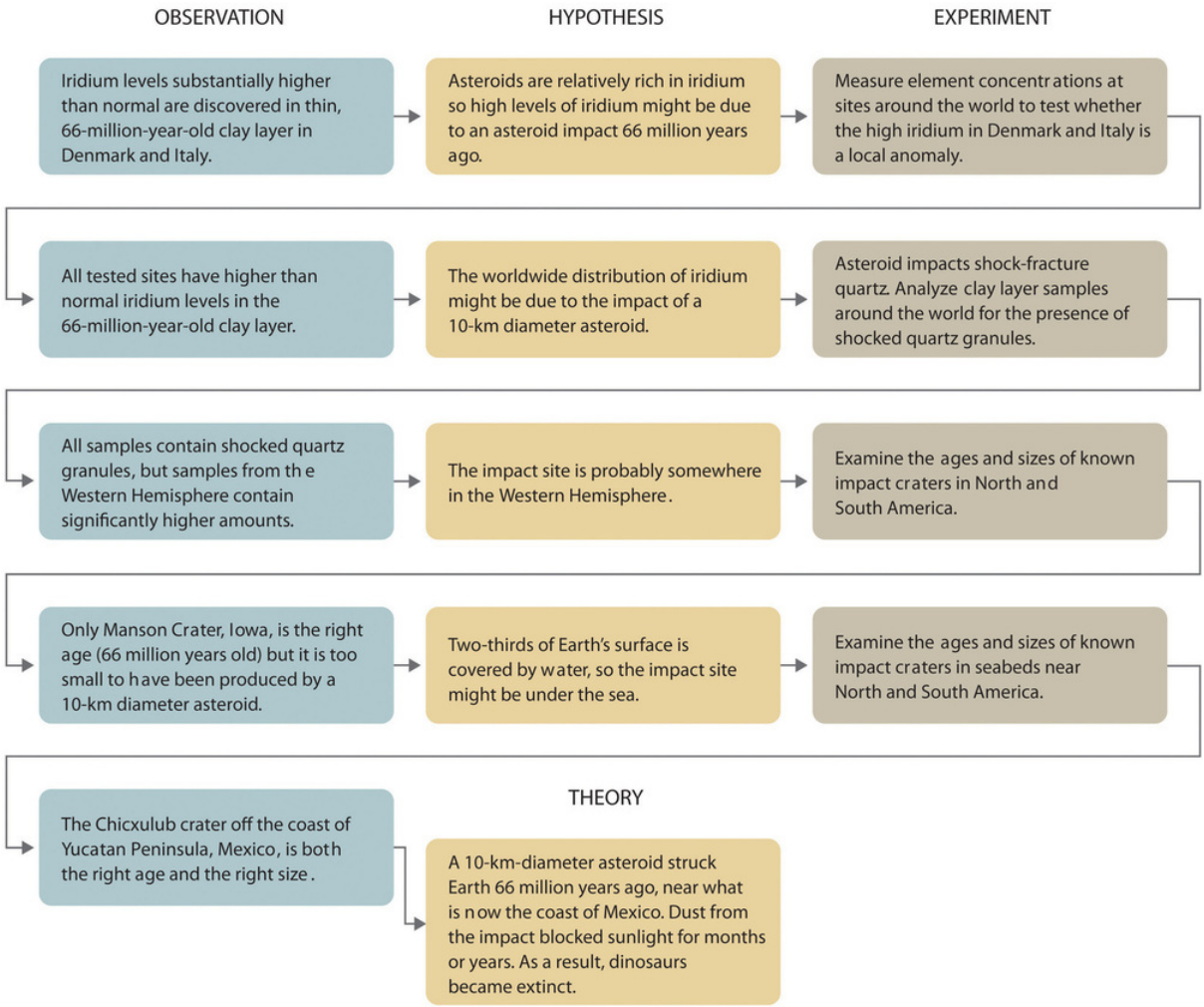


Figure 1.1.2: A Summary of How the Scientific Method Was Used in Developing the Asteroid Impact Theory to Explain the Disappearance of the Dinosaurs from Earth

Example 1.1.1

Classify each statement as a law, a theory, an experiment, a hypothesis, a qualitative observation, or a quantitative observation.

a. Ice always floats on liquid water.
b. Birds evolved from dinosaurs.
c. Hot air is less dense than cold air, probably because the components of hot air are moving more rapidly.
d. When 10 g of ice were added to 100 mL of water at 25 °C, the temperature of the water decreased to 15.5 °C after the ice melted.
e. The ingredients of Ivory soap were analyzed to see whether it really is 99.44% pure, as advertised.

Given: components of the scientific method

Asked for: statement classification

Strategy: Refer to the definitions in this section to determine which category best describes each statement.

Solution

a. This is a general statement of a relationship between the properties of liquid and solid water, so it is a law.
b. This is a possible explanation for the origin of birds, so it is a hypothesis.
c. This is a statement that tries to explain the relationship between the temperature and the density of air based on fundamental principles, so it is a theory.
d. The temperature is measured before and after a change is made in a system, so these are quantitative observations.
e. This is an analysis designed to test a hypothesis (in this case, the manufacturer's claim of purity), so it is an experiment.

Exercise 1.1.1

Classify each statement as a law, a theory, an experiment, a hypothesis, a qualitative observation, or a quantitative observation.

a. Measured amounts of acid were added to a Rolaids tablet to see whether it really "consumes 47 times its weight in excess stomach acid."
b. Heat always flows from hot objects to cooler ones, not in the opposite direction.
c. The universe was formed by a massive explosion that propelled matter into a vacuum.
d. Michael Jordan is the greatest pure shooter ever to play professional basketball.
e. Limestone is relatively insoluble in water but dissolves readily in dilute acid with the evolution of a gas.
f. Gas mixtures that contain more than 4% hydrogen in air are potentially explosive.

Answer a

experiment

Answer b

law

Answer c

theory

Answer d

hypothesis

Answer e

qualitative observation

Answer f

quantitative observation

Because scientists can enter the cycle shown in Figure 1.1.1 at any point, the actual application of the scientific method to different topics can take many different forms. For example, a scientist may start with a hypothesis formed by reading about work done by

others in the field, rather than by making direct observations.

It is important to remember that scientists have a tendency to formulate hypotheses in familiar terms simply because it is difficult to propose something that has never been encountered or imagined before. As a result, scientists sometimes discount or overlook unexpected findings that disagree with the basic assumptions behind the hypothesis or theory being tested. Fortunately, truly important findings are immediately subject to independent verification by scientists in other laboratories, so science is a self-correcting discipline. When the Alvarezes originally suggested that an extraterrestrial impact caused the extinction of the dinosaurs, the response was almost universal skepticism and scorn. In only 20 years, however, the persuasive nature of the evidence overcame the skepticism of many scientists, and their initial hypothesis has now evolved into a theory that has revolutionized paleontology and geology.

Summary

Chemists expand their knowledge by making observations, carrying out experiments, and testing hypotheses to develop laws to summarize their results and theories to explain them. In doing so, they are using the scientific method.



Fundamental Definitions in Chemistry: https://youtu.be/SBwjbkFNkdw

---

1.1: The Scientific Method is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **1.1: The Scientific Method** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

1.2: SI Units

Learning Objectives

- Recognize the SI base units and explain the system of prefixes used with them.
- Define and calculate density.

People who live in the United States measure weight in pounds, height in feet and inches, and a car's speed in miles per hour. In contrast, chemistry and other branches of science use the International System of Units (also known as **SI** after *Système Internationale d'Unités*), which was established so that scientists around the world could communicate efficiently with each other. Many countries have also adopted SI units for everyday use as well. The United States is one of the few countries that has not.

Base SI Units

Base (or basic) units, are the fundamental units of SI. There are seven base units, which are listed in Table 1.2.1, Chemistry uses five of the base units: the mole for amount, the kilogram for mass, the meter for length, the second for time, and the kelvin for temperature. The degree Celsius (°C) is also commonly used for temperature. The numerical relationship between kelvins and degrees Celsius is as follows:

$$K = {}^{\circ}C + 273 \tag{1.2.1}$$

Table 1.2.1: The Seven Base SI Units

Property	Unit	Abbreviation
length	meter	m
mass	kilogram	kg
time	second	s
amount	mole	mol
temperature	kelvin	K
electrical current	ampere	amp
luminous intensity	candela	cd

The United States uses the English (sometimes called Imperial) system of units for many quantities. Inches, feet, miles, gallons, pounds, and so forth, are all units connected with the English system of units. There have been many mistakes due to the improper conversion of units between the SI and English systems.

The size of each base unit is defined by international convention. For example, the *kilogram* is defined as the quantity of mass of a special metal cylinder kept in a vault in France (Figure 1.2.1). The other base units have similar definitions and standards. The sizes of the base units are not always convenient for all measurements. For example, a meter is a rather large unit for describing the width of something as narrow as human hair. Instead of reporting the diameter of hair as 0.00012 m or as 1.2×10^{-4} m using scientific notation as discussed in section 1.4, SI also provides a series of **prefixes** that can be attached to the units, creating units that are larger or smaller by powers of 10.



Figure 1.2.1: The Kilogram. The standard for the kilogram is a platinum-iridium cylinder kept in a special vault in France. Source: Photo reproduced by permission of the Bureau International des Poids et Mesures, who retain full internationally protected copyright.

Common prefixes and their multiplicative factors are listed in Table 1.2.2. (Perhaps you have already noticed that the base unit *kilogram* is a combination of a prefix, kilo- meaning 1,000 ×, and a unit of mass, the gram.) Some prefixes create a multiple of the original unit: 1 kilogram equals 1,000 grams, and 1 megameter equals 1,000,000 meters. Other prefixes create a fraction of the original unit. Thus, 1 centimeter equals 1/100 of a meter, 1 millimeter equals 1/1,000 of a meter, 1 microgram equals 1/1,000,000 of a gram, and so forth.

Table 1.2.2: Prefixes Used with SI Units

Prefix	Abbreviation	Multiplicative Factor	Multiplicative Factor in Scientific Notation
giga-	G	1,000,000,000 ×	10^{9} ×
mega-	M	1,000,000 ×	10^{6} ×
kilo-	k	1,000 ×	10^{3} ×
deca-	D	10 ×	10^{1} ×
deci-	d	1/10 ×	10^{-1} ×
centi-	c	1/100 ×	10^{-2} ×
milli-	m	1/1,000 ×	10^{-3} ×
micro-	μ*	1/1,000,000 ×	10^{-6} ×
nano-	n	1/1,000,000,000 ×	10^{-9} ×

*The letter μ is the Greek lowercase letter for *m* and is called “mu,” which is pronounced “myoo.”

Both SI units and prefixes have abbreviations, and the combination of a prefix abbreviation with a base unit abbreviation gives the abbreviation for the modified unit. For example, kg is the abbreviation for kilogram. We will be using these abbreviations throughout this book.

The Difference Between Mass and Weight

The mass of a body is a measure of its inertial property or how much matter it contains. The weight of a body is a measure of the force exerted on it by gravity or the force needed to support it. Gravity on earth gives a body a downward acceleration of about 9.8 m/s^2. In common parlance, weight is often used as a synonym for mass in weights and measures. For instance, the verb “to weigh” means “to determine the mass of” or “to have a mass of.” The incorrect use of weight in place of mass should be phased out, and the term mass used when mass is meant. The SI unit of mass is the kilogram (kg). In science and technology, the weight of a body in a particular reference frame is defined as the force that gives the body an acceleration equal to the local acceleration of free fall in that reference frame. Thus, the SI unit of the quantity weight defined in this way (force) is the newton (N).

Derived SI Units

Derived units are combinations of SI base units. Units can be multiplied and divided, just as numbers can be multiplied and divided. For example, the area of a square having a side of 2 cm is 2 cm × 2 cm, or 4 cm^2 (read as “four centimeters squared” or “four square centimeters”). Notice that we have squared a length unit, the centimeter, to get a derived unit for area, the square centimeter.

Volume is an important quantity that uses a derived unit. **Volume** is the amount of space that a given substance occupies and is defined geometrically as length × width × height. Each distance can be expressed using the meter unit, so volume has the derived unit m × m × m, or m^3 (read as “meters cubed” or “cubic meters”). A cubic meter is a rather large volume, so scientists typically express volumes in terms of 1/1,000 of a cubic meter. This unit has its own name—the liter (L). A liter is a little larger than 1 US quart in volume. Below are approximate equivalents for some of the units used in chemistry.

Approximate Equivalents to Some SI Units

- 1 m ≈ 39.36 in. ≈ 3.28 ft ≈ 1.09 yd
- 1 in. ≈ 2.54 cm
- 1 km ≈ 0.62 mi
- 1 kg ≈ 2.20 lb
- 1 lb ≈ 454 g
- 1 L ≈ 1.06 qt
- 1 qt ≈ 0.946 L

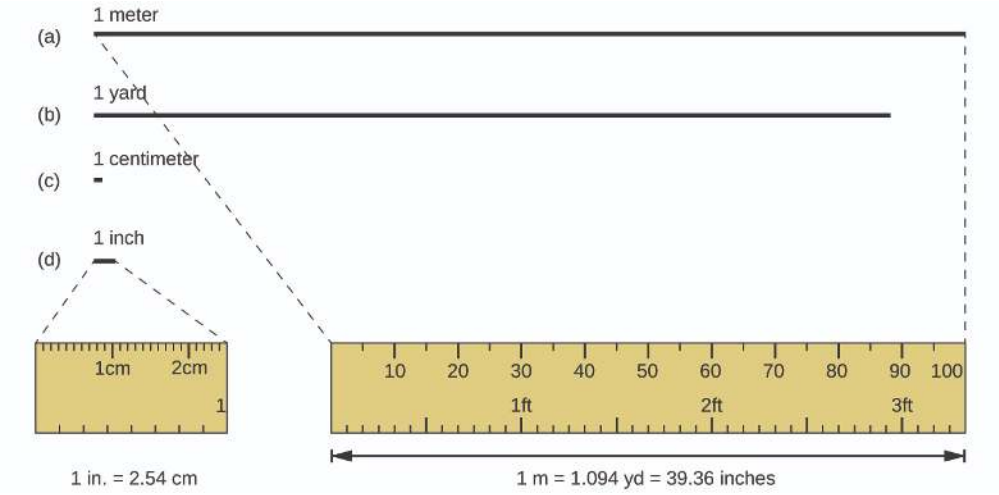


Figure 1.2.2: The relative lengths of 1 m, 1 yd, 1 cm, and 1 in. are shown (not actual size), as well as comparisons of 2.54 cm and 1 in., and of 1 m and 1.094 yd. (CC BY 4.0; OpenStax)

As shown in Figure 1.2.3, a liter is also 1,000 cm^3. By definition, there are 1,000 mL in 1 L, so 1 milliliter and 1 cubic centimeter represent the same volume.

$$1\ mL = 1\ cm^3 \tag{1.2.2}$$

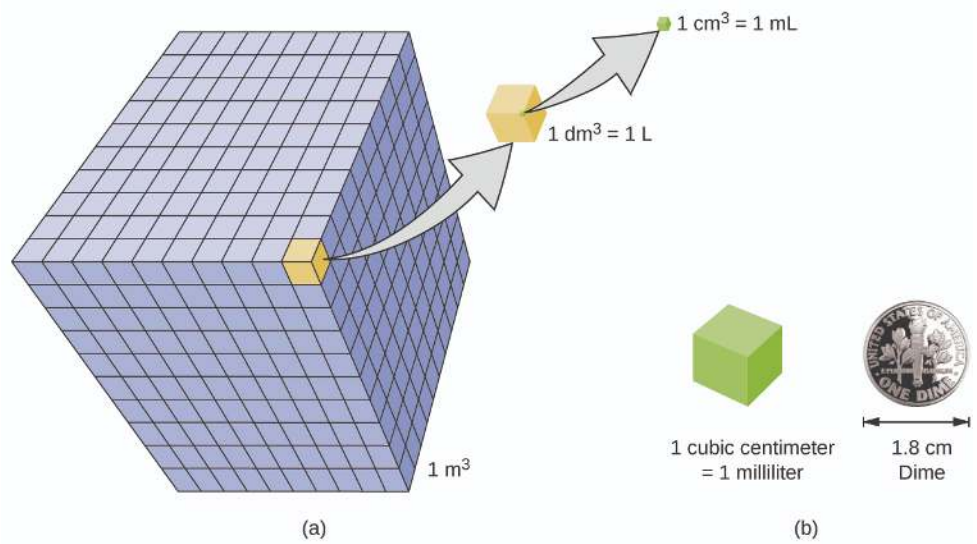


Figure 1.2.3: Units of Volume. (a) The relative volumes are shown for cubes of 1 m^3, 1 dm^3 (1 L), and 1 cm^3 (1 mL) (not to scale). A liter (L) is defined as a cube 1 dm (1/10th of a meter) on a side. A milliliter (mL), 1/1,000th of a liter, is equal to 1 cubic centimeter. (b) The diameter of a dime is compared relative to the edge length of a 1-cm^3 (1-mL) cube. (CC BY 4.0; OpenStax)

✔ Example 1.2.1

Give the abbreviation for each unit and define the abbreviation in terms of the base unit.

a. kiloliter
b. microsecond
c. decimeter
d. nanogram

Answer a

The abbreviation for a kiloliter is kL. Because kilo means "1,000 ×," 1 kL equals 1,000 L.

Answer b

The abbreviation for microsecond is µs. Micro implies 1/1,000,000th of a unit, so 1 µs equals 0.000001 s.

Answer c

The abbreviation for decimeter is dm. Deci means 1/10th, so 1 dm equals 0.1 m.

Answer d

The abbreviation for nanogram is ng and equals 0.000000001 g.

? Exercise 1.2.1

Give the abbreviation for each unit and define the abbreviation in terms of the base unit.

a. kilometer
b. milligram
c. nanosecond
d. centiliter

Answer a

km (1,000 m)

Answer b

mg (0.001 g)

Answer c

ns (0.000000001 s)

Answer d

cL (0.01L)

Energy, another important quantity in chemistry, is the ability to perform work, such as moving a box of books from one side of a room to the other side. It has a derived unit of kg•m^2/s^2. (The dot between the kg and m units implies the units are multiplied together.) Because this combination is cumbersome, this collection of units is redefined as a **joule** (J). An older unit of energy, but likely more familiar to you, the calorie (cal), is also widely used. There are 4.184 J in 1 cal. Energy changes occur during all chemical processes and will be discussed in a later chapter.

To Your Health: Energy and Food

The food in our diet provides the energy our bodies need to function properly. The energy contained in food could be expressed in joules or calories, which are the conventional units for energy, but the food industry prefers to use the kilocalorie and refers to it as the Calorie (with a capital C). The average daily energy requirement of an adult is about 2,000–2,500 Calories, which is 2,000,000–2,500,000 calories (with a lowercase c).

If we expend the same amount of energy that our food provides, our body weight remains stable. If we ingest more Calories from food than we expend, however, our bodies store the extra energy in high-energy-density compounds, such as fat, and we gain weight. On the other hand, if we expend more energy than we ingest, we lose weight. Other factors affect our weight as well—genetic, metabolic, behavioral, environmental, cultural factors—but dietary habits are among the most important.

In 2008 the US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention issued a report stating that 73% of Americans were either overweight or obese. More alarmingly, the report also noted that 19% of children aged 6–11 and 18% of adolescents aged 12–19 were overweight—numbers that had tripled over the preceding two decades. Two major reasons for this increase are excessive calorie consumption (especially in the form of high-fat foods) and reduced physical activity. Partly because of that report, many restaurants and food companies are working to reduce the amounts of fat in foods and provide consumers with more healthy food options.

Density is defined as the mass of an object divided by its volume; it describes the amount of matter contained in a given amount of space.

$$\text{density} = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{volume}} \tag{1.2.3}$$

Thus, the units of density are the units of mass divided by the units of volume: g/cm^3 or g/mL (for solids and liquids), g/L (for gases), kg/m^3, and so forth. For example, the density of water is about 1.00 g/cm^3, while the density of mercury is 13.6 g/mL. (Remember that 1 mL equals 1 cm^3.) Mercury is over 13 times as dense as water, meaning that it contains over 13 times the amount of matter in the same amount of space. The density of air at room temperature is about 1.3 g/L. Table 1.6.3 shows the densities of some common substances.

Table 1.2.2: Densities of Common Substances

Solids	Liquids	Gases (at 25 °C and 1 atm)
ice (at 0 °C) 0.92 g/cm^3	water 1.0 g/cm^3	dry air 1.20 g/L
oak (wood) 0.60–0.90 g/cm^3	ethanol 0.79 g/cm^3	oxygen 1.31 g/L
iron 7.9 g/cm^3	acetone 0.79 g/cm^3	nitrogen 1.14 g/L
copper 9.0 g/cm^3	glycerin 1.26 g/cm^3	carbon dioxide 1.80 g/L
lead 11.3 g/cm^3	olive oil 0.92 g/cm^3	helium 0.16 g/L
silver 10.5 g/cm^3	gasoline 0.70–0.77 g/cm^3	neon 0.83 g/L
gold 19.3 g/cm^3	mercury 13.6 g/cm^3	radon 9.1 g/L

Example 1.2.2: Density of Bone

What is the density of a section of bone if a 25.3 cm^3 sample has a mass of 27.8 g?

Solution

Because density is defined as the mass of an object divided by its volume, we can set up the following relationship:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{density} &= \frac{mass}{volume} \\ &= \frac{27.8\ g}{25.3\ cm^3} \\ &= 1.10\ g/cm^3 \end{aligned}$$

Note that we have limited our final answer to three significant figures.

Exercise 1.2.2: Density of Oxygen

What is the density of oxygen gas if a 15.0 L sample has a mass of 21.7 g?

Answer

1.45 g/L

Density can be used to convert between the mass and the volume of a substance. This will be discussed in the next section.

Concept Review Exercises

1. What is the difference between a base unit and a derived unit? Give two examples of each type of unit.
2. Do units follow the same mathematical rules as numbers do? Give an example to support your answer.
3. What is density?

Answers

1. Base units are the seven fundamental units of SI; derived units are constructed by making combinations of the base units; Two examples of base units: kilograms and meters (answers will vary); Two examples of derived units: grams per milliliter and joules (answers will vary).
2. yes; $\text{mL} \times \frac{\text{g}}{\text{mL}} = \text{g}$ (answers will vary)
3. Density is defined as the mass of an object divided by its volume

Key Takeaways

- Recognize the SI base units and derived units.
- Combining prefixes with base units creates new units of larger or smaller sizes.

1.2: SI Units is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **1.6: The International System of Units** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

1.3: Measurements

All measurements have a degree of uncertainty regardless of precision and accuracy. This is caused by two factors, the limitation of the measuring instrument (systematic error) and the skill of the experimenter making the measurements (random error).

Introduction

The graduated buret in Figure 1 contains a certain amount of water (with yellow dye) to be measured. The amount of water is somewhere between 19 ml and 20 ml according to the marked lines. By checking to see where the bottom of the meniscus lies, referencing the ten smaller lines, the amount of water lies between 19.8 ml and 20 ml. The next step is to estimate the uncertainty between 19.8 ml and 20 ml. Making an approximate guess, the level is less than 20 ml, but greater than 19.8 ml. We then report that the measured amount is approximately 19.9 ml. The graduated cylinder itself may be distorted such that the graduation marks contain inaccuracies providing readings slightly different from the actual volume of liquid present.



***Figure 1**: A meniscus as seen in a burette of colored water. '20.00 mL' is the correct depth measurement. Click here for a more complete description on buret use, including proper reading. Figure used with permission from Wikipedia.*

Systematic vs. Random Error

The diagram below illustrates the distinction between **systematic** and **random** errors.

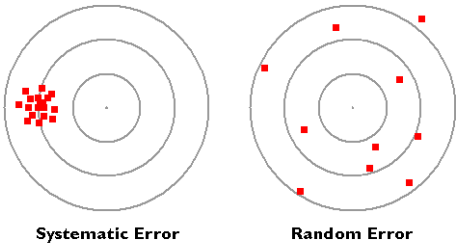
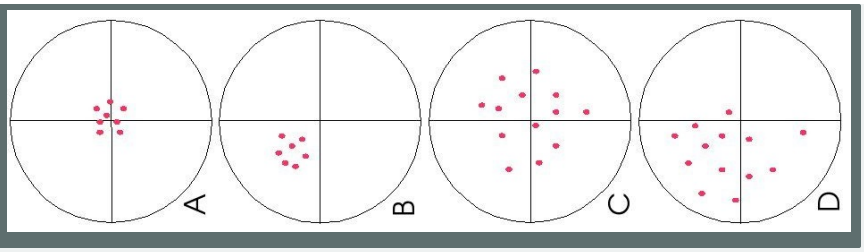


***Figure 2:** Systematic and random errors. Figure used with permission from David DiBiase (Penn State U).*

Systematic errors: When we use tools meant for measurement, we assume that they are correct and accurate, however measuring tools are not always right. In fact, they have errors that naturally occur called **systematic errors**. Systematic errors tend to be consistent in magnitude and/or direction. If the magnitude and direction of the error is known, accuracy can be improved by additive or proportional corrections. **Additive correction** involves adding or subtracting a constant adjustment factor to each measurement; **proportional correction** involves multiplying the measurement(s) by a constant.

Random errors: Sometimes called human error, random error is determined by the experimenter's skill or ability to perform the experiment and read scientific measurements. These errors are random since the results yielded may be too high or low. Often random error determines the precision of the experiment or limits the precision. For example, if we were to time a revolution of a steadily rotating turnable, the random error would be the reaction time. Our reaction time would vary due to a delay in starting (an underestimate of the actual result) or a delay in stopping (an overestimate of the actual result). Unlike systematic errors, random errors vary in magnitude and direction. It is possible to calculate the average of a set of measured positions, however, and that average is likely to be more accurate than most of the measurements.



5. Since Tom must rely on the machine for an absorbance reading and it provides consistently different measurements, this is an example of systematic error.
6. The majority of Claire's variation in time can likely be attributed to random error such as fatigue after multiple laps, inconsistency in swimming form, slightly off timing in starting and stopping the stop watch, or countless other small factors that alter lap times. To a much smaller extent, the stop watch itself may have errors in keeping time resulting in systematic error.
7. The researcher's percent error is about 0.62%.
8. This is known as multiplier or scale factor error.
9. This is called an offset or zero setting error.
10. Susan's percent error is -7.62%. This percent error is negative because the measured value falls *below* the accepted value. In problem 7, the percent error was positive because it was *higher* than the accepted value.
11. You would first weigh the beaker itself. After obtaining the weight, then you add the graphite in the beaker and weigh it. After obtaining this weight, you then subtract the weight of the graphite plus the beaker minus the weight of the beaker.

1.3: Measurements is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **Uncertainties in Measurements** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

1.4: Significant Figures

Learning Objective

- Apply the concept of significant figures to limit a measurement to the proper number of digits.
- Recognize the number of significant figures in a given quantity.
- Limit mathematical results to the proper number of significant figures.

If you use a calculator to evaluate the expression 337/217, you will get the following:

$$337 \div 217 = 1.5529953917$$

and so on for many more digits. Although this answer is correct, it is somewhat presumptuous. You start with two values that each have three digits, and the answer has *twelve* digits? That does not make much sense from a strict numerical point of view.

Consider using a ruler to measure the width of an object, as shown in Figure 1.4.1. The object is definitely more than 1 cm long, so we know that the first digit in our measurement is 1. We see by counting the tick marks on the ruler that the object is at least three ticks after the 1. If each tick represents 0.1 cm, then we know the object is at least 1.3 cm wide. But our ruler does not have any more ticks between the 0.3 and the 0.4 marks, so we can't know exactly how much the next decimal place is. But with a practiced eye we can estimate it. Let us estimate it as about six-tenths of the way between the third and fourth tick marks, which estimates our hundredths place as 6, so we identify a measurement of 1.36 cm for the width of the object.

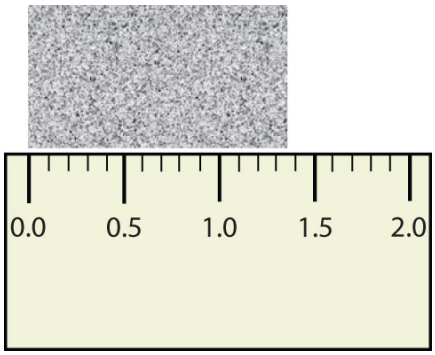


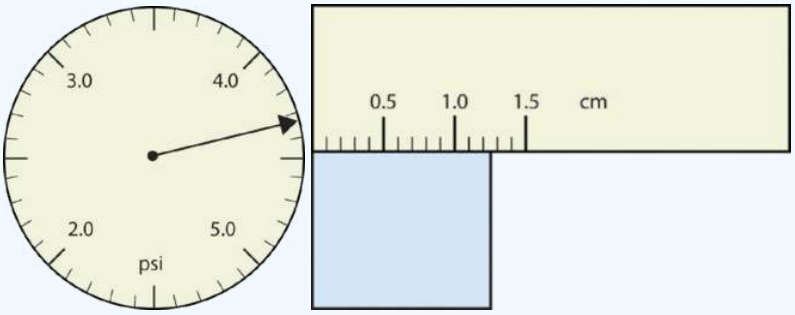
Figure 1.4.1: Expressing Width. What is the proper way to express the width of this object?

Does it make any sense to try to report a thousandths place for the measurement? No, it doesn't; we are not exactly sure of the hundredths place (after all, it was an estimate only), so it would be fruitless to estimate a thousandths place. Our best measurement, then, stops at the hundredths place, and we report 1.36 cm as proper measurement.

This concept of reporting the proper number of digits in a measurement or a calculation is called significant figures. Significant figures (sometimes called significant digits) represent the limits of what values of a measurement or a calculation we are sure of. The convention for a measurement is that the quantity reported should be all known values and the first estimated value. The conventions for calculations are discussed as follows.

Example 1.4.1

Use each diagram to report a measurement to the proper number of significant figures.

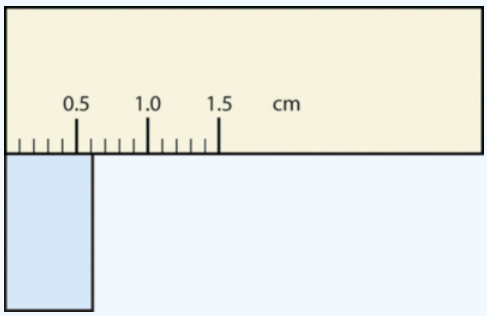


Solution

1. The arrow is between 4.0 and 5.0, so the measurement is at least 4.0. The arrow is between the third and fourth small tick marks, so it's at least 0.3. We will have to estimate the last place. It looks like about one-third of the way across the space, so let us estimate the hundredths place as 3. Combining the digits, we have a measurement of 4.33 psi (psi stands for "pounds per square inch" and is a unit of pressure, like air in a tire). We say that the measurement is reported to three significant figures.
2. The rectangle is at least 1.0 cm wide but certainly not 2.0 cm wide, so the first significant digit is 1. The rectangle's width is past the second tick mark but not the third; if each tick mark represents 0.1, then the rectangle is at least 0.2 in the next significant digit. We have to estimate the next place because there are no markings to guide us. It appears to be about halfway between 0.2 and 0.3, so we will estimate the next place to be a 5. Thus, the measured width of the rectangle is 1.25 cm. Again, the measurement is reported to three significant figures.

? Exercise 1.4.1

What would be the reported width of this rectangle?



Answer

0.63 cm

In many cases, you will be given a measurement. How can you tell by looking what digits are significant? For example, the reported population of the United States is 306,000,000. Does that mean that it is *exactly* three hundred six million, or is some estimation occurring?

The following conventions dictate which numbers in a reported measurement are significant and which are not significant:

1. Any nonzero digit is significant.
2. Any zeros between nonzero digits (i.e., embedded zeros) are significant.
3. Zeros at the end of a number without a decimal point (i.e., trailing zeros) are not significant; they serve only to put the significant digits in the correct positions. However, zeros at the end of any number with a decimal point are significant.
4. Zeros at the beginning of a decimal number (i.e., leading zeros) are not significant; again, they serve only to put the significant digits in the correct positions.

So, by these rules, the population figure of the United States has only three significant figures: the 3, the 6, and the zero between them. The remaining six zeros simply put the 306 in the millions position. (See Figure 1.4.2 for another example.)



Figure 1.4.2: Significant Figures. How many of the numbers in this display are actually significant? (Public Domain.)

Example 1.4.2

Give the number of significant figures in each measurement.

a. 36.7 m
b. 0.006606 s
c. 2,002 kg
d. 306,490,000 people

Solution

a. By rule 1, all nonzero digits are significant, so this measurement has three significant figures.
b. By rule 4, the first three zeros are not significant, but by rule 2 the zero between the sixes is; therefore, this number has four significant figures.
c. By rule 2, the two zeros between the twos are significant, so this measurement has four significant figures.
d. The four trailing zeros in the number are not significant, but the other five numbers are, so this number has five significant figures.

Exercise 1.4.2

Give the number of significant figures in each measurement.

a. 0.000601 m
b. 65.080 kg

Answer a

three significant figures

Answer b

five significant figures

How are significant figures handled in calculations? It depends on what type of calculation is being performed. If the calculation is an addition or a subtraction, the rule is as follows: limit the reported answer to the rightmost column that all numbers have significant figures in common. For example, if you were to add 1.2 and 4.21, we note that the first number stops its significant figures in the tenths column, while the second number stops its significant figures in the hundredths column. We therefore limit our answer to the tenths column.

$$\begin{array}{l} 1.2 \\ \underline{4.41} \\ 5.61 \\ \quad \uparrow \text{ limit final answer to the tenths column: } 5.6 \end{array}$$

We drop the last digit—the 1—because it is not significant to the final answer.

The dropping of positions in sums and differences brings up the topic of rounding. Although there are several conventions, in this text we will adopt the following rule: the final answer should be rounded up if the first dropped digit is 5 or greater, and rounded down if the first dropped digit is less than 5.

$$\begin{array}{r} 77.2 \\ \underline{10.46} \\ 87.66 \end{array}$$

↑ limit final answer to the tenths column and round up: 87.7

Example 1.4.3

Express the final answer to the proper number of significant figures.

a. 101.2 + 18.702 = ?
b. 202.88 − 1.013 = ?

Solution

a. If we use a calculator to add these two numbers, we would get 119.902. However, most calculators do not understand significant figures, and we need to limit the final answer to the tenths place. Thus, we drop the 02 and report a final answer of 119.9 (rounding down).
b. A calculator would answer 201.867. However, we have to limit our final answer to the hundredths place. Because the first number being dropped is 7, which is greater than 5, we round up and report a final answer of 201.87.

Exercise 1.4.3

Express the answer for

$$3.445 + 90.83 - 72.4$$

to the proper number of significant figures.

Answer

21.9

If the operations being performed are multiplication or division, the rule is as follows: limit the answer to the number of significant figures that the data value with the *least* number of significant figures has. So if we are dividing 23 by 448, which have two and three significant figures respectively, we should limit the final reported answer to two significant figures (the lesser of two and three significant figures):

$$23 \div 448 = 0.051339286 \approx 0.051$$

The same rounding rules apply in multiplication and division as they do in addition and subtraction.

Example 1.4.4: Significant Figures

Express the final answer to the proper number of significant figures.

a. 76.4 × 180.4 = ?
b. 934.9 ÷ 0.00455 = ?

Solution

a. The first number has three significant figures, while the second number has four significant figures. Therefore, we limit our final answer to three significant figures: 76.4 × 180.4 = 13,782.56 = 13,800.
b. The first number has four significant figures, while the second number has three significant figures. Therefore, we limit our final answer to three significant figures: 934.9 ÷ 0.00455 = 205,472.5275… = 205,000.

Exercise 1.4.4

Express the final answer to the proper number of significant figures.

a. $22.4 \times 8.314 = ?$
b. $1.381 \div 6.02 = ?$

Answer a

186

Answer b

0.229

As you have probably realized by now, the biggest issue in determining the number of significant figures in a value is the zero. Is the zero significant or not? One way to unambiguously determine whether a zero is significant or not is to write a number in scientific notation. Scientific notation will include zeros in the coefficient of the number *only if they are significant*. Thus, the number 8.666×10^6 has four significant figures. However, the number 8.6660×10^6 has five significant figures. That last zero is significant; if it were not, it would not be written in the coefficient. So, when in doubt about expressing the number of significant figures in a quantity, use scientific notation and include the number of zeros that are truly significant.

Summary

- Significant figures in a quantity indicate the number of known values plus one place that is estimated.
- There are rules for which numbers in a quantity are significant and which are not significant.
- In calculations involving addition and subtraction, limit significant figures based on the rightmost place that all values have in common.
- In calculations involving multiplication and division, limit significant figures to the least number of significant figures in all the data values.

This page titled 1.4: Significant Figures is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

- **2.4: Significant Figures** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

1.5: Converting Units

Learning Objective

- Convert from one unit to another unit of the same type.

In Section 2.2, we showed some examples of how to replace initial units with other units of the same type to get a numerical value that is easier to comprehend. In this section, we will formalize the process.

Consider a simple example: how many feet are there in 4 yards? Most people will almost automatically answer that there are 12 feet in 4 yards. How did you make this determination? Well, if there are 3 feet in 1 yard and there are 4 yards, then there are 4 × 3 = 12 feet in 4 yards.

This is correct, of course, but it is informal. Let us formalize it in a way that can be applied more generally. We know that 1 yard (yd) equals 3 feet (ft):

$$1\ yd = 3\ ft$$

In math, this expression is called an *equality*. The rules of algebra say that you can change (i.e., multiply or divide or add or subtract) the equality (as long as you do not divide by zero) and the new expression will still be an equality. For example, if we divide both sides by 2, we get:

$$\frac{1}{2}\ yd = \frac{3}{2}\ ft$$

We see that one-half of a yard equals 3/2, or one and a half, feet—something we also know to be true—so the above equation is still an equality. Going back to the original equality, suppose we divide both sides of the equation by 1 yard (number **and** unit):

$$\frac{1\ yd}{1\ yd} = \frac{3\ ft}{1\ yd}$$

The expression is still an equality, by the rules of algebra. The left fraction equals 1. It has the same quantity in the numerator and the denominator, so it must equal 1. The quantities in the numerator and denominator cancel, both the number *and* the unit:

$$\frac{1\ yd}{1\ yd} = \frac{3\ ft}{1\ yd}$$

When everything cancels in a fraction, the fraction reduces to 1:

$$1 = \frac{3\ ft}{1\ yd}$$

Conversion Factors

We have an expression that equals 1.

$$\frac{3\ ft}{1\ yd} = 1$$

This is a strange way to write 1, but it makes sense: 3 ft equal 1 yd, so the quantities in the numerator and denominator are the same quantity, just expressed with different units.

The expression

$$\frac{3\ ft}{1\ yd}$$

is called a conversion factor and it is used to formally change the unit of a quantity into another unit. (The process of converting units in such a formal fashion is sometimes called *dimensional analysis* or the *factor label method*.)

To see how this happens, let us start with the original quantity: 4 yd.

Now let us multiply this quantity by 1. When you multiply anything by 1, you do not change the value of the quantity. Rather than multiplying by just 1, let us write 1 as:

$$\frac{3\ ft}{1\ yd}$$

$$4\ yd \times \frac{3\ ft}{1\ yd}$$

The 4 yd term can be thought of as 4yd/1; that is, it can be thought of as a fraction with 1 in the denominator. We are essentially multiplying fractions. If the same thing appears in the numerator and denominator of a fraction, they cancel. In this case, what cancels is the unit *yard*:

$$4\ yd \times \frac{3\ ft}{1\ yd}$$

That is all that we can cancel. Now, multiply and divide all the numbers to get the final answer:

$$\frac{4 \times 3\ ft}{1} = \frac{12\ ft}{1} = 12\ ft$$

Again, we get an answer of 12 ft, just as we did originally. But in this case, we used a more formal procedure that is applicable to a variety of problems.

How many millimeters are in 14.66 m? To answer this, we need to construct a conversion factor between millimeters and meters and apply it correctly to the original quantity. We start with the definition of a millimeter, which is:

$$1\ mm = \frac{1}{1000\ m}$$

The 1/1000 is what the prefix *milli-* means. Most people are more comfortable working without fractions, so we will rewrite this equation by bringing the 1,000 into the numerator of the other side of the equation:

$$1000\ mm = 1\ m$$

Now we construct a conversion factor by dividing one quantity into both sides. But now a question arises: which quantity do we divide by? It turns out that we have two choices, and the two choices will give us different conversion factors, both of which equal 1:

$$\frac{1000\ mm}{1000\ mm} = \frac{1\ m}{1000\ mm}$$

or

$$\frac{1000\ mm}{1\ m} = \frac{1\ m}{1\ m}$$

$$1 = \frac{1\ m}{1000\ mm}$$

or

$$\frac{1000\ mm}{1\ m} = 1$$

Which conversion factor do we use? The answer is based on *what unit you want to get rid of in your initial quantity*. The original unit of our quantity is meters, which we want to convert to millimeters. Because the original unit is assumed to be in the numerator, to get rid of it, we want the meter unit in the *denominator*; then they will cancel. Therefore, we will use the second conversion factor. Canceling units and performing the mathematics, we get:

$$14.66 m \times \frac{1000\ mm}{1\ m} = 14660\ mm$$

Note how m cancels, leaving mm, which is the unit of interest.

The ability to construct and apply proper conversion factors is a very powerful mathematical technique in chemistry. You need to master this technique if you are going to be successful in this and future courses.

Example 1.5.1

a. Convert 35.9 kL to liters.
b. Convert 555 nm to meters.

Solution

a. We will use the fact that 1 kL = 1,000 L. Of the two conversion factors that can be defined, the one that will work is 1000L/1kL. Applying this conversion factor, we get:

$$35.9\,kL \times \frac{1000\,L}{1\,kL} = 35,900\,L$$

b. We will use the fact that 1 nm = 1/1,000,000,000 m, which we will rewrite as 1,000,000,000 nm = 1 m, or 10^9 nm = 1 m. Of the two possible conversion factors, the appropriate one has the nm unit in the denominator:

$$\frac{1\,m}{10^9\,nm}$$

Applying this conversion factor, we get:

$$555\,nm \times \frac{1m}{10^9 nm} = 0.000000555\,m = 5.55 \times 10^{-7}\,m$$

In the final step, we expressed the answer in scientific notation.

Exercise 1.5.1

a. Convert 67.08 µL to liters.
b. Convert 56.8 m to kilometers.

Answer a

6.708×10^{-5} L

Answer b

5.68×10^{-2} km

What if we have a derived unit that is the product of more than one unit, such as m^2? Suppose we want to convert square meters to square centimeters? The key is to remember that m^2 means m × m, which means we have *two* meter units in our derived unit. That means we have to include *two* conversion factors, one for each unit. For example, to convert 17.6 m^2 to square centimeters, we perform the conversion as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} 17.6m^2 &= 17.6(m \times m) \times \frac{100cm}{1m} \times \frac{100cm}{1m} \\ &= 176000\,cm \times cm \\ &= 1.76 \times 10^5\,cm^2 \end{aligned} \tag{1.5.1}$$

Example 1.5.2

How many cubic centimeters are in 0.883 m^3?

Solution

With an exponent of 3, we have three length units, so by extension we need to use three conversion factors between meters and centimeters. Thus, we have:

$$0.883 m^3 \times \frac{100\,cm}{1\,m} \times \frac{100\,cm}{1\,m} \times \frac{100\,cm}{1\,m} = 883000\,cm^3 = 8.83 \times 10^5\,cm^3$$

You should demonstrate to yourself that the three meter units do indeed cancel.

? Exercise 1.5.2

How many cubic millimeters are present in 0.0923 m^3?

Answer

9.23×10^7 mm^3

Suppose the unit you want to convert is in the denominator of a derived unit—what then? Then, in the conversion factor, the unit you want to remove must be in the *numerator*. This will cancel with the original unit in the denominator and introduce a new unit in the denominator. The following example illustrates this situation.

✓ Example 1.5.3

Convert 88.4 m/min to meters/second.

Solution

We want to change the unit in the denominator from minutes to seconds. Because there are 60 seconds in 1 minute (60 s = 1 min), we construct a conversion factor so that the unit we want to remove, minutes, is in the numerator: 1min/60s. Apply and perform the math:

$$\frac{88.4 m}{min} \times \frac{1\,min}{60\,s} = 1.47 \frac{m}{s}$$

Notice how the 88.4 automatically goes in the numerator. That's because any number can be thought of as being in the numerator of a fraction divided by 1.

? Exercise 1.5.3

Convert 0.203 m/min to meters/second.

Answer

0.00338 m/s

or

3.38×10^{-3} m/s

Sometimes there will be a need to convert from one unit with one numerical prefix to another unit with a different numerical prefix. How do we handle those conversions? Well, you could memorize the conversion factors that interrelate all numerical prefixes. Or you can go the easier route: first convert the quantity to the base unit—the unit with no numerical prefix—using the definition of the original prefix. Then, convert the quantity in the base unit to the desired unit using the definition of the second prefix. You can do the conversion in two separate steps or as one long algebraic step. For example, to convert 2.77 kg to milligrams:

$$2.77\,kg \times \frac{1000\,g}{1\,kg} = 2770\,g$$

(convert to the base units of grams)

$$2770\,g \times \frac{1000\,mg}{1\,g} = 2770000\,mg = 2.77 \times 10^6\,mg$$

(convert to desired unit)

Alternatively, it can be done in a single multi-step process:

$$2.77\ \cancel{kg} \times \frac{1000\ \cancel{g}}{1\ \cancel{kg}} \times \frac{1000\,mg}{1\ \cancel{g}} = 2770000\,mg$$

$$= 2.77 \times 10^6\,mg \tag{1.5.2}$$

You get the same answer either way.

Example 1.5.4

How many nanoseconds are in 368.09 µs?

Solution

You can either do this as a one-step conversion from microseconds to nanoseconds or convert to the base unit first and then to the final desired unit. We will use the second method here, showing the two steps in a single line. Using the definitions of the prefixes *micro-* and *nano-*,

$$368.0\,\mu s \times \frac{1\,s}{1000000\,\mu s} \times \frac{1000000000}{1\,s} = 3.6809 \times 10^5\,ns$$

Exercise 1.5.4

How many milliliters are in 607.8 kL?

Answer

6.078×10^8 mL

When considering the significant figures of a final numerical answer in a conversion, there is one important case where a number does not impact the number of significant figures in a final answer: the so-called **exact number**. An exact number is a number from a defined relationship, not a measured one. For example, the prefix *kilo-* means 1,000-*exactly* 1,000, no more or no less. Thus, in constructing the conversion factor:

$$\frac{1000\,g}{1\,kg}$$

neither the 1,000 nor the 1 enter into our consideration of significant figures. The numbers in the numerator and denominator are defined exactly by what the prefix *kilo-* means. Another way of thinking about it is that these numbers can be thought of as having an infinite number of significant figures, such as:

$$\frac{1000.0000000000\ldots\,g}{1.0000000000\ldots\,kg}$$

The other numbers in the calculation will determine the number of significant figures in the final answer.

Example 1.5.5

A rectangular plot in a garden has the dimensions 36.7 cm by 128.8 cm. What is the area of the garden plot in square meters? Express your answer in the proper number of significant figures.

Solution

Area is defined as the product of the two dimensions, which we then have to convert to square meters, and express our final answer to the correct number of significant figures—which in this case will be three.

$$36.7\,cm \times 128.8\,cm \times \frac{1\,m}{100\,cm} \times \frac{1\,m}{100\,cm} = 0.472696\,m^2 = 0.473\,m^2$$

The 1 and 100 in the conversion factors do not affect the determination of significant figures because they are exact numbers, defined by the centi- prefix.

Exercise 1.5.5

What is the volume of a block in cubic meters with the dimensions 2.1 cm × 34.0 cm × 118 cm?

Answer

$0.0084\ m^3$

Chemistry is Everywhere: The Gimli Glider

On July 23, 1983, an Air Canada Boeing 767 jet had to glide to an emergency landing at Gimli Industrial Park Airport in Gimli, Manitoba, because it unexpectedly ran out of fuel during flight. There was no loss of life in the course of the emergency landing, only some minor injuries associated in part with the evacuation of the craft after landing. For the remainder of its operational life (the plane was retired in 2008), the aircraft was nicknamed "the Gimli Glider."



The Gimli Glider is the Boeing 767 that ran out of fuel and glided to safety at Gimli Airport. The aircraft ran out of fuel because of confusion over the units used to express the amount of fuel. Source: Photo courtesy of Will F., (CC BY-SA 2.5; Aero Icarus).

The 767 took off from Montreal on its way to Ottawa, ultimately heading for Edmonton, Canada. About halfway through the flight, all the engines on the plane began to shut down because of a lack of fuel. When the final engine cut off, all electricity (which was generated by the engines) was lost; the plane became, essentially, a powerless glider. Captain Robert Pearson was an experienced glider pilot, although he had never flown a glider the size of a 767. First Officer Maurice Quintal quickly determined that the aircraft would not be able make it to Winnipeg, the next large airport. He suggested his old Royal Air Force base at Gimli Station, one of whose runways was still being used as a community airport. Between the efforts of the pilots and the flight crew, they managed to get the airplane safely on the ground (although with buckled landing gear) and all passengers off safely.

What happened? At the time, Canada was transitioning from the older English system to the metric system. The Boeing 767s were the first aircraft whose gauges were calibrated in the metric system of units (liters and kilograms) rather than the English system of units (gallons and pounds). Thus, when the fuel gauge read 22,300, the gauge meant kilograms, but the ground crew mistakenly fueled the plane with 22,300 *pounds* of fuel. This ended up being just less than half of the fuel needed to make the trip, causing the engines to quit about halfway to Ottawa. Quick thinking and extraordinary skill saved the lives of 61 passengers and 8 crew members—an incident that would not have occurred if people were watching their units.

Key Takeaways

- Units can be converted to other units using the proper conversion factors.
- Conversion factors are constructed from equalities that relate two different units.
- Conversions can be a single step or multi-step.
- Unit conversion is a powerful mathematical technique in chemistry that must be mastered.
- Exact numbers do not affect the determination of significant figures.

This page titled 1.5: Converting Units is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

- **2.5: Converting Units** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

1.6: Atomic Theory

Learning Objectives

- State the modern atomic theory.
- Learn how atoms are constructed.

The smallest piece of an element that maintains the identity of that element is called an atom. Individual atoms are extremely small. It would take about fifty million atoms in a row to make a line that is 1 cm long. The period at the end of a printed sentence has several million atoms in it. Atoms are so small that it is difficult to believe that all matter is made from atoms—but it is.

The concept that atoms play a fundamental role in chemistry is formalized by the modern atomic theory, first stated by John Dalton, an English scientist, in 1808. It consists of three parts:

1. All matter is composed of atoms.
2. Atoms of the same element are the same; atoms of different elements are different.
3. Atoms combine in whole-number ratios to form compounds.

These concepts form the basis of chemistry. Although the word *atom* comes from a Greek word that means "indivisible," we understand now that atoms themselves are composed of smaller parts called *subatomic particles*. The first part to be discovered was the electron, a tiny subatomic particle with a negative charge. It is often represented as e^-, with the right superscript showing the negative charge. Later, two larger particles were discovered. The proton is a more massive (but still tiny) subatomic particle with a positive charge, represented as p^+. The neutron is a subatomic particle with about the same mass as a proton, but no charge. It is represented as either n or n^0. We now know that all atoms of all elements are composed of electrons, protons, and (with one exception) neutrons. Table 1.6.1 summarizes the properties of these three subatomic particles.

Table 1.6.1: Properties of the Three Subatomic Particles

Name	Symbol	Mass (approx.; kg)	Charge
Proton	p^+	1.6×10^{-27}	1+
Neutron	n, n^0	1.6×10^{-27}	none
Electron	e^-	9.1×10^{-31}	1−

How are these particles arranged in atoms? They are not arranged at random. Experiments by Ernest Rutherford in England in the 1910s pointed to a nuclear model with atoms that has the protons and neutrons in a central nucleus with the electrons in orbit about the nucleus. The relatively massive protons and neutrons are collected in the center of an atom, in a region called the nucleus of the atom (plural *nuclei*). The electrons are outside the nucleus and spend their time orbiting in space about the nucleus. (Figure 1.6.1).

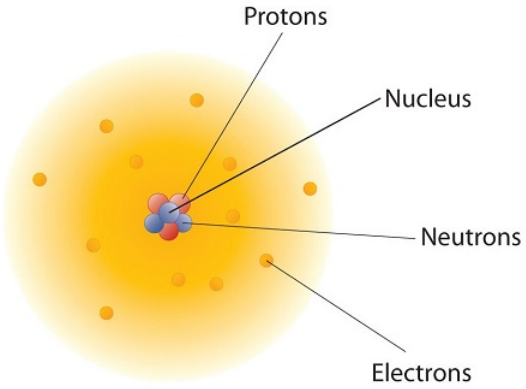


Figure 1.6.1: The Structure of the Atom. Atoms have protons and neutrons in the center, making the nucleus, while the electrons orbit the nucleus.

The modern atomic theory states that atoms of one element are the same, while atoms of different elements are different. What makes atoms of different elements different? The fundamental characteristic that all atoms of the same element share is the *number*

of protons. All atoms of hydrogen have one and only one proton in the nucleus; all atoms of iron have 26 protons in the nucleus. This number of protons is so important to the identity of an atom that it is called the atomic number. The number of protons in an atom is the atomic number of the element. Thus, hydrogen has an atomic number of 1, while iron has an atomic number of 26. Each element has its own characteristic atomic number.

Atoms of the same element can have different numbers of neutrons, however. Atoms of the same element (i.e., atoms with the same number of protons) with different numbers of neutrons are called isotopes. Most naturally occurring elements exist as isotopes. For example, most hydrogen atoms have a single proton in their nucleus. However, a small number (about one in a million) of hydrogen atoms have a proton and a neutron in their nuclei. This particular isotope of hydrogen is called deuterium. A very rare form of hydrogen has one proton and two neutrons in the nucleus; this isotope of hydrogen is called tritium. The sum of the number of protons and neutrons in the nucleus is called the mass number of the isotope.

Neutral atoms have the same number of electrons as they have protons, so their overall charge is zero. However, as we shall see later, this will not always be the case.

Example 1.6.1

a. The most common carbon atoms have six protons and six neutrons in their nuclei. What are the atomic number and the mass number of these carbon atoms?
b. An isotope of uranium has an atomic number of 92 and a mass number of 235. What are the number of protons and neutrons in the nucleus of this atom?

Solution

a. If a carbon atom has six protons in its nucleus, its atomic number is 6. If it also has six neutrons in the nucleus, then the mass number is 6 + 6, or 12.
b. If the atomic number of uranium is 92, then that is the number of protons in the nucleus. Because the mass number is 235, then the number of neutrons in the nucleus is 235 − 92, or 143.

Exercise 1.6.1

The number of protons in the nucleus of a tin atom is 50, while the number of neutrons in the nucleus is 68. What are the atomic number and the mass number of this isotope?

Answer

Atomic number = 50, mass number = 118

When referring to an atom, we simply use the element's name: the term *sodium* refers to the element as well as an atom of sodium. But it can be unwieldy to use the name of elements all the time. Instead, chemistry defines a symbol for each element. The atomic symbol is a one- or two-letter representation of the name of an element. By convention, the first letter of an element's symbol is always capitalized, while the second letter (if present) is lowercase. Thus, the symbol for hydrogen is H, the symbol for sodium is Na, and the symbol for nickel is Ni. Most symbols come from the English name of the element, although some symbols come from an element's Latin name. (The symbol for sodium, Na, comes from its Latin name, *natrium*.) Table 1.6.2 lists some common elements and their symbols. You should memorize the symbols in Table 1.6.2, as this is how we will be representing elements throughout chemistry.

Table 1.6.2: Names and Symbols of Common Elements

Element Name	Symbol	Element Name	Symbol
Aluminum	Al	Mercury	Hg
Argon	Ar	Molybdenum	Mo
Arsenic	As	Neon	Ne
Barium	Ba	Nickel	Ni
Beryllium	Be	Nitrogen	N

Element Name	Symbol	Element Name	Symbol
Bismuth	Bi	Oxygen	O
Boron	B	Palladium	Pd
Bromine	Br	Phosphorus	P
Calcium	Ca	Platinum	Pt
Carbon	C	Potassium	K
Chlorine	Cl	Radium	Ra
Chromium	Cr	Radon	Rn
Cobalt	Co	Rubidium	Rb
Copper	Cu	Scandium	Sc
Fluorine	F	Selenium	Se
Gallium	Ga	Silicon	Si
Germanium	Ge	Silver	Ag
Gold	Au	Sodium	Na
Helium	He	Strontium	Sr
Hydrogen	H	Sulfur	S
Iodine	I	Tantalum	Ta
Iridium	Ir	Tin	Sn
Iron	Fe	Titanium	Ti
Krypton	Kr	Tungsten	W
Lead	Pb	Uranium	U
Lithium	Li	Xenon	Xe
Magnesium	Mg	Zinc	Zn
Manganese	Mn	Zirconium	Zr

The elements are grouped together in a special chart called the periodic table of all the elements. A simple periodic table is shown in Figure 1.6.2, while one may view a more extensive periodic table from another source. The elements on the periodic table are listed in order of ascending atomic number. The periodic table has a special shape that will become important to us when we consider the organization of electrons in atoms (Chapter 8). One immediate use of the periodic table helps us identify metals and nonmetals. Nonmetals are in the upper right-hand corner of the periodic table, on one side of the heavy line splitting the right-side part of the chart. All other elements are metals.

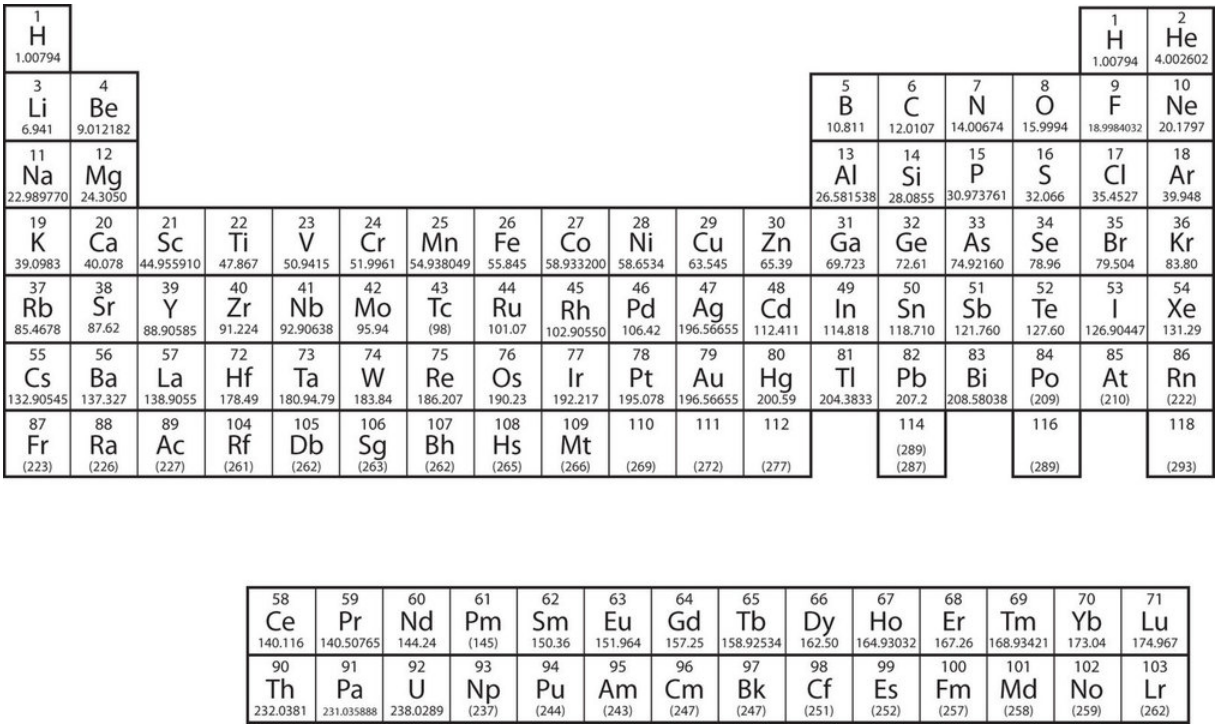


Figure 1.6.1: A Simple Periodic Table

There is an easy way to represent isotopes using the atomic symbols. We use the construction:

$$^{A}_{Z}X$$

where X is the symbol of the element, A is the mass number, and Z is the atomic number. Thus, for the isotope of carbon that has 6 protons and 6 neutrons, the symbol is:

$$^{12}_{6}C$$

where C is the symbol for the element, 6 represents the atomic number, and 12 represents the mass number.

Example 1.6.2

a. What is the symbol for an isotope of uranium that has an atomic number of 92 and a mass number of 235?
b. How many protons and neutrons are in $^{56}_{26}Fe$

Solution

a. The symbol for this isotope is $^{235}_{92}U$
b. This iron atom has 26 protons and 56 − 26 = 30 neutrons.

Exercise 1.6.2

How many protons are in $^{23}_{11}Na$

Answer

11 protons

It is also common to state the mass number after the name of an element to indicate a particular isotope. *Carbon-12* represents an isotope of carbon with 6 protons and 6 neutrons, while *uranium-238* is an isotope of uranium that has 146 neutrons.

Key Takeaways

- Chemistry is based on the modern atomic theory, which states that all matter is composed of atoms.
- Atoms themselves are composed of protons, neutrons, and electrons.
- Each element has its own atomic number, which is equal to the number of protons in its nucleus.
- Isotopes of an element contain different numbers of neutrons.
- Elements are represented by an atomic symbol.
- The periodic table is a chart that organizes all the elements.

This page titled 1.6: Atomic Theory is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

- **3.2: Atomic Theory** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

1.7: Molecules and Ions

Chemical compounds can generally be classified into two broad groups: molecular compounds and ionic compounds. Molecular compounds involve atoms joined by covalent bonds and can be represented by a variety of formulas. Ionic compounds are composed of ions joined by ionic bonding, and their formulas are generally written using oxidation states.

Molecular compounds are composed of atoms that are held together by covalent bonds. These bonds are formed when electrons are shared between two atoms. The concept of chemical formulas was created to describe many characteristics of molecular compounds in a simple manner. A normal chemical formula encompasses factors such as which elements are in the molecule and how many atoms of each element there are. The number of atoms of each element is denoted by a subscript, a small number that is written to the left of the element.

$$CH_3COOH$$

In the preceding formula, the subscript “3” denotes the fact that there are three hydrogen atoms present in the molecule.

Other types of formulas are used to display more detailed characteristics of molecules.

An empirical formula represents the proportions of atoms in a molecule. It gives important information about a molecule, because it displays the ratios of atoms that are present within the molecule. However, its limitations exist in the sense that it does not represent the exact number of atoms present in the molecule as the molecular formula does. In certain situations, the molecular and the empirical formula can be the same, but in other situations, the molecular formula is a multiple of the ratios of atoms indicated in the empirical formula. Since empirical formulas can be derived from molecular formulas, molecular formulas are generally more useful than empirical formulas.

Empirical vs. molecular compounds

C_5H_7O is a possible empirical formula, because a ratio of 5:7:1 cannot be simplified any further. In this particular case, the empirical formula could also be the molecular formula, if there are exactly 5 carbon atoms, 7 hydrogen atoms, and 1 oxygen atom per molecule. However, another possible molecular formula for this same molecule is $C_{10}H_{14}O_2$, because while there are 10 carbon atoms, 14 hydrogen atoms, and 2 oxygen atoms present, the ratio 10:14:2 can be simplified to 5:7:1, giving way to the same empirical formula. Additionally, $C_{10}H_{14}O_2$ is not the only possibility of a molecular formula for this molecule; any formula with the same relative proportions of these atoms that can be simplified to a 5:7:1 ratios is a possible molecular formula for this molecule. When given adequate information, the empirical formula and molecular formula can be quantitatively ascertained.

A **structural formula** is written to denote the details of individual atoms’ bonding. More specifically, it clarifies what types of bonds exist, between which atoms these bonds exist, and the order of the atoms’ bonding within the molecule. Covalent bonds are denoted by lines. A single line represents a single bond, two lines represent a double bond, three lines represent a triple bond, and onwards. A single covalent bond occurs when two electrons are shared between atoms, a double occurs when four electrons are shared between two atoms, etc. In this sense, the higher the number of bonds, the stronger the bond between the two atoms.

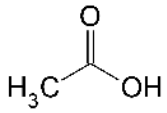


Figure 1: The structural formula of acetic acid, whose molecular formula is CH_3COOH.

A **condensed structural formula** is a less graphical way of representing the same characteristics displayed by a structural formula. In this type of formula, the molecule is written as a molecular formula with the exception that it indicates where the bonding occurs.

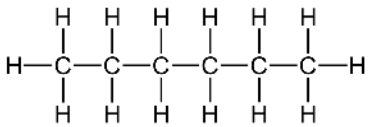
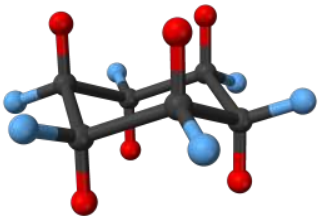
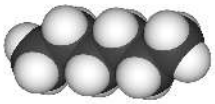


Figure 2: The structural formula of hexane. By referring to the structural formula and emphasizing where bonding occurs, one can ascertain a condensed structural formula of $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$.

All the representations discussed thus far have not addressed how to show a molecule's three-dimensional structure. The two ways to illustrate a spatial structure are through the use of the ball-and-stick model as well as the space-filling model.



The ball-and-stick model uses balls to spatially represent a molecule. The balls are the atoms in a molecule and sticks are the bonds between specific atoms.



The space-filling model is also a method of spatially displaying a molecule and its characteristics. A space-filling model shows atoms' sizes relative sizes to one another.

Ionic Compounds

Ionic compounds are composed of positive and negative ions that are joined by ionic bonds. Ionic bonds are generally formed when electrons are transferred from one atom to another, causing individual atoms to become charged particles, or ions. Ions can be referred to as either monatomic or polyatomic. Monatomic ions such as Cl^- are composed of only one ion, while polyatomic ions such as NO_3^- are defined as polyatomic ions. A combination of these ions that forms a compound whose charge is equal to zero is known as a formula unit of an ionic compound. Ionic compounds generally tend to form crystallized salts. They generally have high boiling/melting points, and are good conductors of electricity. The formulas of ionic compounds are always written with the cation first, followed by the anion. The formula can then be completed with reference to the oxidation states of the elements present.

References

1. Petrucci, Ralph. Harwood, William. Herring, Geoffrey. Madura, Jeffery. GENERAL CHEMISTRY Principles and Modern Applications 9th Edition. Macmillan Publishing co, New Jersey. 1989.
2. Suchocki, J. Conceptual Chemistry: Understanding Our World of Atoms and Molecules. 2nd ed. United Kingdom: Benjamin/Cummings, 2003.

1.7: Molecules and Ions is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **Chemical Compounds** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

1.8: Polyatomic Ions

The compound NaOH has wide industrial use and is the active ingredient in drain cleaners. Based on the discussion in the previous section, we would expect NaOH to be an ionic compound because it contains sodium, a Group 1A metal. Hydrogen and oxygen, however, are nonmetals, and we would expect these to bond together covalently. This compound, called sodium hydroxide, is an example of an ionic compound formed between a metal ion (sodium) and a *polyatomic ion* (HO^-). Charged groups of atoms, like HO^-, that are bonded together covalently are called **polyatomic ions**. Within an ionic compound a polyatomic behaves as a single unit forming salts with other cations or anions.

Using the rules described in Section 3.2, we can draw a Lewis diagram for HO^-. Oxygen has six valence electrons and hydrogen has one, for a total of seven. The central atom in our structure will be hydrogen (it is to the *left* of oxygen in the periodic table). Next, because this is a polyatomic ion with a single negative charge, we add the extra electron to the central atom, pair the electrons and then draw the two atoms bonded together. Next, the six remaining electrons are distributed around the oxygen to form an octet. Finally, the polyatomic ion is enclosed in brackets with the charge as a superscript to show that the ion behaves as a single unit.

Polyatomic ions are very common in chemistry. It is *essential* that you memorize these and be able to correlate the name, the composition and the charge for each of them, as they will be discussed freely throughout the remainder of the course and you will be expected to know these in General Chemistry.

✔ Example 1.8.1:

Construct a Lewis diagram for the polyatomic ion CO_3^{2-}.

Solution

Oxygen has six valence electrons and carbon has four; therefore in CO_3^{2-} there will be a total of 22 valence electrons, plus two additional electrons from the 2- charge. The central atom in our structure will be carbon (it is to the *left* of oxygen in the periodic table). Next, we draw the carbon (our central atom) with its' four electrons and add the additional two electrons from the charge. The three oxygens are placed around the carbon and the electrons are arranged to form the three covalent bonds. Next, the 18 remaining electrons are distributed around the oxygens so that they all have a full octet. The carbon, however, is only surrounded by six electrons. To remedy this, we move one electron pair in to form a double bond to one of the oxygen atoms. Finally, the polyatomic ion is enclosed in brackets with the charge as a superscript.

We need to understand that the process of placing electrons into a particular bond in a compound is an *artificial* aspect of building Lewis diagrams. In fact, the electrons are added to the polyatomic ion, but it is *impossible* to know exactly where they went.

? Exercise 1.8.1

a. Draw Lewis diagrams for NO_2^- and NH_4^+.

1.8: Polyatomic Ions is shared under a CC BY-SA license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.5: Polyatomic Ions** by Paul R. Young is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0. Original source: https://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Introductory_Chemistry_Online.

1.9: An Introduction to the Periodic Table

Learning Objectives

- To become familiar with the organization of the periodic table.

Rutherford's nuclear model of the atom helped explain why atoms of different elements exhibit different chemical behavior. The identity of an element is defined by its *atomic number (Z)*, the number of protons in the nucleus of an atom of the element. The atomic number is therefore different for each element. The known elements are arranged in order of increasing Z in the *periodic table* (Figure 1.9.1). The rationale for the peculiar format of the periodic table is explained later. Each element is assigned a unique one-, two-, or three-letter symbol. The names of the elements are listed in the periodic table, along with their symbols, atomic numbers, and atomic masses. The chemistry of each element is determined by its number of protons and electrons. In a neutral atom, the number of electrons equals the number of protons.

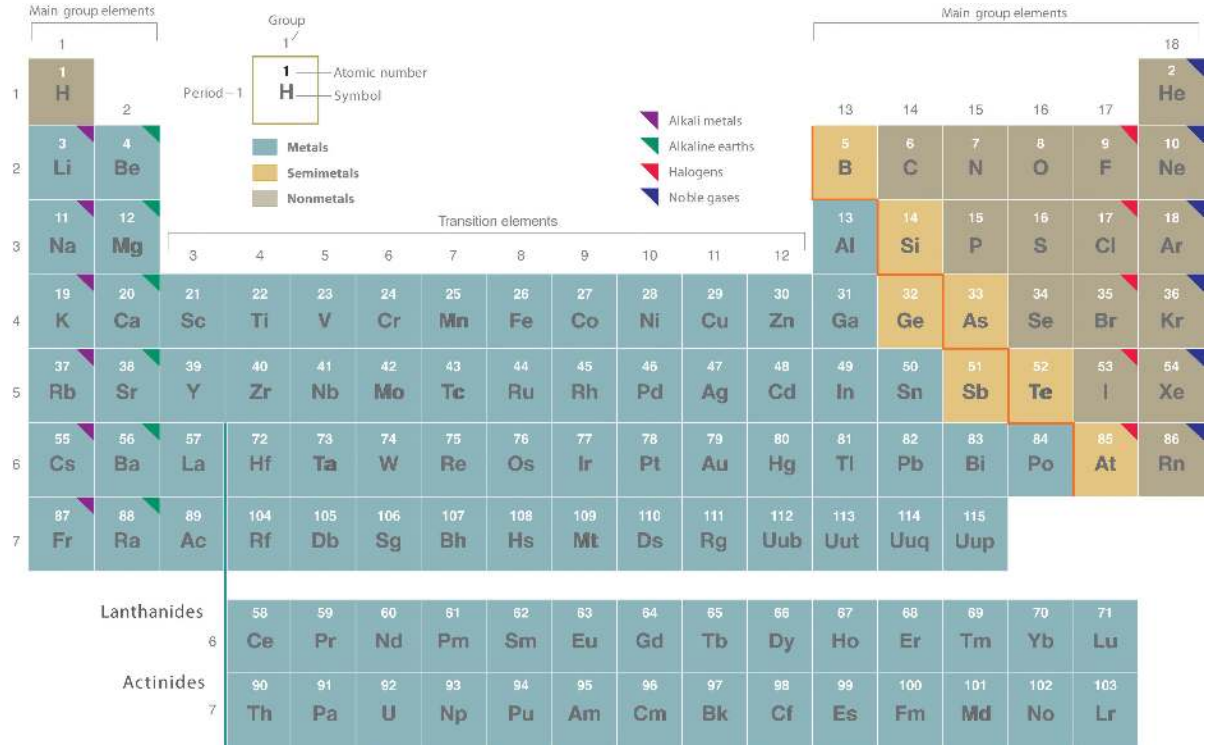


Figure 1.9.1: The Periodic Table Showing the Elements in Order of Increasing Z. The metals are on the bottom left in the periodic table, and the nonmetals are at the top right. The semimetals lie along a diagonal line separating the metals and nonmetals. An interactive Periodic table can be found Periodic Table of the Elements, LibreTexts. (CC-BY-SA-NC 3.0; Anonymous via LibreTexts)

The elements are arranged in a periodic table, which is probably the single most important learning aid in chemistry. It summarizes huge amounts of information about the elements in a way that facilitates the prediction of many of their properties and chemical reactions. The elements are arranged in seven horizontal rows, in order of increasing atomic number from left to right and top to bottom. The rows are called periods, and they are numbered from 1 to 7. The elements are stacked in such a way that elements with similar chemical properties form vertical columns, called groups, numbered from 1 to 18 (older periodic tables use a system based on roman numerals). Groups 1, 2, and 13–18 are the main group elements, listed as A in older tables. Groups 3–12 are in the middle of the periodic table and are the transition elements, listed as B in older tables. The two rows of 14 elements at the bottom of the periodic table are the lanthanides and the actinides, whose positions in the periodic table are indicated in group 3.

Metals, Nonmetals, and Semimetals

The heavy orange zigzag line running diagonally from the upper left to the lower right through groups 13–16 in Figure 1.9.1 divides the elements into metals (in blue, below and to the left of the line) and nonmetals (in bronze, above and to the right of the

line). Gold-colored lements that lie along the diagonal line exhibit properties intermediate between metals and nonmetals; they are called semimetals.

The distinction between metals and nonmetals is one of the most fundamental in chemistry. Metals—such as copper or gold—are good conductors of electricity and heat; they can be pulled into wires because they are ductile; they can be hammered or pressed into thin sheets or foils because they are malleable; and most have a shiny appearance, so they are lustrous. The vast majority of the known elements are metals. Of the metals, only mercury is a liquid at room temperature and pressure; all the rest are solids.

Nonmetals, in contrast, are generally poor conductors of heat and electricity and are not lustrous. Nonmetals can be gases (such as chlorine), liquids (such as bromine), or solids (such as iodine) at room temperature and pressure. Most solid nonmetals are brittle, so they break into small pieces when hit with a hammer or pulled into a wire. As expected, semimetals exhibit properties intermediate between metals and nonmetals.

✔ Example 1.9.1: Classifying Elements

Based on its position in the periodic table, do you expect selenium to be a metal, a nonmetal, or a semimetal?

Given: element

Asked for: classification

Strategy:

Find selenium in the periodic table shown in Figure 1.9.1 and then classify the element according to its location.

Solution:

The atomic number of selenium is 34, which places it in period 4 and group 16. In Figure 1.9.1, selenium lies above and to the right of the diagonal line marking the boundary between metals and nonmetals, so it should be a nonmetal. Note, however, that because selenium is close to the metal-nonmetal dividing line, it would not be surprising if selenium were similar to a semimetal in some of its properties.

? Exercise 1.9.1

Based on its location in the periodic table, do you expect indium to be a nonmetal, a metal, or a semimetal?

Answer

metal

As previously noted, the periodic table is arranged so that elements with similar chemical behaviors are in the same group. Chemists often make general statements about the properties of the elements in a group using descriptive names with historical origins. For example, the elements of Group 1 are known as the alkali metals, Group 2 are the alkaline earth metals, Group 17 are the halogens, and Group 18 are the noble gases.

Group 1: The Alkali Metals

The alkali metals are lithium, sodium, potassium, rubidium, cesium, and francium. Hydrogen is unique in that it is generally placed in Group 1, but it is not a metal. The compounds of the alkali metals are common in nature and daily life. One example is table salt (sodium chloride); lithium compounds are used in greases, in batteries, and as drugs to treat patients who exhibit manic-depressive, or bipolar, behavior. Although lithium, rubidium, and cesium are relatively rare in nature, and francium is so unstable and highly radioactive that it exists in only trace amounts, sodium and potassium are the seventh and eighth most abundant elements in Earth's crust, respectively.

Group 2: The Alkaline Earth Metals

The alkaline earth metals are beryllium, magnesium, calcium, strontium, barium, and radium. Beryllium, strontium, and barium are rare, and radium is unstable and highly radioactive. In contrast, calcium and magnesium are the fifth and sixth most abundant elements on Earth, respectively; they are found in huge deposits of limestone and other minerals.

Group 17: The Halogens

The halogens are fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, and astatine. The name halogen is derived from the Greek words for “salt forming,” which reflects that all the halogens react readily with metals to form compounds, such as sodium chloride and calcium chloride (used in some areas as road salt).

Compounds that contain the fluoride ion are added to toothpaste and the water supply to prevent dental cavities. Fluorine is also found in Teflon coatings on kitchen utensils. Although chlorofluorocarbon propellants and refrigerants are believed to lead to the depletion of Earth’s ozone layer and contain both fluorine and chlorine, the latter is responsible for the adverse effect on the ozone layer. Bromine and iodine are less abundant than chlorine, and astatine is so radioactive that it exists in only negligible amounts in nature.

Group 18: The Noble Gases

The noble gases are helium, neon, argon, krypton, xenon, and radon. Because the noble gases are composed of only single atoms, they are called monatomic. At room temperature and pressure, they are unreactive gases. Because of their lack of reactivity, for many years they were called inert gases or rare gases. However, the first chemical compounds containing the noble gases were prepared in 1962. Although the noble gases are relatively minor constituents of the atmosphere, natural gas contains substantial amounts of helium. Because of its low reactivity, argon is often used as an unreactive (inert) atmosphere for welding and in light bulbs. The red light emitted by neon in a gas discharge tube is used in neon lights.

> *The noble gases are unreactive at room temperature and pressure.*

Summary

The periodic table is used as a predictive tool. It arranges of the elements in order of increasing atomic number. Elements that exhibit similar chemistry appear in vertical columns called groups (numbered 1–18 from left to right); the seven horizontal rows are called periods. Some of the groups have widely-used common names, including the alkali metals (Group 1) and the alkaline earth metals (Group 2) on the far left, and the halogens (Group 17) and the noble gases (Group 18) on the far right. The elements can be broadly divided into metals, nonmetals, and semimetals. Semimetals exhibit properties intermediate between those of metals and nonmetals. Metals are located on the left of the periodic table, and nonmetals are located on the upper right. They are separated by a diagonal band of semimetals. Metals are lustrous, good conductors of electricity, and readily shaped (they are ductile and malleable), whereas solid nonmetals are generally brittle and poor electrical conductors. Other important groupings of elements in the periodic table are the main group elements, the transition metals, the lanthanides, and the actinides.

1.9: An Introduction to the Periodic Table is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **2.5: The Periodic Table** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

1.10: Measurement and Scale - The Mole Concept

One of the important concepts to grasp in chemistry is *scale*. Atoms and molecules are very small. A single atom of hydrogen has a mass of about 1.67 x 10^{-24} grams (that's 0.000000000000000000000000167 grams). One cubic centimeter of water (one mL) contains about 3.3 x 10^{22} water molecules (that's 33 sextillion molecules). Because chemists routinely use numbers that are both incredibly small and incredibly large, unique units of measurement have been developed to simplify working with these numbers. As we learned in Chapter 1, the atomic mass unit (amu) helps us talk about the mass of atoms on a scale appropriate to atoms (one grams is about 600 sextillion amu). In this chapter, we will introduce the concept of a mole to help us talk about numbers of atoms on a scale appropriate to the size of a sample we could work with in a laboratory (for example, in grams). The **mole** is defined as the number of atoms contained in *exactly* 12 grams of carbon-12 (the isotope $^{12}_{6}C$). Chemist have measured this number and it turns out to be 6.0221415 x 10^{23}. We can think of the term *mole* as a number, just like the word *dozen* represents the number 12. We will use the mole to represent this very large number (a *chemist's dozen*) and we will see that there is a special relationship between a mole of a pure substance and the mass of the substance measured in amu.

The origin of the mole concept is generally attributed to the Italian chemical physicist, Amadeo Avogadro. In 1811, Avogadro published an important article that drew a distinction between atoms and molecules (although these terms were not in use at the time). As part of his explanation of the behavior of gasses, he suggested *that equal volumes of all gases at the same temperature and pressure contained the same number of molecules.* This statement is referred to as **Avogadro's Hypothesis** and today we commonly refer to the number of *things* in a mole, (6.0221415 x 10^{23}) as **Avogadro's number** (this is rounded to 6.02 x 10^{23} for most calculations). Because a mole can be thought of as a *number*, you can convert any number to moles by dividing that number by 6.02 x 10^{23}. For example, at the time of this writing, the national debt of the United States is about 7.9 trillion dollars (7.9 x 10^{12} dollars). This could be expressed as *moles of dollars* as shown below:

$$\left(7.9 \times 10^{12} dollars\right)\left(\frac{1\ mol\ dollars}{6.02 \times 10^{23} dollars}\right) = 1.3 \times 10^{-11}\ mol\ dollars$$

The ratio of any number to the number of things in a mole is often referred to as a **mole fraction**.

? Exercise 1.10.1

a. It is estimated there are 7 x 10^{22} stars in the universe. How many moles of stars is this?
b. It is estimated there are 7.5 x 10^{18} grains of sand on the earth. How many moles of sand grains is this?
c. You have 0.0555 moles of jelly donuts. What number of donuts would that be?
d. You drink a small bottle of drinking water that contains 13 moles of water. What is the number of molecules of water you drank?

1.10: Measurement and Scale - The Mole Concept is shared under a CC BY-SA license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.1: Measurement and Scale - The Mole Concept** by Paul R. Young is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0. Original source: https://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Introductory_Chemistry_Online.

1.11: Molar Mass

As we described in Section 4.1, in chemistry, the term **mole** can be used to describe a particular number. The number of things in a mole is large, *very* large (6.0221415×10^{23}). We are all familiar with common copy-machine paper that comes in 500 sheet reams. If you stacked up 6.02×10^{23} sheets of this paper, the pile would reach from the earth to the moon **80 billion times**! The mole is a *huge* number, and by appreciating this, you can also gain an understanding of how *small* molecules and atoms really are.

Chemists work simultaneously on the level of individual atoms, and on the level of samples large enough to work with in the laboratory. In order to go back and forth between these two scales, they often need to know how many atoms or molecules there are in the sample they're working with. The concept that allows us to bridge these two scales is **molar mass**. Molar mass is defined **as the mass in grams of one mole of a substance**. The units of molar mass are grams *per* mole, abbreviated as **g/mol**.

The mass of a single isotope of any given element (the **isotopic atomic mass**) is a value relating the mass of that isotope to the mass of the isotope carbon-12 ($^{12}_{6}C$); a carbon atom with six proton and six neutrons in its' nucleus, surrounded by six electrons. The **atomic mass** of an element is the relative average of *all* of the naturally occurring isotopes of that element and atomic mass is the number that appears in the periodic table. We have defined a mole based on the isotopic atomic mass of carbon-12. By definition, the *molar mass* of carbon-12 is numerically the same, and is therefore *exactly* 12 grams. Generalizing this definition, **the molar mass of any substance in grams *per* mole is numerically equal to the mass of that substance expressed in atomic mass units**. For example, the *atomic mass* of an oxygen atom is 16.00 amu; that means the *molar mass* of an oxygen atom is 16.00 g/mol. Further, if you have 16.00 grams of oxygen atoms, you know from the definition of a mole that your sample contains 6.022×10^{23} oxygen atoms.

The concept of molar mass can also be applied to compounds. For a molecule (for example, nitrogen, N_2) the mass of molecule is the sum of the atomic masses of the two nitrogen atoms. For nitrogen, the mass of the N_2 molecule is simply (14.01 + 14.01) = 28.02 amu. This is referred to as the **molecular mass** and the molecular mass of any molecule is simply the sum of the atomic masses of all of the elements in that molecule. The molar mass of the N_2 molecule is therefore 28.02 g/mol. For compounds that are *not molecular* (ionic compounds), it is improper to use the term "molecular mass" and "**formula mass**" is generally substituted. This is because there are no individual molecules in ionic compounds. However when talking about a mole of an ionic compound we will still use the term molar mass. Thus, the *formula* mass of calcium hydrogen carbonate is 117.10 amu and the *molar* mass of calcium hydrogen carbonate is 117.10 grams per mole (g/mol).

? Exercise 1.11.1

Find the molar mass of each of the following compounds:

- Sand - silicon dioxide (SiO_2)
- Draino - sodium hydroxide (NaOH)
- Nutrasweet - Aspartame ($C_{14}H_{18}N_2O_5$)
- Bone phosphate - calcium phosphate $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$

1.11: Molar Mass is shared under a CC BY-SA license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.2: Molar Mass** by Paul R. Young is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0. Original source: https://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Introductory_Chemistry_Online.

1.12: Mole-Mass Conversions

As described in the previous section, molar mass is expressed as "grams *per* mole". The word *per* in this context implies a mathematical relationship between grams and mole. Think of this as a ratio. The fact that a *per* relationship, ratio, exists between grams and moles implies that you can use dimensional analysis to interconvert between the two. For example, if we wanted to know the mass of 0.50 mole of molecular hydrogen (H_2) we could set up the following equations:

The ***known*** molar mass of H_2 is:

$$\left(\frac{2.06g\ H_2}{1\ mol\ H_2}\right)$$

We are ***given*** that we have 0.50 moles of H_2 and we want to ***find*** the number of grams of H_2 that this represents. To perform the dimensional analysis, we arrange the *known* and the *given* so that the units cancel, leaving only the units of the item we want to *find*.

$$(0.5mol\ H_2) \times \left(\frac{2.06g\ H_2}{1\ mol\ H_2}\right) = x\ g\ H_2 = 1.0g\ H_2$$

? Exercise 1.12.1

a. Determine the mass of 0.752 mol of H_2 gas.
b. How many *moles* of molecular hydrogen are present in 6.022 grams of H_2?
c. If you have 22.414 grams of Cl_2, how many *moles* of molecular chlorine do you have?

We can also use what is often called a *per* relationship (really just a **ratio**) to convert between number of *moles* and the number to *things* (as in 6.02 x 10^{23} *things per mole*). For example, if we wanted to know how many *molecules* of H_2 are there in 3.42 moles of H_2 gas we could set up the following equations:

The ***known*** ratio of molecules *per* mole is :

$$\left(\frac{6.02 \times 10^{23} molecules\ H_2}{1\ mol\ H_2}\right)$$

We are ***given*** that we have 3.42 moles of H_2 and we want to ***find*** the number of molecules of H_2 that this represents. To perform the dimensional analysis, we arrange the *known* and the *given* so that the units cancel, leaving only the units of the item we want to *find*.

$$(3.42mol\ H_2) \times \left(\frac{6.02 \times 10^{23} molecules\ H_2}{1\ mol\ H_2}\right) = x\ molecules\ H_2 = 2.06 \times 10^{24}\ molecules\ H_2$$

And finally, we can combine these two operations and use the *per* relationships to convert between *mass* and the *number* of atoms or molecules. For example, if we wanted to know how many *molecules* of H_2 are there in 6.022 *grams* of H_2 gas we could set up the following series of equations:

The ***known*** molar mass of H_2 is

$$\left(\frac{2.016gH_2}{1molH_2}\right)$$

The ***known*** ratio of molecules *per* mole is

$$\left(\frac{6.02 \times 10^{23} molecules\ H_2}{1\ mol\ H_2}\right)$$

We are ***given*** that we have 6.022 grams of H_2 and we want to ***find*** the number of molecules of H_2 that this represents. As always, to perform the dimensional analysis, we arrange the *known* ratios and the *given* so that the units cancel, leaving only the units of the item we want to *find*.

$$(6.022 g H_2) \times \left(\frac{1 mol H_2}{2.016 g H_2} \right) \times \left(\frac{6.02 \times 10^{23} molecules\ H_2}{1\ mol\ H_2} \right) = x\ molecules\ H_2 = 1.80 \times 10^{24}$$

? Exercise 1.12.1

a. A sample of molecular chlorine is found to contain 1.0 x 10^{20} molecules of Cl_2. What is the *mass* (in grams) of this sample?
b. How many moles of sand, silicon dioxide (SiO_2), and how many molecules of sand are found in 1.00 pound (454g) of sand?
c. You add 2.64 x 10^{23} molecules of sodium hydroxide (Drano™; NaOH), to your drain. How many moles are this and how many grams?

1.12: Mole-Mass Conversions is shared under a CC BY-SA license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.3: Mole-Mass Conversions** by Paul R. Young is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0. Original source: https://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Introductory_Chemistry_Online.

1.13: Concentration and Molarity

As described in the previous section, sodium chloride is quite soluble in water. At 25 ˚C (about room temperature), 359 grams of sodium chloride will dissolve in one liter of water. If you were to add more sodium chloride to the solution, it would not dissolve, because a given volume of water can only dissolve, disperse and stabilize a fixed amount of solute (the stuff that dissolves). This amount is different for every compound and it depends on the structure of the particular compound and how that structure interacts with the solvation shell. When a substance is dissolved in water to the point that no more will go into solution, we say the solution is **saturated**. For most compounds, heating the solution will allow more of the substance to dissolve, hence it is important to note the temperature when you are speaking of the solubility of a particular compound.

If we had a saturated solution of sodium chloride at 25 ˚C, we could quote the concentration as 359 grams/L, but because we know the molar mass of sodium chloride (58.44 grams/mole), we could also express our concentration as:

$$\left(\frac{(359\ g) \times \frac{1\ mole}{58.44\ g}}{1\ L} \right) = 6.14\ moles/L$$

In chemistry, the units of moles/L are called **molarity**, with the abbreviation M. Thus we could say that our saturated solution of sodium chloride was **6.14 molar**, or **6.14 M**.

The advantage of expressing concentrations in terms of molarity is that these solutions can now be used in chemical reactions of known stoichiometry because any volume of the solution corresponds directly to a known number of moles of a particular compound. For example, the molar mass of potassium bromide is 119.0 g/mole. If we dissolved 119.0 grams of KBr in 1.000 L of water, the concentration would be 1.000 mole/L, or 1.000 M. If we now took half o this solution (0.500 L) we know that we would also have 0.500 moles of KBr.

We can determine the concentration of a solution using the problem-solving algorithm we introduced back in Chapter 1. For example, if you wan to find the molarity of a solution containing 42.8 grams of KBr in 1.00 L of water, you would identify the *given* and 42.8 g, your *ratio* is the molar mass (119 g/mole) and you want to *find* molarity (or moles/L). Remembering to set the equation up so that the units of *given* appear in the denominator of the *ratio*, the number of moles is:

$$42.8\ g) \times \left(\frac{1\ mole}{119\ g} \right) = 0.360\ moles$$

and, the molarity is:

$$\left(\frac{0.360\ mole}{1.00\ L} \right) = 0.360\ moles/L\ or\ 0.360\ M$$

When you become comfortable with the simple two-step method, you can combine steps and simply divide your given mass by the given volume to get the result directly. Thus, if you had 1.73 grams of KBr in 0.0230 L of water, your concentration would be:

$$\left(\frac{(1.73\ g) \times \frac{1\ mole}{119\ g}}{0.0230\ L} \right) = 6.32\ moles/L\ or\ 0.632\ M$$

We can also solve these problems *backwards*, that is, convert molarity into mass. For example; determine the number of grams of KBr that are present in 72.5 mL of a 1.05 M solution of KBr. Here we are given a volume of 0.0725 L and our ratio is the molarity, or (1.05 moles/L). We first solve for moles,

$$0.0725\ L \times \left(\frac{1.05\ mole}{1.00\ L} \right) = 0.0761\ moles$$

and then convert to mass using:

$$0.0761\ moles \times \left(\frac{119\ grams}{1\ mole} \right) = 9.06\ grams\ of\ KBr$$

Exercise 1.13.1

A sample of 12.7 grams of sodium sulfate (Na_2SO_4) is dissolved in 672 mL of distilled water.

a. What is the molar concentration of sodium sulfate in the solution?
b. What is the concentration of sodium ion in the solution?

Exercise 1.13.1

Calculate the mass of sodium chloride required to make 125.0 mL of a 0.470 M NaCl solution. If you dissolve 5.8g of NaCl in water and then dilute to a total of 100.0 mL, what will be the molar concentration of the resulting sodium chloride solution?

1.13: Concentration and Molarity is shared under a CC BY-SA license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **7.4: Concentration and Molarity** by Paul R. Young is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0. Original source: https://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Introductory_Chemistry_Online.

1.14: Balancing Chemical Equations

Learning Objectives

- To balance equations that describe reactions in solution.
- To calculate the quantities of compounds produced or consumed in a chemical reaction.
- To solve quantitative problems involving the stoichiometry of reactions in solution.

A balanced chemical equation gives the identity of the reactants and the products as well as the accurate number of molecules or moles of each that are consumed or produced. **Stoichiometry** is a collective term for the quantitative relationships between the masses, the numbers of moles, and the numbers of particles (atoms, molecules, and ions) of the reactants and the products in a balanced chemical equation. **A stoichiometric quantity** is the amount of product or reactant specified by the coefficients in a balanced chemical equation. This section describes how to use the stoichiometry of a reaction to answer questions like the following: How much oxygen is needed to ensure complete combustion of a given amount of isooctane? (This information is crucial to the design of nonpolluting and efficient automobile engines.) How many grams of pure gold can be obtained from a ton of low-grade gold ore? (The answer determines whether the ore deposit is worth mining.) If an industrial plant must produce a certain number of tons of sulfuric acid per week, how much elemental sulfur must arrive by rail each week?

All these questions can be answered using the concepts of the mole, molar and formula masses, and solution concentrations, along with the coefficients in the appropriate balanced chemical equation.

Stoichiometry Problems

When carrying out a reaction in either an industrial setting or a laboratory, it is easier to work with masses of substances than with the numbers of molecules or moles. The general method for converting from the mass of any reactant or product to the mass of any other reactant or product using a balanced chemical equation is outlined in and described in the following text.

Steps in Converting between Masses of Reactant and Product

1. Convert the mass of one substance (substance A) to the corresponding number of moles using its molar mass.
2. From the balanced chemical equation, obtain the number of moles of another substance (B) from the number of moles of substance A using the appropriate mole ratio (the ratio of their coefficients).
3. Convert the number of moles of substance B to mass using its molar mass. It is important to remember that some species are present in excess by virtue of the reaction conditions. For example, if a substance reacts with the oxygen in air, then oxygen is in obvious (but unstated) excess.

Converting amounts of substances to moles—and vice versa—is the key to all stoichiometry problems, whether the amounts are given in units of mass (grams or kilograms), weight (pounds or tons), or volume (liters or gallons).

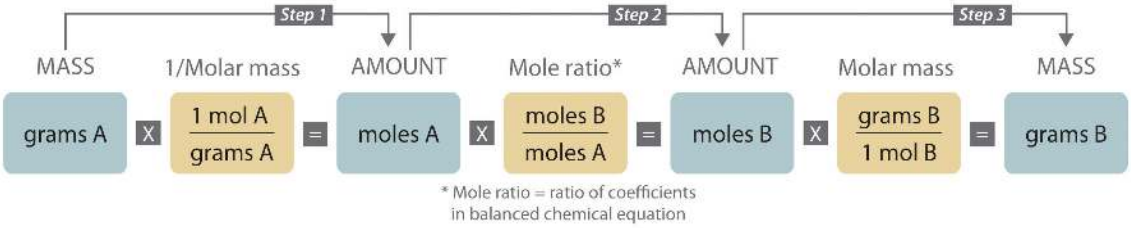


Figure 1.14.1: A Flowchart for Stoichiometric Calculations Involving Pure Substances. The molar masses of the reactants and the products are used as conversion factors so that you can calculate the mass of product from the mass of reactant and vice versa.

Flowchart of steps in stoichiometric calculations. Step 1: grams of A is converted to moles by multiplying by the inverse of the molar mass. Step 2: moles of A is converted to moles of B by multiplying by the molar ratio. Step 3: moles of B is converted to grams of B by the molar mass.

To illustrate this procedure, consider the combustion of glucose. Glucose reacts with oxygen to produce carbon dioxide and water:

$$C_6H_{12}O_6(s) + 6O_2(g) \rightarrow 6CO_2(g) + 6H_2O(l) \tag{1.14.1}$$

Just before a chemistry exam, suppose a friend reminds you that glucose is the major fuel used by the human brain. You therefore decide to eat a candy bar to make sure that your brain does not run out of energy during the exam (even though there is no direct

evidence that consumption of candy bars improves performance on chemistry exams). If a typical 2 oz candy bar contains the equivalent of 45.3 g of glucose and the glucose is completely converted to carbon dioxide during the exam, how many grams of carbon dioxide will you produce and exhale into the exam room?

The initial step in solving a problem of this type is to write the balanced chemical equation for the reaction. Inspection shows that it is balanced as written, so the strategy outlined above can be adapted as follows:

1. Use the molar mass of glucose (to one decimal place, 180.2 g/mol) to determine the number of moles of glucose in the candy bar:

$$moles\,glucose = 45.3\,g\,glucose \times \frac{1\,mol\,glucose}{180.2\,g\,glucose} = 0.251\,mol\,glucose$$

2. According to the balanced chemical equation, 6 mol of CO_2 is produced per mole of glucose; the mole ratio of CO_2 to glucose is therefore 6:1. The number of moles of CO_2 produced is thus

$$moles\,CO_2 = mol\,glucose \times \frac{6\,mol\,CO_2}{1\,mol\,glucose}$$

$$= 0.251\,mol\,glucose \times \frac{6\,mol\,CO_2}{1\,mol\,glucose}$$

$$= 1.51\,mol\,CO_2$$

3. Use the molar mass of CO_2 (44.010 g/mol) to calculate the mass of CO_2 corresponding to 1.51 mol of CO_2:

$$mass\,of\,CO_2 = 1.51\,mol\,CO_2 \times \frac{44.010\,g\,CO_2}{1\,mol\,CO_2} = 66.5\,g\,CO_2$$

These operations can be summarized as follows:

$$45.3\,g\,glucose \times \frac{1\,mol\,glucose}{180.2\,g\,glucose} \times \frac{6\,mol\,CO_2}{1\,mol\,glucose} \times \frac{44.010\,g\,CO_2}{1\,mol\,CO_2} = 66.4\,g\,CO_2$$

Discrepancies between the two values are attributed to rounding errors resulting from using stepwise calculations in steps 1–3. (Remember that you should generally carry extra significant digits through a multistep calculation to the end to avoid this!) This amount of gaseous carbon dioxide occupies an enormous volume—more than 33 L. Similar methods can be used to calculate the amount of oxygen consumed or the amount of water produced.

The balanced chemical equation was used to calculate the mass of product that is formed from a certain amount of reactant. It can also be used to determine the masses of reactants that are necessary to form a certain amount of product or, as shown in Example 1.14.1, the mass of one reactant that is required to consume a given mass of another reactant.

✔ Example 1.14.1: The US Space Shuttle

The combustion of hydrogen with oxygen to produce gaseous water is extremely vigorous, producing one of the hottest flames known. Because so much energy is released for a given mass of hydrogen or oxygen, this reaction was used to fuel the NASA (National Aeronautics and Space Administration) space shuttles, which have recently been retired from service. NASA engineers calculated the exact amount of each reactant needed for the flight to make sure that the shuttles did not carry excess fuel into orbit. Calculate how many tons of hydrogen a space shuttle needed to carry for each 1.00 tn of oxygen (1 tn = 2000 lb).



***The US space shuttle Discovery during liftoff**. The large cylinder in the middle contains the oxygen and hydrogen that fueled the shuttle's main engine.*

Given: reactants, products, and mass of one reactant

Asked for: mass of other reactant

Strategy:

A. Write the balanced chemical equation for the reaction.
B. Convert mass of oxygen to moles. From the mole ratio in the balanced chemical equation, determine the number of moles of hydrogen required. Then convert the moles of hydrogen to the equivalent mass in tons.

Solution:

We use the same general strategy for solving stoichiometric calculations as in the preceding example. Because the amount of oxygen is given in tons rather than grams, however, we also need to convert tons to units of mass in grams. Another conversion is needed at the end to report the final answer in tons.

A We first use the information given to write a balanced chemical equation. Because we know the identity of both the reactants and the product, we can write the reaction as follows:

$$H_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow H_2O(g)$$

This equation is not balanced because there are two oxygen atoms on the left side and only one on the right. Assigning a coefficient of 2 to both H_2O and H_2 gives the balanced chemical equation:

$$2H_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2H_2O(g)$$

Thus 2 mol of H_2 react with 1 mol of O_2 to produce 2 mol of H_2O.

1. **B** To convert tons of oxygen to units of mass in grams, we multiply by the appropriate conversion factors:

$$mass\,of\,O_2 = 1.00\,tn \times \frac{2000\,lb}{tn} \times \frac{453.6\,g}{lb} = 9.07 \times 10^5\,g\,O_2$$

Using the molar mass of O_2 (32.00 g/mol, to four significant figures), we can calculate the number of moles of O_2 contained in this mass of O_2:

$$mol\,O_2 = 9.07 \times 10^5\,g\,O_2 \times \frac{1\,mol\,O_2}{32.00\,g\,O_2} = 2.83 \times 10^4\,mol\,O_2$$

2. Now use the coefficients in the balanced chemical equation to obtain the number of moles of H_2 needed to react with this number of moles of O_2:

$$mol\,H_2 = mol\,O_2 \times \frac{2\,mol\,H_2}{1\,mol\,O_2}$$

$$= 2.83 \times 10^4 \, mol \, O_2 \times \frac{2 \, mol \, H_2}{1 \, mol \, O_2} = 5.66 \times 10^4 \, mol \, H_2$$

3. The molar mass of H_2 (2.016 g/mol) allows us to calculate the corresponding mass of H_2:

$$mass \, of \, H_2 = 5.66 \times 10^4 \, mol \, H_2 \times \frac{2.016 \, g \, H_2}{mol \, H_2} = 1.14 \times 10^5 \, g \, H_2$$

Finally, convert the mass of H2 to the desired units (tons) by using the appropriate conversion factors:

$$tons \, H_2 = 1.14 \times 10^5 \, g \, H_2 \times \frac{1 \, lb}{453.6 \, g} \times \frac{1 \, tn}{2000 \, lb} = 0.126 \, tn \, H_2$$

The space shuttle had to be designed to carry 0.126 tn of H_2 for each 1.00 tn of O_2. Even though 2 mol of H_2 are needed to react with each mole of O_2, the molar mass of H_2 is so much smaller than that of O_2 that only a relatively small mass of H_2 is needed compared to the mass of O_2.

? Exercise 1.14.1: Roasting Cinnabar

Cinnabar, (or Cinnabarite) HgS is the common ore of mercury. Because of its mercury content, cinnabar can be toxic to human beings; however, because of its red color, it has also been used since ancient times as a pigment.



Cinnabar ore. from Wikipedia

Alchemists produced elemental mercury by roasting cinnabar ore in air:

$$HgS(s) + O_2(g) \rightarrow Hg(l) + SO_2(g)$$

The volatility and toxicity of mercury make this a hazardous procedure, which likely shortened the life span of many alchemists. Given 100 g of cinnabar, how much elemental mercury can be produced from this reaction?

Answer

86.2 g

Calculating Moles from Volume

Quantitative calculations involving reactions in solution are carried out with *masses*, however, *volumes* of solutions of known concentration are used to determine the number of moles of reactants. Whether dealing with volumes of solutions of reactants or masses of reactants, the coefficients in the balanced chemical equation give the number of moles of each reactant needed and the number of moles of each product that can be produced. An expanded version of the flowchart for stoichiometric calculations is shown in Figure 1.14.2 The balanced chemical equation for the reaction and *either* the masses of solid reactants and products *or* the volumes of solutions of reactants and products can be used to determine the amounts of other species, as illustrated in the following examples.

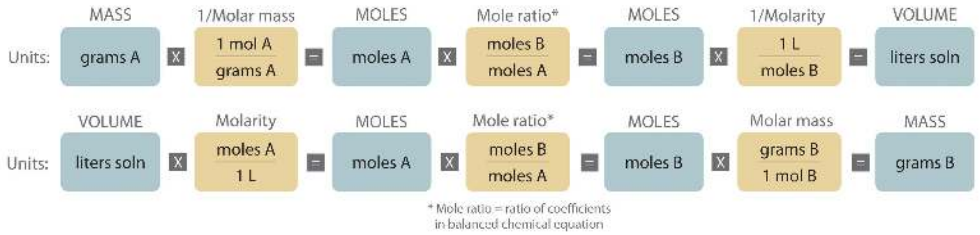


Figure 1.14.2: An Expanded Flowchart for Stoichiometric Calculations. Either the masses or the volumes of solutions of reactants and products can be used to determine the amounts of other species in a balanced chemical equation.

Top: flowchart of steps to convert mass of one substance to moles to moles of another substance to volume using molarity. Bottom: flowchart of steps to convert volume of a substance to mass of another substance.

The balanced chemical equation for a reaction and either the masses of solid reactants and products or the volumes of solutions of reactants and products can be used in stoichiometric calculations.

✔ Example 1.14.2 : Extraction of Gold

Gold is extracted from its ores by treatment with an aqueous cyanide solution, which causes a reaction that forms the soluble $[Au(CN)_2]^-$ ion. Gold is then recovered by reduction with metallic zinc according to the following equation:

$$Zn(s) + 2[Au(CN)_2]^-(aq) \rightarrow [Zn(CN)_4]^{2-}(aq) + 2Au(s)$$

What mass of gold can be recovered from 400.0 L of a 3.30×10^{-4} M solution of $[Au(CN)_2]^-$?

Given: chemical equation and molarity and volume of reactant

Asked for: mass of product

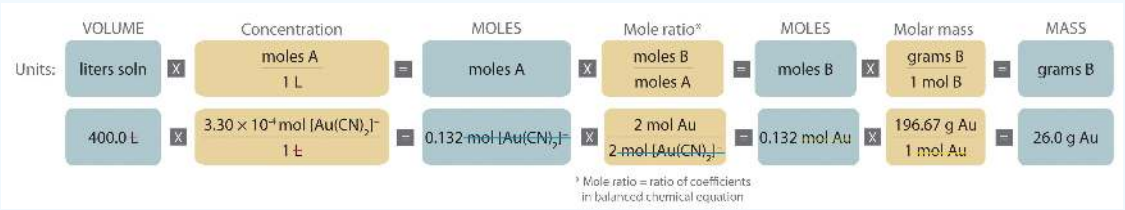
Strategy:

A. Check the chemical equation to make sure it is balanced as written; balance if necessary. Then calculate the number of moles of $[Au(CN)_2]^-$ present by multiplying the volume of the solution by its concentration.

B. From the balanced chemical equation, use a mole ratio to calculate the number of moles of gold that can be obtained from the reaction. To calculate the mass of gold recovered, multiply the number of moles of gold by its molar mass.

Solution:

A The equation is balanced as written; proceed to the stoichiometric calculation. Figure 1.14.2 is adapted for this particular problem as follows:



Flowchart. Top: volume is converted to moles of A via the concentration. Moles of A is then converted to moles of B via the mole ratio. The molar mass of B is then used to convert moles of B to grams. Bottom: same flowchart as above, filled in with information given in the exercise.

As indicated in the strategy, start by calculating the number of moles of $[Au(CN)_2]^-$ present in the solution from the volume and concentration of the $[Au(CN)_2]^-$ solution:

$$moles\ [Au(CN)_2]^- = V_L M_{mol/L} \tag{1.14.2}$$

$$= 400.0\ \cancel{L}\left(\frac{3.30 \times 10^{4-}\ mol\ [Au(CN)_2]^-}{1\ \cancel{L}}\right) = 0.132\ mol\ [Au(CN)_2]^- \tag{1.14.3}$$

B Because the coefficients of gold and the $[Au(CN)_2]^-$ ion are the same in the balanced chemical equation, assuming that Zn(s) is present in excess, the number of moles of gold produced is the same as the number of moles of $[Au(CN)_2]^-$ (i.e., 0.132 mol

of Au). The problem asks for the mass of gold that can be obtained, so the number of moles of gold must be converted to the corresponding mass using the molar mass of gold:

$$mass\ of\ Au = (moles\ Au)(molar\ mass\ Au) \tag{1.14.4}$$

$$= 0.132\ \cancel{mol\ Au}\left(\frac{196.97\ g\ Au}{1\ \cancel{mol\ Au}}\right) = 26.0\ g\ Au \tag{1.14.5}$$

At a 2011 market price of over $1400 per troy ounce (31.10 g), this amount of gold is worth $1170.

$$26.0\ \cancel{g\ Au} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{troy\ oz}}{31.10\ \cancel{g}} \times \frac{\$1400}{1\ \cancel{troy\ oz\ Au}} = \$1170$$

? Exercise 1.14.2 : Lanthanum Oxalate

What mass of solid lanthanum(III) oxalate nonahydrate [$La_2(C_2O_4)_3 \cdot 9H_2O$] can be obtained from 650 mL of a 0.0170 M aqueous solution of $LaCl_3$ by adding a stoichiometric amount of sodium oxalate?

Answer

3.89 g



Finding Mols and Masses of Reactants and Products Using Stoichiometric Factors (Mol Ratios): Finding Mols and Masses of Reactants and Products Using Stoichiometric Factors, YouTube(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Summary

Either the masses or the volumes of solutions of reactants and products can be used to determine the amounts of other species in the balanced chemical equation. Quantitative calculations that involve the stoichiometry of reactions in solution use volumes of solutions of known concentration instead of masses of reactants or products. The coefficients in the balanced chemical equation tell how many moles of reactants are needed and how many moles of product can be produced.

1.14: Balancing Chemical Equations is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.6: Quantitative Information from Balanced Equations** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

1.15: Stoichiometric Calculations- Amounts of Reactants and Products

Stoichiometry is a section of chemistry that involves using relationships between reactants and/or products in a chemical reaction to determine desired quantitative data. In Greek, *stoikhein* means element and *metron* means measure, so stoichiometry literally translated means the measure of elements. In order to use stoichiometry to run calculations about chemical reactions, it is important to first understand the relationships that exist between products and reactants and why they exist, which require understanding how to balance reactions.

Balancing

In chemistry, chemical reactions are frequently written as an equation, using chemical symbols. The reactants are displayed on the left side of the equation and the products are shown on the right, with the separation of either a single or double arrow that signifies the direction of the reaction. The significance of single and double arrow is important when discussing solubility constants, but we will not go into detail about it in this module. To balance an equation, it is necessary that there are the same number of atoms on the left side of the equation as the right. One can do this by raising the coefficients.

Reactants to Products

A chemical equation is like a recipe for a reaction so it displays all the ingredients or terms of a chemical reaction. It includes the elements, molecules, or ions in the reactants and in the products as well as their states, and the proportion for how much of each particle reacts or is formed relative to one another, through the stoichiometric coefficient. The following equation demonstrates the typical format of a chemical equation:

$$2\,\mathrm{Na(s)} + 2\,\mathrm{HCl(aq)} \rightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NaCl(aq)} + \mathrm{H_2(g)}$$

In the above equation, the elements present in the reaction are represented by their chemical symbols. Based on the Law of Conservation of Mass, which states that matter is neither created nor destroyed in a chemical reaction, every chemical reaction has the same elements in its reactants and products, though the elements they are paired up with often change in a reaction. In this reaction, sodium (Na), hydrogen (H), and chloride (Cl) are the elements present in both reactants, so based on the law of conservation of mass, they are also present on the product side of the equations. Displaying each element is important when using the chemical equation to convert between elements.

Stoichiometric Coefficients

In a balanced reaction, both sides of the equation have the same number of elements. The stoichiometric coefficient is the number written in front of atoms, ion and molecules in a chemical reaction to balance the number of each element on both the reactant and product sides of the equation. Though the stoichiometric coefficients can be fractions, whole numbers are frequently used and often preferred. This stoichiometric coefficients are useful since they establish the mole ratio between reactants and products. In the balanced equation:

$$2\,\mathrm{Na(s)} + 2\,\mathrm{HCl(aq)} \rightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NaCl(aq)} + \mathrm{H_2(g)}$$

we can determine that 2 moles of HCl will react with 2 moles of $Na_{(s)}$ to form 2 moles of $NaCl_{(aq)}$ and 1 mole of $H_{2(g)}$. If we know how many moles of Na reacted, we can use the ratio of 2 moles of $NaCl$ to 2 moles of Na to determine how many moles of $NaCl$ were produced or we can use the ratio of 1 mole of H_2 to 2 moles of Na to convert to $NaCl$. This is known as the coefficient factor. The balanced equation makes it possible to convert information about the change in one reactant or product to quantitative data about another reactant or product. Understanding this is essential to solving stoichiometric problems.

Example 1

Lead (IV) hydroxide and sulfuric acid react as shown below. Balance the reaction.

$$\mathrm{Pb(OH)_4} + \mathrm{H_2SO_4} \rightarrow \mathrm{Pb(SO_4)_2} + \mathrm{H_2O}$$

Solution

Start by counting the number of atoms of each element.

UNBALANCED

Element	Reactant (# of atoms)	Product (# of atoms)
Pb	1	1
O	8	9
H	6	2
S	1	2

The reaction is not balanced; the reaction has 16 reactant atoms and only 14 product atoms and does not obey the conservation of mass principle. Stoichiometric coefficients must be added to make the equation balanced. In this example, there are only one sulfur atom present on the reactant side, so a coefficient of 2 should be added in front of H_2SO_4 to have an equal number of sulfur on both sides of the equation. Since there are 12 oxygen on the reactant side and only 9 on the product side, a 4 coefficient should be added in front of H_2O where there is a deficiency of oxygen. Count the number of elements now present on either side of the equation. Since the numbers are the same, the equation is now balanced.

$$\mathrm{Pb(OH)_4 + 2\,H_2SO_4 \rightarrow Pb(SO_4)_2 + 4\,H_2O}$$

BALANCED

Element	Reactant (# of atoms)	Product (# of atoms)
Pb	1	1
O	12	12
H	8	8
S	2	2

Balancing reactions involves finding least common multiples between numbers of elements present on both sides of the equation. In general, when applying coefficients, add coefficients to the molecules or unpaired elements last.

A balanced equation ultimately has to satisfy two conditions.

1. The numbers of each element on the left and right side of the equation must be equal.
2. The charge on both sides of the equation must be equal. It is especially important to pay attention to charge when balancing redox reactions.

Stoichiometry and Balanced Equations

In stoichiometry, balanced equations make it possible to compare different elements through the **stoichiometric factor** discussed earlier. This is the mole ratio between two factors in a chemical reaction found through the ratio of stoichiometric coefficients. Here is a real world example to show how stoichiometric factors are useful.

Example 2

There are 12 party invitations and 20 stamps. Each party invitation needs 2 stamps to be sent. How many party invitations can be sent?

Solution

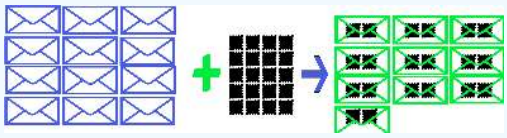
The equation for this can be written as

$$\mathrm{I + 2\,S \rightarrow IS_2}$$

where

- I represents invitations,
- S represents stamps, and
- IS_2 represents the sent party invitations consisting of one invitation and two stamps.

Based on this, we have the ratio of 2 stamps for 1 sent invite, based on the balanced equation.



Invitations Stamps Party Invitations Sent

In this example are all the reactants (stamps and invitations) used up? No, and this is normally the case with chemical reactions. There is often excess of one of the reactants. The limiting reagent, the one that runs out first, prevents the reaction from continuing and determines the maximum amount of product that can be formed.

Example 3

What is the limiting reagent in this example?

Solution

Stamps, because there was only enough to send out invitations, whereas there were enough invitations for 12 complete party invitations. Aside from just looking at the problem, the problem can be solved using stoichiometric factors.

$$12\ I \times (1IS_2/1I) = 12\ IS_2 \text{ possible}$$

$$20\ S \times (1IS_2/2S) = 10\ IS_2 \text{ possible}$$

When there is no limiting reagent because the ratio of all the reactants caused them to run out at the same time, it is known as *stoichiometric proportions*.

Types of Reactions

There are 6 basic types of reactions.

- **Combustion**: Combustion is the formation of CO_2 and H_2O from the reaction of a chemical and O_2
- **Combination (synthesis)**: Combination is the addition of 2 or more simple reactants to form a complex product.
- **Decomposition:** Decomposition is when complex reactants are broken down into simpler products.
- **Single Displacement**: Single displacement is when an element from on reactant switches with an element of the other to form two new reactants.
- **Double Displacement:** Double displacement is when two elements from on reactants switched with two elements of the other to form two new reactants.
- **Acid-Base:** Acid- base reactions are when two reactants form salts and water.

Molar Mass

Before applying stoichiometric factors to chemical equations, you need to understand molar mass. Molar mass is a useful chemical ratio between mass and moles. The atomic mass of each individual element as listed in the periodic table established this relationship for atoms or ions. For compounds or molecules, you have to take the sum of the atomic mass times the number of each atom in order to determine the molar mass

Example 4

What is the molar mass of H_2O?

Solution

$$\text{Molar mass} = 2 \times (1.00794\ g/mol) + 1 \times (15.9994\ g/mol) = 18.01528\ g/mol$$

Using molar mass and coefficient factors, it is possible to convert mass of reactants to mass of products or vice versa.

Example 5: Combustion of Propane

Propane (C_3H_8) burns in this reaction:

$$C_3H_8 + 5\,O_2 \rightarrow 4\,H_2O + 3\,CO_2$$

If 200 g of propane is burned, how many g of H_2O is produced?

Solution

Steps to getting this answer: Since you cannot calculate from grams of reactant to grams of products you must convert from grams of C_3H_8 to moles of C_3H_8 then from moles of C_3H_8 to moles of H_2O. Then convert from moles of H_2O to grams of H_2O.

- Step 1: 200 g C_3H_8 is equal to 4.54 mol C_3H_8.
- Step 2: Since there is a ratio of 4:1 H_2O to C_3H_8, for every 4.54 mol C_3H_8 there are 18.18 mol H_2O.
- Step 3: Convert 18.18 mol H_2O to g H_2O. 18.18 mol H_2O is equal to 327.27 g H_2O.

Variation in Stoichiometric Equations

Almost every quantitative relationship can be converted into a ratio that can be useful in data analysis.

Density

Density (ρ) is calculated as mass/volume. This ratio can be useful in determining the volume of a solution, given the mass or useful in finding the mass given the volume. In the latter case, the inverse relationship would be used.

Volume x (Mass/Volume) = Mass

Mass x (Volume/Mass) = Volume

Percent Mass

Percents establish a relationship as well. A percent mass states how many grams of a mixture are of a certain element or molecule. The percent X% states that of every 100 grams of a mixture, X grams are of the stated element or compound. This is useful in determining mass of a desired substance in a molecule.

Example 6

A substance is 5% carbon by mass. If the total mass of the substance is 10 grams, what is the mass of carbon in the sample? How many moles of carbon are there?

Solution

10 g sample x (5 g carbon/100 g sample) = 0.5 g carbon

0.5g carbon x (1 mol carbon/12.011g carbon) = 0.0416 mol carbon

Molarity

Molarity (moles/L) establishes a relationship between moles and liters. Given volume and molarity, it is possible to calculate mole or use moles and molarity to calculate volume. This is useful in chemical equations and dilutions.

Example 7

How much 5 M stock solution is needed to prepare 100 mL of 2 M solution?

Solution

100 mL of dilute solution (1 L/1000 mL)(2 mol/1L solution)(1 L stock solution/5 mol solution)(1000 ml stock solution/1L stock solution) = 40 mL stock solution.

These ratios of molarity, density, and mass percent are useful in complex examples ahead.

Determining Empirical Formulas

An empirical formula can be determined through chemical stoichiometry by determining which elements are present in the molecule and in what ratio. The ratio of elements is determined by comparing the number of moles of each element present.

Example 8: Combustion of Organic Molecules

1.000 gram of an organic molecule burns completely in the presence of excess oxygen. It yields 0.0333 mol of CO_2 and 0.599 g of H_2O. What is the empirical formula of the organic molecule?

Solution

This is a combustion reaction. The problem requires that you know that organic molecules consist of some combination of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen elements. With that in mind, write the chemical equation out, replacing unknown numbers with variables. Do not worry about coefficients here.

$$CxHyOz(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + H_2O(g)$$

Since all the moles of C and H in CO_2 and H_2O, respectively have to have came from the 1 gram sample of unknown, start by calculating how many moles of each element were present in the unknown sample.

$$0.0333\text{mol } CO_2 \text{ (1mol C/ 1mol } CO_2) = 0.0333\text{mol C in unknown}$$

$$0.599\text{g } H_2O \text{ (1mol } H_2O\text{/ 18.01528g } H_2O)(2\text{mol H/ 1mol } H_2O) = 0.0665 \text{ mol H in unknown}$$

Calculate the final moles of oxygen by taking the sum of the moles of oxygen in CO_2 and H_2O. This will give you the number of moles from both the unknown organic molecule and the O_2 so you must subtract the moles of oxygen transferred from the O_2.

Moles of oxygen in CO_2:

$$0.0333\text{mol } CO_2 \text{ (2mol O/1mol } CO_2) = 0.0666 \text{ mol O}$$

Moles of oxygen in H_2O:

$$0.599\text{g } H_2O \text{ (1mol } H_2O\text{/18.01528 g } H_2O)(1\text{mol O/1mol } H_2O) = 0.0332 \text{ mol O}$$

Using the Law of Conservation, we know that the mass before a reaction must equal the mass after a reaction. With this we can use the difference of the final mass of products and initial mass of the unknown organic molecule to determine the mass of the O_2 reactant.

$$0.333\text{mol } CO_2(44.0098\text{g } CO_2\text{/ 1mol } CO_2) = 1.466\text{g } CO_2$$

$$1.466\text{g } CO_2 + 0.599\text{g } H_2O - 1.000\text{g unknown organic} = 1.065\text{g } O_2$$

Moles of oxygen in O_2

$$1.065\text{g } O_2(1\text{mol } O_2\text{/ 31.9988g } O_2)(2\text{mol O/1mol } O_2) = 0.0666\text{mol O}$$

Moles of oxygen in unknown

$$(0.0666\text{mol O} + 0.0332 \text{ mol O}) - 0.0666\text{mol O} = 0.0332 \text{ mol O}$$

Construct a mole ratio for C, H, and O in the unknown and divide by the smallest number.

$$(1/0.0332)(0.0333\text{mol C} : 0.0665\text{mol H} : 0.0332 \text{ mol O}) \Rightarrow 1\text{mol C: 2 mol H: 1 mol O}$$

From this ratio, the empirical formula is calculated to be CH_2O.

Determining Molecular Formulas

To determine a molecular formula, first determine the empirical formula for the compound as shown in the section above and then determine the molecular mass experimentally. Next, divide the molecular mass by the molar mass of the empirical formula (calculated by finding the sum the total atomic masses of all the elements in the empirical formula). Multiply the subscripts of the molecular formula by this answer to get the molecular formula.

Example 9

In the example above, it was determined that the unknown molecule had an empirical formula of CH_2O.

1. Find the molar mass of the empircal formula CH_2O.

12.011g C + (1.008 g H) * (2 H) + 15.999g O = 30.026 g/mol CH_2O

2. Determine the molecular mass experimentally. For our compound, it is 120.056 g/mol.

3. Divide the experimentally determined molecular mass by the mass of the empirical formula.

(120.056 g/mol) / (30.026 g/mol) = 3.9984

4. Since 3.9984 is very close to four, it is possible to safely round up and assume that there was a slight error in the experimentally determined molecular mass. If the answer is not close to a whole number, there was either an error in the calculation of the empirical formula or a large error in the determination of the molecular mass.

5. Multiply the ratio from step 4 by the subscripts of the empirical formula to get the molecular formula.

$CH_2O * 4 = ?$

C: 1 * 4 = 4

H: 2 * 4 = 8

O 1 * 4 = 4

$CH_2O * 4 = C_4H_8O_4$

6. Check your result by calculating the molar mass of the molecular formula and comparing it to the experimentally determined mass.

molar mass of $C_4H_8O_4$= 120.104 g/mol

experimentally determined mass = 120.056 g/mol

% error = | theoretical - experimental | / theoretical * 100%

% error = | 120.104 g/mol - 120.056 g/mol | / 120.104 g/mol * 100%

% error = 0.040 %

Example 10: Complex Stoichiometry Problem

An amateur welder melts down two metals to make an alloy that is 45% copper by mass and 55% iron(II) by mass. The alloy's density is 3.15 g/L. One liter of alloy completely fills a mold of volume 1000 cm^3. He accidentally breaks off a 1.203 cm^3 piece of the homogenous mixture and sweeps it outside where it reacts with acid rain over years. Assuming the acid reacts with all the iron(II) and not with the copper, how many grams of $H_2(g)$ are released into the atmosphere because of the amateur's carelessness? (Note that the situation is fiction.)

Solution

Step 1: Write a balanced equation after determining the products and reactants. In this situation, since we assume copper does not react, the reactants are only $H^+(aq)$ and Fe(s). The given product is H2(g) and based on knowledge of redox reactions, the other product must be $Fe^{2+}(aq)$.

$$Fe(s) + 2\,H^+(aq) \rightarrow H_2(g) + Fe^{2+}(aq)$$

Step 2: Write down all the given information

Alloy density = (3.15g alloy/ 1L alloy)

x grams of alloy = 45% copper = (45g Cu(s)/100g alloy)

x grams of alloy = 55% iron(II) = (55g Fe(s)/100g alloy)

1 liter alloy = 1000cm^3 alloy

alloy sample = 1.203cm^3 alloy

Step 3: Answer the question of what is being asked. The question asks how much H2(g) was produced. You are expected to solve for the amount of product formed.

Step 4: Start with the compound you know the most about and use given ratios to convert it to the desired compound.

Convert the given amount of alloy reactant to solve for the moles of Fe(s) reacted.

1.203cm^3 alloy(1liter alloy/1000cm^3 alloy)(3.15g alloy/1liter alloy)(55g Fe(s)/100g alloy)(1mol Fe(s)/55.8g Fe(s))=3.74 x 10^{-5} mol Fe(s)

Make sure all the units cancel out to give you moles of $\mathrm{Fe(s)}$. *The above conversion involves using multiple stoichiometric relationships from density, percent mass, and molar mass.*

The balanced equation must now be used to convert moles of Fe(s) to moles of H_2(g). Remember that the balanced equation's coefficients state the stoichiometric factor or mole ratio of reactants and products.

3.74 x 10^{-5} mol Fe (s) (1mol H_2(g)/1mol Fe(s)) = 3.74 x 10^{-5} mol H_2(g)

Step 5: Check units

The question asks for how many grams of H_2(g) were released so the moles of H_2(g) must still be converted to grams using the molar mass of H_2(g). Since there are two H in each H_2, its molar mass is twice that of a single H atom.

molar mass = 2(1.00794g/mol) = 2.01588g/mol

3.74 x 10^{-5} mol H_2(g) (2.01588g H_2(g)/1mol H_2 (g)) = **7.53 x 10^{-5} g H_2(g) released**

Problems

Stoichiometry and balanced equations make it possible to use one piece of information to calculate another. There are countless ways stoichiometry can be used in chemistry and everyday life. Try and see if you can use what you learned to solve the following problems.

1) Why are the following equations not considered balanced?

a. $H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow H_{2(g)} + O_{2(g)}$
b. $Zn_{(s)} + Au^{+}_{(aq)} \rightarrow Zn^{2+}_{(aq)} + Ag_{(s)}$

2) Hydrochloric acid reacts with a solid chunk of aluminum to produce hydrogen gas and aluminum ions. Write the balanced chemical equation for this reaction.

3) Given a 10.1M stock solution, how many mL must be added to water to produce 200 mL of 5M solution?

4) If 0.502g of methane gas react with 0.27g of oxygen to produce carbon dioxide and water, what is the limiting reagent and how many moles of water are produced? The unbalanced equation is provided below.

$$\mathrm{CH_4(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)}$$

5) A 0.777g sample of an organic compound is burned completely. It produces 1.42g CO_2 and 0.388g H_2O. Knowing that all the carbon and hydrogen atoms in CO_2 and H_2O came from the 0.777g sample, what is the empirical formula of the organic compound?

Weblinks for further reference

- 1. Refer to http://chemistry.about.com/cs/stoich.../aa042903a.htm as an outside resource on how to balance chemical reactions.
- 2. Refer to http://www.learnchem.net/tutorials/stoich.shtml as an outside resource on stoichiometry.

References

1. T. E. Brown, H.E LeMay, B. Bursten, C. Murphy. Chemistry: The Central Science. Prentice Hall, January 8, 2008.
2. J. C. Kotz P.M. Treichel, J. Townsend. Chemistry and Chemical Reactivity. Brooks Cole, February 7, 2008.
3. Petrucci, harwood, Herring, Madura. General Chemistry Principles & Modern Applications. Prentice Hall. New Jersey, 2007.

Contributors and Attributions

- Joseph Nijmeh (UCD), Mark Tye (DVC)

1.15: Stoichiometric Calculations- Amounts of Reactants and Products is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **Stoichiometry and Balancing Reactions** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

1.16: Calculations Involving a Limiting Reactant

Learning Objectives

- To understand the concept of limiting reactants and quantify incomplete reactions

In all the examples discussed thus far, the reactants were assumed to be present in stoichiometric quantities. Consequently, none of the reactants was left over at the end of the reaction. This is often desirable, as in the case of a space shuttle, where excess oxygen or hydrogen was not only extra freight to be hauled into orbit but also an explosion hazard. More often, however, reactants are present in mole ratios that are not the same as the ratio of the coefficients in the balanced chemical equation. As a result, one or more of them will not be used up completely but will be left over when the reaction is completed. In this situation, the amount of product that can be obtained is limited by the amount of only one of the reactants. The reactant that restricts the amount of product obtained is called the limiting reactant. The reactant that remains after a reaction has gone to completion is in excess.

Consider a nonchemical example. Assume you have invited some friends for dinner and want to bake brownies for dessert. You find two boxes of brownie mix in your pantry and see that each package requires two eggs. The balanced equation for brownie preparation is thus

$$1\ \text{box mix} + 2\ \text{eggs} \rightarrow 1\ \text{batch brownies} \tag{1.16.1}$$

If you have a dozen eggs, which ingredient will determine the number of batches of brownies that you can prepare? Because each box of brownie mix requires two eggs and you have two boxes, you need four eggs. Twelve eggs is eight more eggs than you need. Although the ratio of eggs to boxes in is 2:1, the ratio in your possession is 6:1. Hence the eggs are the ingredient (reactant) present in excess, and the brownie mix is the limiting reactant. Even if you had a refrigerator full of eggs, you could make only two batches of brownies.

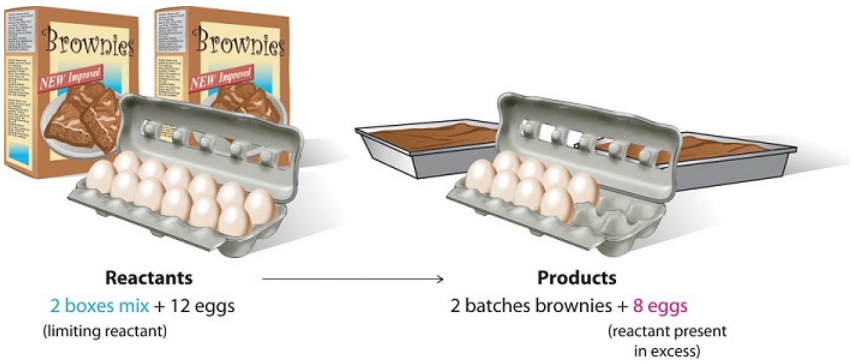


Figure 1.16.1: The Concept of a Limiting Reactant in the Preparation of Brownies

Reactants: 2 boxes of brownie mix + 12 eggs produces 2 batches of brownies + 8 eggs. Brownie mix is the limiting reactant. Eggs are the reactant present in excess.



Introduction to Limiting Reactant Problems: Introduction to Limiting Reactant Problems, YouTube(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Now consider a chemical example of a limiting reactant: the production of pure titanium. This metal is fairly light (45% lighter than steel and only 60% heavier than aluminum) and has great mechanical strength (as strong as steel and twice as strong as aluminum). Because it is also highly resistant to corrosion and can withstand extreme temperatures, titanium has many applications in the aerospace industry. Titanium is also used in medical implants and portable computer housings because it is light and resistant to corrosion. Although titanium is the ninth most common element in Earth's crust, it is relatively difficult to extract from its ores. In the first step of the extraction process, titanium-containing oxide minerals react with solid carbon and chlorine gas to form titanium tetrachloride ($\mathrm{TiCl_4}$) and carbon dioxide.

$$\mathrm{TiO_2(s) + Cl_2(g) \rightarrow TiCl_4(g) + CO_2(g)}$$

Titanium tetrachloride is then converted to metallic titanium by reaction with molten magnesium metal at high temperature:

$$\mathrm{TiCl_4(g) + 2\ Mg(l) \rightarrow Ti(s) + 2\ MgCl_2(l)} \tag{1.16.2}$$

Because titanium ores, carbon, and chlorine are all rather inexpensive, the high price of titanium (about $100 per kilogram) is largely due to the high cost of magnesium metal. Under these circumstances, magnesium metal is the limiting reactant in the production of metallic titanium.



Figure 1.16.2: Medical use of titanium. Here is an example of its successful use in joint replacement implants. An A-P X-ray of a pelvis showing a total hip joint replacement. The right hip joint (on the left in the photograph) has been replaced. A metal prostheses is cemented in the top of the right femur and the head of the femur has been replaced by the rounded head of the prosthesis. Figure courtesy of NIH (NIADDK) 9AO4 (Connie Raab)

With 1.00 kg of titanium tetrachloride and 200 g of magnesium metal, how much titanium metal can be produced according to Equation 1.16.2?

Solving this type of problem requires that you carry out the following steps

1. Determine the number of moles of each reactant.
2. Compare the mole ratio of the reactants with the ratio in the balanced chemical equation to determine which reactant is limiting.
3. Calculate the number of moles of product that can be obtained from the limiting reactant.
4. Convert the number of moles of product to mass of product.

Step 1: To determine the number of moles of reactants present, calculate or look up their molar masses: 189.679 g/mol for titanium tetrachloride and 24.305 g/mol for magnesium. The number of moles of each is calculated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{moles } \mathrm{TiCl_4} &= \frac{\text{mass } \mathrm{TiCl_4}}{\text{molar mass } \mathrm{TiCl_4}} \\ &= 1000 \ \cancel{g} \ \mathrm{TiCl_4} \times \frac{1 \, mol \ TiCl_4}{189.679 \ \cancel{g} \ \mathrm{TiCl_4}} \\ &= 5.272 \, mol \ \mathrm{TiCl_4} \end{aligned} \tag{1.16.3}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{moles Mg} &= \frac{\text{mass Mg}}{\text{molar mass Mg}} \\ &= 200 \ \cancel{g} \ \mathrm{Mg} \times \frac{1 \, mol \, \mathrm{Mg}}{24.305 \ \cancel{g} \ \mathrm{Mg}} \\ &= 8.23 \, \mathrm{mol \ Mg} \end{aligned} \tag{1.16.4}$$

Step 2: There are more moles of magnesium than of titanium tetrachloride, but the ratio is only the following:

$$\frac{mol \, \mathrm{Mg}}{mol \, \mathrm{TiCl_4}} = \frac{8.23 \, mol}{5.272 \, mol} = 1.56$$

Because the ratio of the coefficients in the balanced chemical equation is,

$$\frac{2 \, mol \, \mathrm{Mg}}{1 \, mol \, \mathrm{TiCl_4}} = 2$$

there is not have enough magnesium to react with all the titanium tetrachloride. If this point is not clear from the mole ratio, calculate the number of moles of one reactant that is required for complete reaction of the other reactant. For example, there are 8.23 mol of Mg, so (8.23 ÷ 2) = 4.12 mol of $\mathrm{TiCl_4}$ are required for complete reaction. Because there are 5.272 mol of $\mathrm{TiCl_4}$, titanium tetrachloride is present in excess. Conversely, 5.272 mol of $\mathrm{TiCl_4}$ requires 2 × 5.272 = 10.54 mol of Mg, but there are only 8.23 mol. Therefore, magnesium is the limiting reactant.

Step 3: Because magnesium is the limiting reactant, the number of moles of magnesium determines the number of moles of titanium that can be formed:

$$mol \ \mathrm{Ti} = 8.23 \, mol \ \mathrm{Mg} = \frac{1 \, mol \ \mathrm{Ti}}{2 \, mol \ \mathrm{Mg}} = 4.12 \, mol \ \mathrm{Ti}$$

Thus only 4.12 mol of Ti can be formed.

Step 4. To calculate the mass of titanium metal that can obtain, multiply the number of moles of titanium by the molar mass of titanium (47.867 g/mol):

$$\begin{aligned}\text{moles Ti} &= \text{mass Ti} \times \text{molar mass Ti} \\ &= 4.12 \, mol \ \mathrm{Ti} \times \frac{47.867 \, g \ \mathrm{Ti}}{1 \, mol \ \mathrm{Ti}} \\ &= 197 \, g \ \mathrm{Ti} \end{aligned}$$

Here is a simple and reliable way to identify the limiting reactant in any problem of this sort:

1. Calculate the number of moles of each reactant present: 5.272 mol of $\mathrm{TiCl_4}$ and 8.23 mol of Mg.
2. Divide the actual number of moles of each reactant by its stoichiometric coefficient in the balanced chemical equation:

$$TiCl_4 : \frac{5.272 \, mol \, (actual)}{1 \, mol \, (stoich)} = 5.272$$

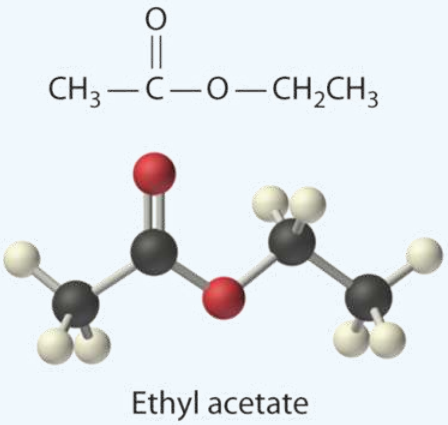
$$Mg : \frac{8.23 \, mol \, (actual)}{2 \, mol \, (stoich)} = 4.12$$

3. The reactant with the smallest mole ratio is limiting. Magnesium, with a calculated stoichiometric mole ratio of 4.12, is the limiting reactant.

Density is the mass per unit volume of a substance. If we are given the density of a substance, we can use it in stoichiometric calculations involving liquid reactants and/or products, as Example 1.16.1 demonstrates.

Example 1.16.1: Fingernail Polish Remover

Ethyl acetate ($CH_3CO_2C_2H_5$) is the solvent in many fingernail polish removers and is used to decaffeinate coffee beans and tea leaves. It is prepared by reacting ethanol (C_2H_5OH) with acetic acid (CH_3CO_2H); the other product is water. A small amount of sulfuric acid is used to accelerate the reaction, but the sulfuric acid is not consumed and does not appear in the balanced chemical equation. Given 10.0 mL each of acetic acid and ethanol, how many grams of ethyl acetate can be prepared from this reaction? The densities of acetic acid and ethanol are 1.0492 g/mL and 0.7893 g/mL, respectively.



Given: reactants, products, and volumes and densities of reactants

Asked for: mass of product

Strategy:

A. Balance the chemical equation for the reaction.
B. Use the given densities to convert from volume to mass. Then use each molar mass to convert from mass to moles.
C. Using mole ratios, determine which substance is the limiting reactant. After identifying the limiting reactant, use mole ratios based on the number of moles of limiting reactant to determine the number of moles of product.
D. Convert from moles of product to mass of product.

Solution:

A Always begin by writing the balanced chemical equation for the reaction:

$$C_2H_5OH(l) + CH_3CO_2H(aq) \rightarrow CH_3CO_2C_2H_5(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

B We need to calculate the number of moles of ethanol and acetic acid that are present in 10.0 mL of each. Recall that the density of a substance is the mass divided by the volume:

$$\text{density} = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{volume}}$$

Rearranging this expression gives mass = (density)(volume). We can replace mass by the product of the density and the volume to calculate the number of moles of each substance in 10.0 mL (remember, 1 mL = 1 cm^3):

$$\text{moles } C_2H_5OH = \frac{\text{mass } C_2H_5OH}{\text{molar mass } C_2H_5OH}$$

$$= \frac{(\text{volume } C_2H_5OH) \times (\text{density } C_2H_5OH)}{\text{molar mass } C_2H_5OH}$$

$$= 10.0 \ \cancel{ml}\ C_2H_5OH \times \frac{0.7893 \ \cancel{g}\ C_2H_5OH}{1 \ \cancel{ml}\ C_2H_5OH} \times \frac{1\, mol\ C_2H_5OH}{46.07 \ \cancel{g}\ C_2H_5OH}$$

$$= 0.171\, mol\ C_2H_5OH$$

$$\text{moles } CH_3CO_2H = \frac{\text{mass } CH_3CO_2H}{\text{molar mass } CH_3CO_2H}$$

$$= \frac{(\text{volume } CH_3CO_2H) \times (\text{density } CH_3CO_2H)}{\text{molar mass } CH_3CO_2H}$$

$$= 10.0 \ \cancel{ml}\ CH_3CO_2H \times \frac{1.0492 \ \cancel{g}\ CH_3CO_2H}{1 \ \cancel{ml}\ CH_3CO_2H} \times \frac{1\, mol\ CH_3CO_2H}{60.05 \ \cancel{g}\ CH_3CO_2H}$$

$$= 0.175\, mol\ CH_3CO_2H$$

C The number of moles of acetic acid exceeds the number of moles of ethanol. Because the reactants both have coefficients of 1 in the balanced chemical equation, the mole ratio is 1:1. We have 0.171 mol of ethanol and 0.175 mol of acetic acid, so ethanol is the limiting reactant and acetic acid is in excess. The coefficient in the balanced chemical equation for the product (ethyl acetate) is also 1, so the mole ratio of ethanol and ethyl acetate is also 1:1. This means that given 0.171 mol of ethanol, the amount of ethyl acetate produced must also be 0.171 mol:

$$moles \text{ ethyl acetate} = mol \text{ ethanol} \times \frac{1\, mol \text{ ethyl acetate}}{1\, mol \text{ ethanol}}$$

$$= 0.171\, mol\ C_2H_5OH \times \frac{1\, mol\, CH_3CO_2C_2H_5}{1\, mol\ C_2H_5OH}$$

$$= 0.171\, mol\ CH_3CO_2C_2H_5$$

D The final step is to determine the mass of ethyl acetate that can be formed, which we do by multiplying the number of moles by the molar mass:

$$\text{mass of ethyl acetate} = mol \text{ ethyl acetate} \times \text{molar mass ethyl acetate}$$

$$= 0.171\, mol\, CH_3CO_2C_2H_5 \times \frac{88.11\, g\, CH_3CO_2C_2H_5}{1\, mol\, CH_3CO_2C_2H_5}$$

$$= 15.1\, g\, CH_3CO_2C_2H_5$$

Thus 15.1 g of ethyl acetate can be prepared in this reaction. If necessary, you could use the density of ethyl acetate (0.9003 g/cm3) to determine the volume of ethyl acetate that could be produced:

$$\text{volume of ethyl acetate} = 15.1\, g\, CH_3CO_2C_2H_5 \times \frac{1\, ml\ CH_3CO_2C_2H_5}{0.9003\, g\ CH_3CO_2C_2H_5}$$

$$= 16.8\, ml\, CH_3CO_2C_2H_5$$

? Exercise 1.16.1

Under appropriate conditions, the reaction of elemental phosphorus and elemental sulfur produces the compound P_4S_{10}. How much P_4S_{10} can be prepared starting with 10.0 g of P_4 and 30.0 g of S_8?

Answer

35.9 g



Determining the Limiting Reactant and Theoretical Yield for a Reaction: Determining the Limiting Reactant and Theoretical Yield for a Reaction, YouTube(opens in new window) [youtu.be]

Limiting Reactants in Solutions

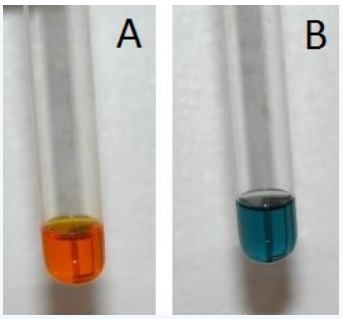
The concept of limiting reactants applies to reactions carried out in solution as well as to reactions involving pure substances. If all the reactants but one are present in excess, then the amount of the limiting reactant may be calculated as illustrated in Example 1.16.2

Example 1.16.2: Breathalyzer reaction

Because the consumption of alcoholic beverages adversely affects the performance of tasks that require skill and judgment, in most countries it is illegal to drive while under the influence of alcohol. In almost all US states, a blood alcohol level of 0.08% by volume is considered legally drunk. Higher levels cause acute intoxication (0.20%), unconsciousness (about 0.30%), and even death (about 0.50%). The Breathalyzer is a portable device that measures the ethanol concentration in a person's breath, which is directly proportional to the blood alcohol level. The reaction used in the Breathalyzer is the oxidation of ethanol by the dichromate ion:

$$3\,CH_3CH_2OH(aq) + \underset{yellow-orange}{2\,Cr_2O_7^{2-}}(aq) + 16\,H^+(aq) \xrightarrow[H_2SO_4(aq)]{Ag^+} 3\,CH_3CO_2H(aq) + 4\,\underset{green}{Cr^{3+}}(aq) + 11\,H_2O(l)$$

When a measured volume (52.5 mL) of a suspect's breath is bubbled through a solution of excess potassium dichromate in dilute sulfuric acid, the ethanol is rapidly absorbed and oxidized to acetic acid by the dichromate ions. In the process, the chromium atoms in some of the $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$ ions are reduced from Cr^{6+} to Cr^{3+}. In the presence of Ag^+ ions that act as a catalyst, the reaction is complete in less than a minute. Because the $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$ ion (the reactant) is yellow-orange and the Cr^{3+} ion (the product) forms a green solution, the amount of ethanol in the person's breath (the limiting reactant) can be determined quite accurately by comparing the color of the final solution with the colors of standard solutions prepared with known amounts of ethanol.



A Breathalyzer reaction with a test tube before (a) and after (b) ethanol is added. When a measured volume of a suspect's breath is bubbled through the solution, the ethanol is oxidized to acetic acid, and the solution changes color from yellow-orange to green. The intensity of the green color indicates the amount of ethanol in the sample.

A typical Breathalyzer ampul contains 3.0 mL of a 0.25 mg/mL solution of $K_2Cr_2O_7$ in 50% H_2SO_4 as well as a fixed concentration of $AgNO_3$ (typically 0.25 mg/mL is used for this purpose). How many grams of ethanol must be present in 52.5 mL of a person's breath to convert all the Cr^{6+} to Cr^{3+}?

Given: volume and concentration of one reactant

Asked for: mass of other reactant needed for complete reaction

Strategy:

A. Calculate the number of moles of $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$ ion in 1 mL of the Breathalyzer solution by dividing the mass of $K_2Cr_2O_7$ by its molar mass.

B. Find the total number of moles of $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$ ion in the Breathalyzer ampul by multiplying the number of moles contained in 1 mL by the total volume of the Breathalyzer solution (3.0 mL).

C. Use the mole ratios from the balanced chemical equation to calculate the number of moles of C_2H_5OH needed to react completely with the number of moles of $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$ ions present. Then find the mass of C_2H_5OH needed by multiplying the number of moles of C_2H_5OH by its molar mass.

Solution:

A In any stoichiometry problem, the first step is always to calculate the number of moles of each reactant present. In this case, we are given the mass of $K_2Cr_2O_7$ in 1 mL of solution, which can be used to calculate the number of moles of $K_2Cr_2O_7$ contained in 1 mL:

$$\frac{moles\ K_2Cr_2O_7}{1\ mL} = \frac{(0.25\ \cancel{mg}\ K_2Cr_2O_7)}{mL}\left(\frac{1\ \cancel{g}}{1000\ \cancel{mg}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ mol}{294.18\ \cancel{g}\ K_2Cr_2O_7}\right) = 8.5 \times 10^{-7}\ moles$$

B Because 1 mol of $K_2Cr_2O_7$ produces 1 mol of $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$ when it dissolves, each milliliter of solution contains 8.5×10^{-7} mol of $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$. The total number of moles of $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$ in a 3.0 mL Breathalyzer ampul is thus

$$moles\ Cr_2O_7^{2-} = \left(\frac{8.5 \times 10^{-7}\ mol}{1\ \cancel{mL}}\right)(3.0\ \cancel{mL}) = 2.6 \times 10^{-6}\ mol\ Cr_2O_7^{2-}$$

C The balanced chemical equation tells us that 3 mol of C_2H_5OH is needed to consume 2 mol of $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$ ion, so the total number of moles of C_2H_5OH required for complete reaction is

$$moles\ of\ C_2H_5OH = (2.6 \times 10^{-6}\ \cancel{mol\ Cr_2O_7^{2-}})\left(\frac{3\ mol\ C_2H_5OH}{2\ \cancel{mol\ Cr_2O_7^{2-}}}\right) = 3.9 \times 10^{-6}\ mol\ C_2H_5OH$$

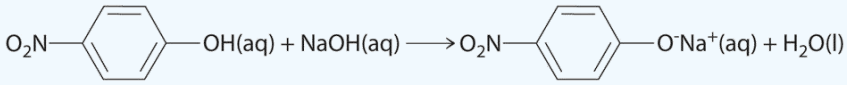
As indicated in the strategy, this number can be converted to the mass of C_2H_5OH using its molar mass:

$$mass\ C_2H_5OH = (3.9 \times 10^{-6}\ \cancel{mol\ C_2H_5OH})\left(\frac{46.07\ g}{\cancel{mol\ C_2H_5OH}}\right) = 1.8 \times 10^{-4}\ g\ C_2H_5OH$$

Thus 1.8×10^{-4} g or 0.18 mg of C_2H_5OH must be present. Experimentally, it is found that this value corresponds to a blood alcohol level of 0.7%, which is usually fatal.

Exercise 1.16.2

The compound *para*-nitrophenol (molar mass = 139 g/mol) reacts with sodium hydroxide in aqueous solution to generate a yellow anion via the reaction



***para*-Nitrophenol** **Yellow**

Chemical equation showing conversion of para-nitrophenol to its yellow-colored form with aqueous sodium hydroxide.

Because the amount of *para*-nitrophenol is easily estimated from the intensity of the yellow color that results when excess NaOH is added, reactions that produce *para*-nitrophenol are commonly used to measure the activity of enzymes, the catalysts in biological systems. What volume of 0.105 M NaOH must be added to 50.0 mL of a solution containing 7.20×10^{-4} g of *para*-nitrophenol to ensure that formation of the yellow anion is complete?

Answer

4.93×10^{-5} L or 49.3 μL

In Examples 1.16.1 and 1.16.2, the identities of the limiting reactants are apparent: $[Au(CN)_2]^-$, $LaCl_3$, ethanol, and *para*-nitrophenol. When the limiting reactant is not apparent, it can be determined by comparing the molar amounts of the reactants with their coefficients in the balanced chemical equation. The only difference is that the volumes and concentrations of solutions of reactants, rather than the masses of reactants, are used to calculate the number of moles of reactants, as illustrated in Example 1.16.3.

Example 1.16.3

When aqueous solutions of silver nitrate and potassium dichromate are mixed, an exchange reaction occurs, and silver dichromate is obtained as a red solid. The overall chemical equation for the reaction is as follows:

$$2\,AgNO_3(aq) + K_2Cr_2O_7(aq) \rightarrow Ag_2Cr_2O_7(s) + 2\,KNO_3(aq)$$

What mass of $Ag_2Cr_2O_7$ is formed when 500 mL of 0.17 M $K_2Cr_2O_7$ are mixed with 250 mL of 0.57 M $AgNO_3$?

Given: balanced chemical equation and volume and concentration of each reactant

Asked for: mass of product

Strategy:

A. Calculate the number of moles of each reactant by multiplying the volume of each solution by its molarity.

B. Determine which reactant is limiting by dividing the number of moles of each reactant by its stoichiometric coefficient in the balanced chemical equation.

C. Use mole ratios to calculate the number of moles of product that can be formed from the limiting reactant. Multiply the number of moles of the product by its molar mass to obtain the corresponding mass of product.

Solution:

A The balanced chemical equation tells us that 2 mol of $AgNO_3$(aq) reacts with 1 mol of $K_2Cr_2O_7$(aq) to form 1 mol of $Ag_2Cr_2O_7$(s) (Figure 8.3.2). The first step is to calculate the number of moles of each reactant in the specified volumes:

$$moles\ K_2Cr_2O_7 = 500\ \cancel{mL}\left(\frac{1\ \cancel{L}}{1000\ \cancel{mL}}\right)\left(\frac{0.17\ mol\ K_2Cr_2O_7}{1\ \cancel{L}}\right) = 0.085\ mol\ K_2Cr_2O_7$$

$$moles\ AgNO_3 = 250\ \cancel{mL}\left(\frac{1\ \cancel{L}}{1000\ \cancel{mL}}\right)\left(\frac{0.57\ mol\ AgNO_3}{1\ \cancel{L}}\right) = 0.14\ mol\ AgNO_3$$

B Now determine which reactant is limiting by dividing the number of moles of each reactant by its stoichiometric coefficient:

$$\mathrm{K_2Cr_2O_7}: \frac{0.085\ mol}{1\ mol} = 0.085$$

$$\mathrm{AgNO_3}: \frac{0.14\ mol}{2\ mol} = 0.070$$

Because 0.070 < 0.085, we know that $\mathrm{AgNO_3}$ is the *limiting reactant*.

C Each mole of $\mathrm{Ag_2Cr_2O_7}$ formed requires 2 mol of the limiting reactant ($\mathrm{AgNO_3}$), so we can obtain only 0.14/2 = 0.070 mol of $\mathrm{Ag_2Cr_2O_7}$. Finally, convert the number of moles of $\mathrm{Ag_2Cr_2O_7}$ to the corresponding mass:

$$mass\ of\ Ag_2Cr_2O_7 = 0.070\ \cancel{mol}\left(\frac{431.72\ g}{1\ \cancel{mol}}\right) = 30\ g\ Ag_2Cr_2O_7$$

The Ag^+ and $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$ ions form a red precipitate of solid $\mathrm{Ag_2Cr_2O_7}$, while the K^+ and NO_3^- ions remain in solution. (Water molecules are omitted from molecular views of the solutions for clarity.)

? Exercise 1.16.3

Aqueous solutions of sodium bicarbonate and sulfuric acid react to produce carbon dioxide according to the following equation:

$$\mathrm{2\,NaHCO_3(aq) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow 2\,CO_2(g) + Na_2SO_4(aq) + 2\,H_2O(l)}$$

If 13.0 mL of 3.0 M H_2SO_4 are added to 732 mL of 0.112 M $NaHCO_3$, what mass of CO_2 is produced?

Answer

3.4 g



Limiting Reactant Problems Using Molarities: Limiting Reactant Problems Using Molarities, YouTube(opens in new window)
[youtu.be]eOXTliL-gNw (opens in new window)

Theoretical Yields

When reactants are not present in stoichiometric quantities, the limiting reactant determines the maximum amount of product that can be formed from the reactants. The amount of product calculated in this way is the theoretical yield, the amount obtained if the reaction occurred perfectly and the purification method were 100% efficient.

In reality, less product is always obtained than is theoretically possible because of mechanical losses (such as spilling), separation procedures that are not 100% efficient, competing reactions that form undesired products, and reactions that simply do not run to completion, resulting in a mixture of products and reactants; this last possibility is a common occurrence. Therefore, the actual yield, the measured mass of products obtained from a reaction, is almost always less than the theoretical yield (often much less). The percent yield of a reaction is the ratio of the actual yield to the theoretical yield, multiplied by 100 to give a percentage:

$$\text{percent yield} = \frac{\text{actual yield } (g)}{\text{theoretical yield } (g)} \times 100\% \tag{1.16.5}$$

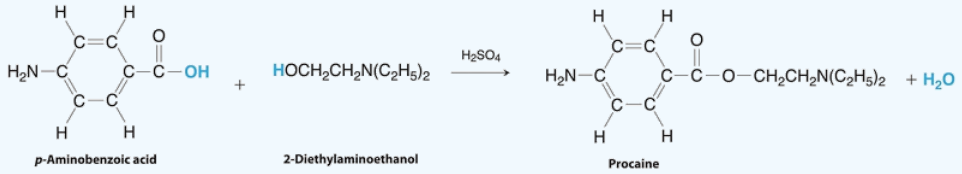
The method used to calculate the percent yield of a reaction is illustrated in Example $1.16.4$

Example 1.16.4: Novocain

Procaine is a key component of Novocain, an injectable local anesthetic used in dental work and minor surgery. Procaine can be prepared in the presence of H2SO4 (indicated above the arrow) by the reaction

$$\underset{\text{p-amino benzoic acid}}{C_7H_7NO_2} + \underset{\text{2-diethylaminoethanol}}{C_6H_{15}NO} \xrightarrow{H_2SO_4} \underset{\text{procaine}}{C_{13}H_{20}N_2O_2} + H_2O$$

If this reaction were carried out with 10.0 g of p-aminobenzoic acid and 10.0 g of 2-diethylaminoethanol, and 15.7 g of procaine were isolated, what is the percent yield?



The preparation of procaine. A reaction of p-aminobenzoic acid with 2-diethylaminoethanol yields procaine and water.

Given: masses of reactants and product

Asked for: percent yield

Strategy:

A. Write the balanced chemical equation.
B. Convert from mass of reactants and product to moles using molar masses and then use mole ratios to determine which is the limiting reactant. Based on the number of moles of the limiting reactant, use mole ratios to determine the theoretical yield.
C. Calculate the percent yield by dividing the actual yield by the theoretical yield and multiplying by 100.

Solution:

A From the formulas given for the reactants and the products, we see that the chemical equation is balanced as written. According to the equation, 1 mol of each reactant combines to give 1 mol of product plus 1 mol of water.

B To determine which reactant is limiting, we need to know their molar masses, which are calculated from their structural formulas: p-aminobenzoic acid ($C_7H_7NO_2$), 137.14 g/mol; 2-diethylaminoethanol ($C_6H_{15}NO$), 117.19 g/mol. Thus the reaction used the following numbers of moles of reactants:

$$mol \text{ p-aminobenzoic acid} = 10.0\,g \times \frac{1\,mol}{137.14\,g} = 0.0729\,mol \text{ p-aminbenzoic acid}$$

$$mol \text{ 2-diethylaminoethanol} = 10.0\,g \times \frac{1\,mol}{117.19\,g} = 0.0853\,mol \text{ 2-diethylaminoethanol}$$

The reaction requires a 1:1 mole ratio of the two reactants, so p-aminobenzoic acid is the limiting reactant. Based on the coefficients in the balanced chemical equation, 1 mol of p-aminobenzoic acid yields 1 mol of procaine. We can therefore obtain only a maximum of 0.0729 mol of procaine. To calculate the corresponding mass of procaine, we use its structural formula (C13H20N2O2) to calculate its molar mass, which is 236.31 g/mol.

$$\text{theoretical yield of procaine} = 0.0729\,mol \times \frac{236.31\,g}{1\,mol} = 17.2\,g$$

C The actual yield was only 15.7 g of procaine, so the percent yield (via Equation 1.16.5) is

$$\text{percent yield} = \frac{15.7\,g}{17.2\,g} \times 100 = 91.3\%$$

(If the product were pure and dry, this yield would indicate very good lab technique!)

? Exercise 1.16.4: Extraction of Lead

Lead was one of the earliest metals to be isolated in pure form. It occurs as concentrated deposits of a distinctive ore called galena (PbS), which is easily converted to lead oxide (PbO) in 100% yield by roasting in air via the following reaction:

$$2\,PbS(s) + 3\,O_2 \rightarrow 2\,PbO(s) + 2\,SO_2(g)$$

The resulting PbO is then converted to the pure metal by reaction with charcoal. Because lead has such a low melting point (327°C), it runs out of the ore-charcoal mixture as a liquid that is easily collected. The reaction for the conversion of lead oxide to pure lead is as follows:

$$PbO(s) + C(s) \rightarrow Pb(l) + CO(g)$$

If 93.3 kg of PbO is heated with excess charcoal and 77.3 kg of pure lead is obtained, what is the percent yield?



Electrolytically refined pure (99.989 %) superficially oxidized lead nodules and a high purity (99.989 %) 1 cm^3 lead cube for comparison. Figure used with permission from Wikipedia.

Answer

89.2%

Percent yield can range from 0% to 100%. In the laboratory, a student will occasionally obtain a yield that appears to be greater than 100%. This usually happens when the product is impure or is wet with a solvent such as water. If this is not the case, then the student must have made an error in weighing either the reactants or the products. The law of conservation of mass applies even to undergraduate chemistry laboratory experiments. A 100% yield means that everything worked perfectly, and the chemist obtained all the product that could have been produced. Anyone who has tried to do something as simple as fill a salt shaker or add oil to a car's engine without spilling knows the unlikelihood of a 100% yield. At the other extreme, a yield of 0% means that no product was obtained. A percent yield of 80%–90% is usually considered good to excellent; a yield of 50% is only fair. In part because of the problems and costs of waste disposal, industrial production facilities face considerable pressures to optimize the yields of products and make them as close to 100% as possible.

Summary

The stoichiometry of a balanced chemical equation identifies the maximum amount of product that can be obtained. The stoichiometry of a reaction describes the relative amounts of reactants and products in a balanced chemical equation. A stoichiometric quantity of a reactant is the amount necessary to react completely with the other reactant(s). If a quantity of a reactant remains unconsumed after complete reaction has occurred, it is in excess. The reactant that is consumed first and limits the amount of product(s) that can be obtained is the limiting reactant. To identify the limiting reactant, calculate the number of moles of each reactant present and compare this ratio to the mole ratio of the reactants in the balanced chemical equation. The maximum

amount of product(s) that can be obtained in a reaction from a given amount of reactant(s) is the theoretical yield of the reaction. The actual yield is the amount of product(s) actually obtained in the reaction; it cannot exceed the theoretical yield. The percent yield of a reaction is the ratio of the actual yield to the theoretical yield, expressed as a percentage.

1.16: Calculations Involving a Limiting Reactant is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.7: Limiting Reactants** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

2: Molecules and Shapes

2.1: Prelude to Chemical Bonding and Molecular Geometry
2.2: Ionic Bonding
2.3: Covalent Bonding
2.4: Metallic Bonds
2.5: Electronegativity
2.6: Lewis Symbols and Structures
2.7: Formal Charges and Resonance
2.8: Organic Structural Representations- Bond-Line Notation
2.9: Functional Groups and Classes of Organic Compounds
2.10: Molecular Structure and Polarity

2: Molecules and Shapes is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

2.1: Prelude to Chemical Bonding and Molecular Geometry

It has long been known that pure carbon occurs in different forms (allotropes) including graphite and diamonds. But it was not until 1985 that a new form of carbon was recognized: buckminsterfullerene, commonly known as a “buckyball.” This molecule was named after the architect and inventor R. Buckminster Fuller (1895–1983), whose signature architectural design was the geodesic dome, characterized by a lattice shell structure supporting a spherical surface. Experimental evidence revealed the formula, C_{60}, and then scientists determined how 60 carbon atoms could form one symmetric, stable molecule. They were guided by bonding theory—the topic of this chapter—which explains how individual atoms connect to form more complex structures.



Figure 2.1.1: Nicknamed “buckyballs,” buckminsterfullerene molecules (C_{60}) contain only carbon atoms. Here they are shown in a ball-and-stick model (left). These molecules have single and double carbon-carbon bonds arranged to form a geometric framework of hexagons and pentagons, similar to the pattern on a soccer ball (center). This unconventional molecular structure is named after architect R. Buckminster Fuller, whose innovative designs combined simple geometric shapes to create large, strong structures such as this weather radar dome near Tucson, Arizona (right). (credit middle: modification of work by “Petey21”/Wikimedia Commons; credit right: modification of work by Bill Morrow).

Three figures are shown. The left figure is a many-sides spherical ball composed of hexagonal rings which have carbon atoms at each corner. The center picture shows a soccer ball. The right picture shown as water tower with sides shaped like hexagonal rings.

This page titled 2.1: Prelude to Chemical Bonding and Molecular Geometry is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **7.1: Prelude to Chemical Bonding and Molecular Geometry** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

2.2: Ionic Bonding

Learning Objectives

- Explain the formation of cations, anions, and ionic compounds
- Predict the charge of common metallic and nonmetallic elements, and write their electron configurations

As you have learned, ions are atoms or molecules bearing an electrical charge. A cation (a positive ion) forms when a neutral atom loses one or more electrons from its valence shell, and an anion (a negative ion) forms when a neutral atom gains one or more electrons in its valence shell.

Compounds composed of ions are called ionic compounds (or salts), and their constituent ions are held together by ionic bonds: electrostatic forces of attraction between oppositely charged cations and anions. The properties of ionic compounds shed some light on the nature of ionic bonds. Ionic solids exhibit a crystalline structure and tend to be rigid and brittle; they also tend to have high melting and boiling points, which suggests that ionic bonds are very strong. Ionic solids are also poor conductors of electricity for the same reason—the strength of ionic bonds prevents ions from moving freely in the solid state. Most ionic solids, however, dissolve readily in water. Once dissolved or melted, ionic compounds are excellent conductors of electricity and heat because the ions can move about freely.

Neutral atoms and their associated ions have very different physical and chemical properties. Sodium *atoms* form sodium metal, a soft, silvery-white metal that burns vigorously in air and reacts explosively with water. Chlorine *atoms* form chlorine gas, Cl_2, a yellow-green gas that is extremely corrosive to most metals and very poisonous to animals and plants. The vigorous reaction between the elements sodium and chlorine forms the white, crystalline compound sodium chloride, common table salt, which contains sodium *cations* and chloride *anions* (Figure Figure 2.2.1). The compound composed of these ions exhibits properties entirely different from the properties of the elements sodium and chlorine. Chlorine is poisonous, but sodium chloride is essential to life; sodium atoms react vigorously with water, but sodium chloride simply dissolves in water.



Figure 2.2.1: (a) Sodium is a soft metal that must be stored in mineral oil to prevent reaction with air or water. (b) Chlorine is a pale yellow-green gas. (c) When combined, they form white crystals of sodium chloride (table salt). (credit a: modification of work by “Jurii”/Wikimedia Commons)

The Formation of Ionic Compounds

Binary ionic compounds are composed of just two elements: a metal (which forms the cations) and a nonmetal (which forms the anions). For example, NaCl is a binary ionic compound. We can think about the formation of such compounds in terms of the periodic properties of the elements. Many metallic elements have relatively low ionization potentials and lose electrons easily. These elements lie to the left in a period or near the bottom of a group on the periodic table. Nonmetal atoms have relatively high electron affinities and thus readily gain electrons lost by metal atoms, thereby filling their valence shells. Nonmetallic elements are found in the upper-right corner of the periodic table.

As all substances must be electrically neutral, the total number of positive charges on the cations of an ionic compound must equal the total number of negative charges on its anions. The formula of an ionic compound represents the simplest ratio of the numbers of ions necessary to give identical numbers of positive and negative charges. For example, the formula for aluminum oxide, Al_2O_3, indicates that this ionic compound contains two aluminum cations, Al^{3+}, for every three oxide anions, O^{2-} [thus, $(2 \times +3) + (3 \times -2) = 0$].

It is important to note, however, that the formula for an ionic compound does *not* represent the physical arrangement of its ions. It is incorrect to refer to a sodium chloride (NaCl) “molecule” because there is not a single ionic bond, per se, between any specific pair of sodium and chloride ions. The attractive forces between ions are isotropic—the same in all directions—meaning that any

particular ion is equally attracted to all of the nearby ions of opposite charge. This results in the ions arranging themselves into a tightly bound, three-dimensional lattice structure. Sodium chloride, for example, consists of a regular arrangement of equal numbers of Na^+ cations and Cl^- anions (Figure Figure 2.2.2).

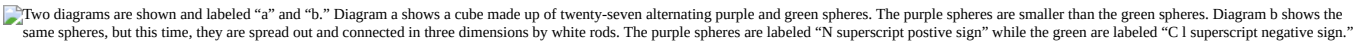


Figure 2.2.2: The atoms in sodium chloride (common table salt) are arranged to (a) maximize opposite charges interacting. The smaller spheres represent sodium ions, the larger ones represent chloride ions. In the expanded view (b), the geometry can be seen more clearly. Note that each ion is “bonded” to all of the surrounding ions—six in this case.

The strong electrostatic attraction between Na^+ and Cl^- ions holds them tightly together in solid NaCl. It requires 769 kJ of energy to dissociate one mole of solid NaCl into separate gaseous Na^+ and Cl^- ions:

$$\mathrm{NaCl}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Na}^+(g) + \mathrm{Cl}^-(g) \qquad \Delta H = 769\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{2.2.1}$$

Summary

Atoms gain or lose electrons to form ions with particularly stable electron configurations. The charges of cations formed by the representative metals may be determined readily because, with few exceptions, the electronic structures of these ions have either a noble gas configuration or a completely filled electron shell. The charges of anions formed by the nonmetals may also be readily determined because these ions form when nonmetal atoms gain enough electrons to fill their valence shells.

Glossary

inert pair effect

tendency of heavy atoms to form ions in which their valence *s* electrons are not lost

ionic bond

strong electrostatic force of attraction between cations and anions in an ionic compound

Contributors and Attributions

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

This page titled 2.2: Ionic Bonding is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **7.2: Ionic Bonding** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

2.3: Covalent Bonding

Learning Objectives

- Describe the formation of covalent bonds
- Define electronegativity and assess the polarity of covalent bonds

In ionic compounds, electrons are transferred between atoms of different elements to form ions. But this is not the only way that compounds can be formed. Atoms can also make chemical bonds by sharing electrons between each other. Such bonds are called covalent bonds. Covalent bonds are formed between two atoms when both have similar tendencies to attract electrons to themselves (i.e., when both atoms have identical or fairly similar ionization energies and electron affinities). For example, two hydrogen atoms bond covalently to form an H_2 molecule; each hydrogen atom in the H_2 molecule has two electrons stabilizing it, giving each atom the same number of valence electrons as the noble gas He.

Compounds that contain covalent bonds exhibit different physical properties than ionic compounds. Because the attraction between molecules, which are electrically neutral, is weaker than that between electrically charged ions, covalent compounds generally have much lower melting and boiling points than ionic compounds. In fact, many covalent compounds are liquids or gases at room temperature, and, in their solid states, they are typically much softer than ionic solids. Furthermore, whereas ionic compounds are good conductors of electricity when dissolved in water, most covalent compounds, being electrically neutral, are poor conductors of electricity in any state.

Formation of Covalent Bonds

Nonmetal atoms frequently form covalent bonds with other nonmetal atoms. For example, the hydrogen molecule, H_2, contains a covalent bond between its two hydrogen atoms. Figure $2.3.1$ illustrates why this bond is formed. Starting on the far right, we have two separate hydrogen atoms with a particular potential energy, indicated by the red line. Along the *x*-axis is the distance between the two atoms. As the two atoms approach each other (moving left along the *x*-axis), their valence orbitals (1*s*) begin to overlap. The single electrons on each hydrogen atom then interact with both atomic nuclei, occupying the space around both atoms. The strong attraction of each shared electron to both nuclei stabilizes the system, and the potential energy decreases as the bond distance decreases. If the atoms continue to approach each other, the positive charges in the two nuclei begin to repel each other, and the potential energy increases. The bond length is determined by the distance at which the lowest potential energy is achieved.

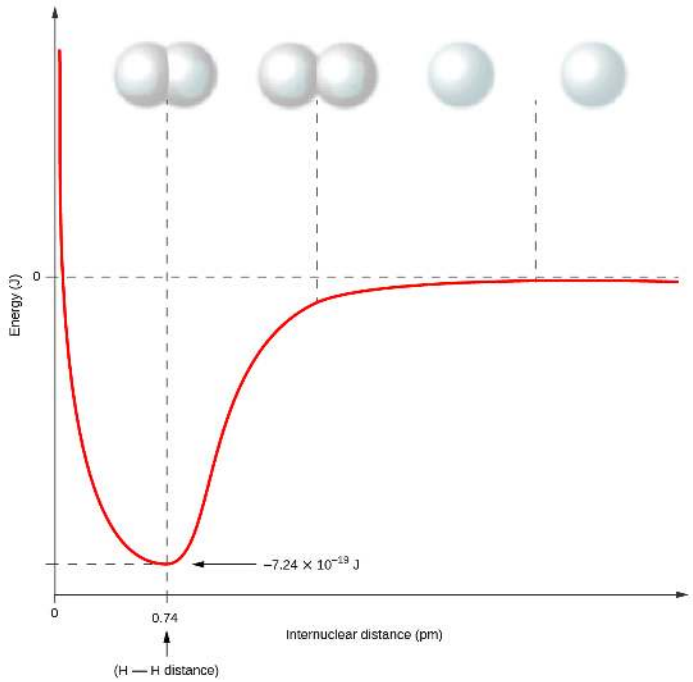


Figure 2.3.1: *The potential energy of two separate hydrogen atoms (right) decreases as they approach each other, and the single electrons on each atom are shared to form a covalent bond. The bond length is the internuclear distance at which the lowest potential energy is achieved.*

It is essential to remember that energy must be added to break chemical bonds (an endothermic process), whereas forming chemical bonds releases energy (an exothermic process). In the case of H_2, the covalent bond is very strong; a large amount of energy, 436 kJ, must be added to break the bonds in one mole of hydrogen molecules and cause the atoms to separate:

$$\mathrm{H_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{H}(g) \quad \Delta H = 436\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

Conversely, the same amount of energy is released when one mole of H_2 molecules forms from two moles of H atoms:

$$2\,\mathrm{H}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2}(g) \quad \Delta H = -436\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

Pure vs. Polar Covalent Bonds

If the atoms that form a covalent bond are identical, as in H_2, Cl_2, and other diatomic molecules, then the electrons in the bond must be shared equally. We refer to this as a pure covalent bond. Electrons shared in pure covalent bonds have an equal probability of being near each nucleus. In the case of Cl_2, each atom starts off with seven valence electrons, and each Cl shares one electron with the other, forming one covalent bond:

$$\mathrm{Cl} + \mathrm{Cl} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cl_2}$$

The total number of electrons around each individual atom consists of six nonbonding electrons and two shared (i.e., bonding) electrons for eight total electrons, matching the number of valence electrons in the noble gas argon. Since the bonding atoms are identical, Cl_2 also features a pure covalent bond.

When the atoms linked by a covalent bond are different, the bonding electrons are shared, but no longer equally. Instead, the bonding electrons are more attracted to one atom than the other, giving rise to a shift of electron density toward that atom. This unequal distribution of electrons is known as a polar covalent bond, characterized by a partial positive charge on one atom and a partial negative charge on the other. The atom that attracts the electrons more strongly acquires the partial negative charge and vice versa. For example, the electrons in the H–Cl bond of a hydrogen chloride molecule spend more time near the chlorine atom than near the hydrogen atom. Thus, in an HCl molecule, the chlorine atom carries a partial negative charge and the hydrogen atom has a partial positive charge. Figure 2.3.2 shows the distribution of electrons in the H–Cl bond. Note that the shaded area around Cl is much larger than it is around H. Compare this to Figure 2.3.1, which shows the even distribution of electrons in the H_2 nonpolar bond.

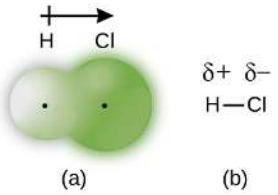


Figure 2.3.2: (a) The distribution of electron density in the HCl molecule is uneven. The electron density is greater around the chlorine nucleus. The small, black dots indicate the location of the hydrogen and chlorine nuclei in the molecule. (b) Symbols δ+ and δ– indicate the polarity of the H–Cl bond.

We sometimes designate the positive and negative atoms in a polar covalent bond using a lowercase Greek letter "delta," δ, with a plus sign or minus sign to indicate whether the atom has a partial positive charge (δ+) or a partial negative charge (δ–). This symbolism is shown for the H–Cl molecule in Figure 2.3.2b.

Electronegativity

Whether a bond is nonpolar or polar covalent is determined by a property of the bonding atoms called electronegativity. Electronegativity is a measure of the tendency of an atom to attract electrons (or electron density) towards itself. It determines how the shared electrons are distributed between the two atoms in a bond. The more strongly an atom attracts the electrons in its bonds, the larger its electronegativity. Electrons in a polar covalent bond are shifted toward the more electronegative atom; thus, the more electronegative atom is the one with the partial negative charge. The greater the difference in electronegativity, the more polarized the electron distribution and the larger the partial charges of the atoms.

Figure 2.3.3 shows the electronegativity values of the elements as proposed by one of the most famous chemists of the twentieth century: Linus Pauling. In general, electronegativity increases from left to right across a period in the periodic table and decreases down a group. Thus, the nonmetals, which lie in the upper right, tend to have the highest electronegativities, with fluorine the most electronegative element of all (EN = 4.0). Metals tend to be less electronegative elements, and the group 1 metals have the lowest electronegativities. Note that noble gases are excluded from this figure because these atoms usually do not share electrons with others atoms since they have a full valence shell. (While noble gas compounds such as XeO_2 do exist, they can only be formed under extreme conditions, and thus they do not fit neatly into the general model of electronegativity.)

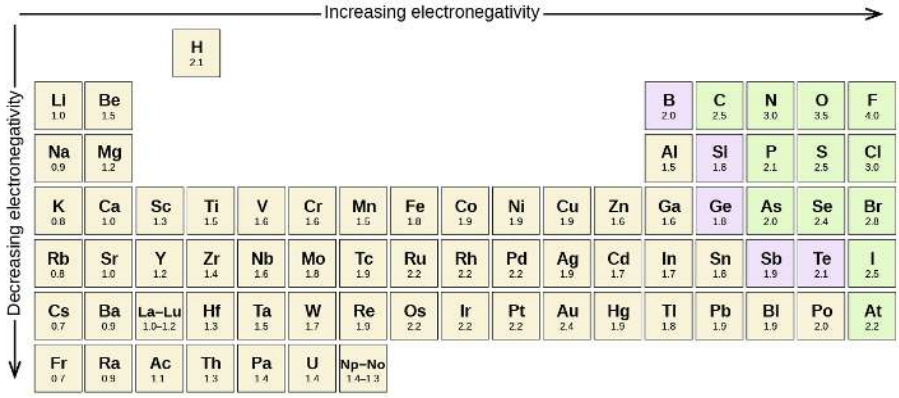


Figure 2.3.3: The electronegativity values derived by Pauling follow predictable periodic trends with the higher electronegativities toward the upper right of the periodic table.

Linus Pauling

Linus Pauling is the only person to have received two unshared (individual) Nobel Prizes: one for chemistry in 1954 for his work on the nature of chemical bonds and one for peace in 1962 for his opposition to weapons of mass destruction. He developed many of the theories and concepts that are foundational to our current understanding of chemistry, including electronegativity and resonance structures.



Linus Pauling (1901–1994) made many important contributions to the field of chemistry. He was also a prominent activist, publicizing issues related to health and nuclear weapons.

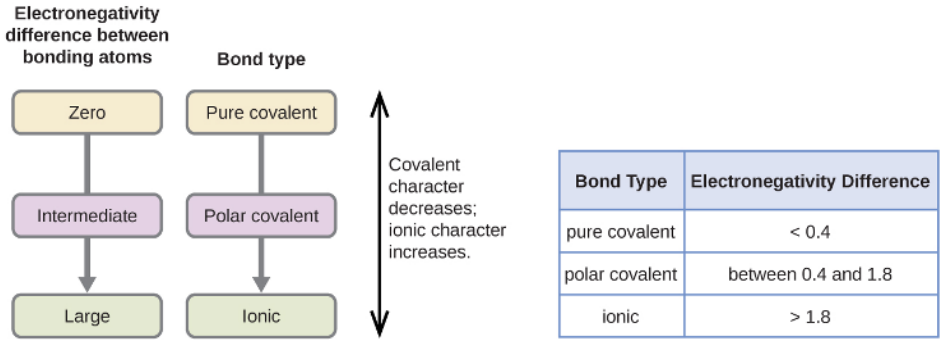
Pauling also contributed to many other fields besides chemistry. His research on sickle cell anemia revealed the cause of the disease—the presence of a genetically inherited abnormal protein in the blood—and paved the way for the field of molecular genetics. His work was also pivotal in curbing the testing of nuclear weapons; he proved that radioactive fallout from nuclear testing posed a public health risk.

Electronegativity versus Electron Affinity

We must be careful not to confuse electronegativity and electron affinity. The electron affinity of an element is a measurable physical quantity, namely, the energy released or absorbed when an isolated gas-phase atom acquires an electron, measured in kJ/mol. Electronegativity, on the other hand, describes how tightly an atom attracts electrons in a bond. It is a dimensionless quantity that is calculated, not measured. Pauling derived the first electronegativity values by comparing the amounts of energy required to break different types of bonds. He chose an arbitrary relative scale ranging from 0 to 4.

Electronegativity and Bond Type

The absolute value of the difference in electronegativity (ΔEN) of two bonded atoms provides a rough measure of the polarity to be expected in the bond and, thus, the bond type. When the difference is very small or zero, the bond is covalent and nonpolar. When it is large, the bond is polar covalent or ionic. The absolute values of the electronegativity differences between the atoms in the bonds H–H, H–Cl, and Na–Cl are 0 (nonpolar), 0.9 (polar covalent), and 2.1 (ionic), respectively. The degree to which electrons are shared between atoms varies from completely equal (pure covalent bonding) to not at all (ionic bonding). Figure 2.3.4 shows the relationship between electronegativity difference and bond type.



Bond Type	Electronegativity Difference
pure covalent	< 0.4
polar covalent	between 0.4 and 1.8
ionic	> 1.8

Figure 2.3.4: As the electronegativity difference increases between two atoms, the bond becomes more ionic.

A rough approximation of the electronegativity differences associated with covalent, polar covalent, and ionic bonds is shown in Figure 2.3.4. This table is just a general guide, however, with many exceptions. For example, the H and F atoms in HF have an electronegativity difference of 1.9, and the N and H atoms in NH_3 a difference of 0.9, yet both of these compounds form bonds that are considered polar covalent. Likewise, the Na and Cl atoms in NaCl have an electronegativity difference of 2.1, and the Mn and I atoms in MnI_2 have a difference of 1.0, yet both of these substances form ionic compounds.

The best guide to the covalent or ionic character of a bond is to consider the types of atoms involved and their relative positions in the periodic table. Bonds between two nonmetals are generally covalent; bonding between a metal and a nonmetal is often ionic.

Some compounds contain both covalent and ionic bonds. The atoms in polyatomic ions, such as OH^-, NO_3^-, and NH_4^+, are held together by polar covalent bonds. However, these polyatomic ions form ionic compounds by combining with ions of opposite

charge. For example, potassium nitrate, KNO_3, contains the K^+ cation and the polyatomic NO_3^- anion. Thus, bonding in potassium nitrate is ionic, resulting from the electrostatic attraction between the ions K^+ and NO_3^-, as well as covalent between the nitrogen and oxygen atoms in NO_3^-.

Example 2.3.1: Electronegativity and Bond Polarity

Bond polarities play an important role in determining the structure of proteins. Using the electronegativity values in Table A2, arrange the following covalent bonds—all commonly found in amino acids—in order of increasing polarity. Then designate the positive and negative atoms using the symbols δ+ and δ–:

C–H, C–N, C–O, N–H, O–H, S–H

Solution

The polarity of these bonds increases as the absolute value of the electronegativity difference increases. The atom with the δ– designation is the more electronegative of the two. Table 2.3.1 shows these bonds in order of increasing polarity.

Table 2.3.1: Bond Polarity and Electronegativity Difference

Bond	ΔEN	Polarity
C–H	0.4	$\overset{\delta-}{\mathrm{C}}-\overset{\delta+}{\mathrm{H}}$
S–H	0.4	$\overset{\delta-}{\mathrm{S}}-\overset{\delta+}{\mathrm{H}}$
C–N	0.5	$\overset{\delta+}{\mathrm{C}}-\overset{\delta-}{\mathrm{N}}$
N–H	0.9	$\overset{\delta-}{\mathrm{N}}-\overset{\delta+}{\mathrm{H}}$
C–O	1.0	$\overset{\delta+}{\mathrm{C}}-\overset{\delta-}{\mathrm{O}}$
O–H	1.4	$\overset{\delta-}{\mathrm{O}}-\overset{\delta+}{\mathrm{H}}$

Exercise 2.3.1

Silicones are polymeric compounds containing, among others, the following types of covalent bonds: Si–O, Si–C, C–H, and C–C. Using the electronegativity values in Figure 2.3.3, arrange the bonds in order of increasing polarity and designate the positive and negative atoms using the symbols δ+ and δ–.

Answer

Answer to Exercise 7.2.1

Bond	Electronegativity Difference	Polarity
C–C	0.0	nonpolar
C–H	0.4	$\overset{\delta-}{\mathrm{C}}-\overset{\delta+}{\mathrm{H}}$
Si–C	0.7	$\overset{\delta+}{\mathrm{Si}}-\overset{\delta-}{\mathrm{C}}$
Si–O	1.7	$\overset{\delta+}{\mathrm{Si}}-\overset{\delta-}{\mathrm{O}}$

Summary

Covalent bonds form when electrons are shared between atoms and are attracted by the nuclei of both atoms. In pure covalent bonds, the electrons are shared equally. In polar covalent bonds, the electrons are shared unequally, as one atom exerts a stronger force of attraction on the electrons than the other. The ability of an atom to attract a pair of electrons in a chemical bond is called its electronegativity. The difference in electronegativity between two atoms determines how polar a bond will be. In a diatomic

molecule with two identical atoms, there is no difference in electronegativity, so the bond is nonpolar or pure covalent. When the electronegativity difference is very large, as is the case between metals and nonmetals, the bonding is characterized as ionic.

Glossary

bond length
distance between the nuclei of two bonded atoms at which the lowest potential energy is achieved

covalent bond
bond formed when electrons are shared between atoms

electronegativity
tendency of an atom to attract electrons in a bond to itself

polar covalent bond
covalent bond between atoms of different electronegativities; a covalent bond with a positive end and a negative end

pure covalent bond
(also, nonpolar covalent bond) covalent bond between atoms of identical electronegativities

---

This page titled 2.3: Covalent Bonding is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **7.3: Covalent Bonding** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

2.4: Metallic Bonds

In the early 1900's, Paul Drüde came up with the "sea of electrons" metallic bonding theory by modeling metals as a mixture of atomic cores (atomic cores = positive nuclei + inner shell of electrons) and valence electrons. Metallic bonds occur among metal atoms. Whereas ionic bonds join metals to non-metals, *metallic bonding joins a bulk of metal atoms.* A sheet of aluminum foil and a copper wire are both places where you can see metallic bonding in action.

Metals tend to have high melting points and boiling points suggesting strong bonds between the atoms. Even a soft metal like sodium (melting point 97.8°C) melts at a considerably higher temperature than the element (neon) which precedes it in the Periodic Table. Sodium has the electronic structure $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^1$. When sodium atoms come together, the electron in the 3s atomic orbital of one sodium atom shares space with the corresponding electron on a neighboring atom to form a molecular orbital - in much the same sort of way that a covalent bond is formed.

The difference, however, is that each sodium atom is being touched by eight other sodium atoms - and the sharing occurs between the central atom and the 3s orbitals on all of the eight other atoms. Each of these eight is in turn being touched by eight sodium atoms, which in turn are touched by eight atoms - and so on and so on, until you have taken in all the atoms in that lump of sodium. *All* of the 3s orbitals on all of the atoms overlap to give a vast number of molecular orbitals that extend over the whole piece of metal. There have to be huge numbers of molecular orbitals, of course, because any orbital can only hold two electrons.

The electrons can move freely within these molecular orbitals, and so each electron becomes detached from its parent atom. The electrons are said to be delocalized. The metal is held together by the strong forces of attraction between the positive nuclei and the delocalized electrons (Figure 2.4.1).

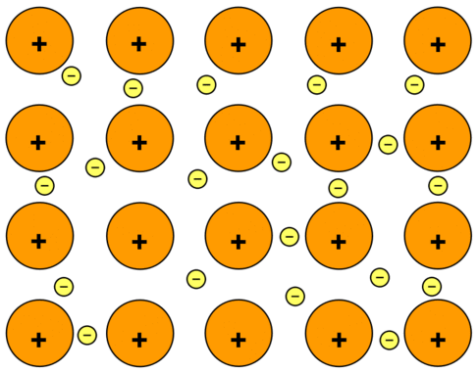


Figure 2.4.1: Metallic Bonding: The Electron Sea Model: Positive atomic nuclei (orange circles) surrounded by a sea of delocalized electrons (yellow circles).

This is sometimes described as "an array of positive ions in a sea of electrons". If you are going to use this view, beware! Is a metal made up of atoms or ions? It is made of atoms**.** Each positive center in the diagram represents all the rest of the atom apart from the outer electron, but that electron has not been lost - it may no longer have an attachment to a particular atom, but it's still there in the structure. Sodium metal is therefore written as Na, not Na^+.

Example 2.4.1: Metallic bonding in magnesium

Use the sea of electrons model to explain why Magnesium has a higher melting point (650 °C) than sodium (97.79 °C).

Solution

If you work through the same argument above for sodium with magnesium, you end up with stronger bonds and hence a higher melting point.

Magnesium has the outer electronic structure $3s^2$. Both of these electrons become delocalized, so the "sea" has twice the electron density as it does in sodium. The remaining "ions" also have twice the charge (if you are going to use this particular view of the metal bond) and so there will be more attraction between "ions" and "sea".

More realistically, each magnesium atom has 12 protons in the nucleus compared with sodium's 11. In both cases, the nucleus is screened from the delocalized electrons by the same number of inner electrons - the 10 electrons in the $1s^2$ $2s^2$ $2p^6$ orbitals. That means that there will be a net pull from the magnesium nucleus of 2+, but only 1+ from the sodium nucleus.

So not only will there be a greater number of delocalized electrons in magnesium, but there will also be a greater attraction for them from the magnesium nuclei. Magnesium atoms also have a slightly smaller radius than sodium atoms, and so the delocalized electrons are closer to the nuclei. Each magnesium atom also has twelve near neighbors rather than sodium's eight. Both of these factors increase the strength of the bond still further.

Note: Transition metals tend to have particularly high melting points and boiling points. The reason is that they can involve the 3d electrons in the delocalization as well as the 4s. The more electrons you can involve, the stronger the attractions tend to be.

Bulk properties of metals

Metals have several qualities that are unique, such as the ability to conduct electricity and heat, a low ionization energy, and a low electronegativity (so they will give up electrons easily to form cations). Their physical properties include a lustrous (shiny) appearance, and they are malleable and ductile. Metals have a crystal structure but can be easily deformed. In this model, the valence electrons are free, delocalized, mobile, and not associated with any particular atom. This model may account for:

- **Conductivity**: Since the electrons are free, if electrons from an outside source were pushed into a metal wire at one end (Figure 2.4.2), the electrons would move through the wire and come out at the other end at the same rate (conductivity is the movement of charge).

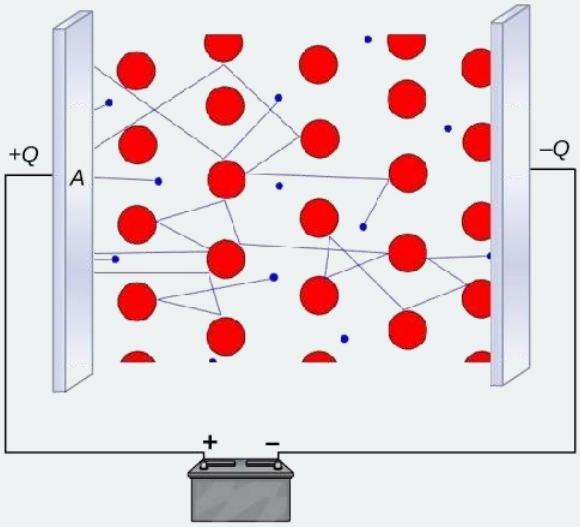


Figure 2.4.2: The "sea of electrons" is free to flow about the crystal of positive metal ions. These flowing electron can conduct electrical change when an electric field is applied (e.g., a battery). (CC-BY-SA; OpenStax and Rafaelgarcia).

- **Malleability** and **Ductility**: The electron-sea model of metals not only explains their electrical properties but their malleability and ductility as well. The sea of electrons surrounding the protons acts like a cushion, and so when the metal is hammered on, for instance, the overall composition of the structure of the metal is not harmed or changed. The protons may be rearranged but the sea of electrons with adjust to the new formation of protons and keep the metal intact. When one layer of ions in an electron sea moves along one space with respect to the layer below it, the crystal structure does not fracture but is only deformed (Figure 2.4.3).



Figure 2.4.3: Malleability of metals originate from each of moving layer of atoms with respect to each other. The final situation is much the same as the initial. Thus if we hit a metal with a hammer, the crystals do not shatter, but merely change their shape, This is very different from the behavior of ionic crystals.

- **Heat capacity**: This is explained by the ability of free electrons to move about the solid.
- **Luster**: The free electrons can absorb photons in the "sea," so metals are opaque-looking. Electrons on the surface can bounce back light at the same frequency that the light hits the surface, therefore the metal appears to be shiny.

However, these observations are only qualitative, and not quantitative, so they cannot be tested. The "Sea of Electrons" theory stands today only as an oversimplified model of how metallic bonding works.

In a molten metal, the metallic bond is still present, although the ordered structure has been broken down. The metallic bond is not fully broken until the metal boils. That means that boiling point is actually a better guide to the strength of the metallic bond than melting point is. On melting, the bond is loosened, not broken. The strength of a metallic bond depends on three things:

1. The number of electrons that become delocalized from the metal
2. The charge of the cation (metal).
3. The size of the cation.

A **strong** metallic bond will be the result of more delocalized electrons, which causes the effective nuclear charge on electrons on the cation to increase, in effect making the size of the cation smaller. Metallic bonds are strong and require a great deal of energy to break, and therefore **metals have high melting and boiling points.** A metallic bonding theory must explain how so much bonding can occur with such few electrons (since metals are located on the left side of the periodic table and do not have many electrons in their valence shells). The theory must also account for all of a metal's unique chemical and physical properties.

Expanding the Range of Bonding Possible

Previously, we argued that bonding between atoms can classified as range of possible bonding between **ionic bonds** (fully charge transfer) and **covalent bonds** (fully shared electrons). When two atoms of slightly differing electronegativities come together to form a covalent bond, one atom attracts the electrons more than the other; this is called a polar covalent bond. However, simple "ionic" and "covalent" bonding are idealized concepts and most bonds exist on a two-dimensional continuum described by the van Arkel-Ketelaar Triangle (Figure 2.4.4).

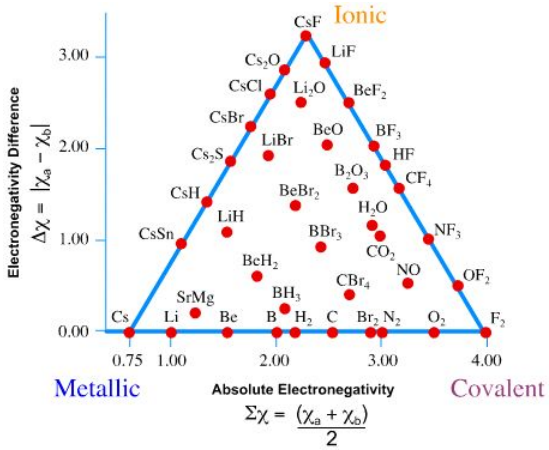


Figure 2.4.4: van Arkel-Ketelaar Triangle plots the difference in electronegativity ($\Delta\chi$) and the average electronegativity in a bond ($\sum \chi$). the top region is where bonds are mostly ionic, the lower left region is where bonding is metallic, and the lower right region is where the bonding is covalent.

Bond triangles or **van Arkel–Ketelaar** triangles (named after Anton Eduard van Arkel and J. A. A. Ketelaar) are triangles used for showing different compounds in varying degrees of ionic, metallic and covalent bonding. In 1941 van Arkel recognized three extreme materials and associated bonding types. Using 36 main group elements, such as metals, metalloids and non-metals, he placed ionic, metallic and covalent bonds on the corners of an equilateral triangle, as well as suggested intermediate species. The bond triangle shows that chemical bonds are not just particular bonds of a specific type. Rather, bond types are interconnected and different compounds have varying degrees of different bonding character (for example, polar covalent bonds).



Video 2.4.1: What is the van Arkel-Ketelaar Triangle of Bonding?

Using electronegativity - two compound average electronegativity on x-axis of Figure 2.4.4

$$\sum \chi = \frac{\chi_A + \chi_B}{2} \tag{2.4.1}$$

and electronegativity difference on y-axis,

$$\Delta\chi = |\chi_A - \chi_B| \tag{2.4.2}$$

we can rate the dominant bond between the compounds. On the right side of Figure 2.4.4 (from ionic to covalent) should be compounds with varying difference in electronegativity. The compounds with equal electronegativity, such as Cl_2 (chlorine) are placed in the covalent corner, while the ionic corner has compounds with large electronegativity difference, such as NaCl (table salt). The bottom side (from metallic to covalent) contains compounds with varying degree of directionality in the bond. At one extreme is metallic bonds with delocalized bonding and at the other are covalent bonds in which the orbitals overlap in a particular direction. The left side (from ionic to metallic) is meant for delocalized bonds with varying electronegativity difference.

The Three Extremes in bonding

In general:

- Metallic bonds have low $\Delta\chi$ **and** low average $\sum\chi$.
- Ionic bonds have moderate-to-high $\Delta\chi$ and moderate values of average $\sum\chi$.
- Covalent bonds have moderate to high average $\sum\chi$ and can exist with moderately low $\Delta\chi$.

Example 2.4.2

Use the tables of electronegativities (Table A2) and Figure 2.4.4 to estimate the following values

- difference in electronegativity ($\Delta\chi$)
- average electronegativity in a bond ($\sum\chi$)
- percent ionic character
- likely bond type

for the selected compounds:

a. AsH (e.g., in arsine AsH)
b. SrLi
c. KF.

Solution

a: AsH

- The electronegativity of As is 2.18
- The electronegativity of H is 2.22

Using Equations 2.4.1 and 2.4.2:

$$\begin{aligned}\sum\chi &= \frac{\chi_A + \chi_B}{2} \\ &= \frac{2.18 + 2.22}{2} \\ &= 2.2\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta\chi &= \chi_A - \chi_B \\ &= 2.18 - 2.22 \\ &= 0.04\end{aligned}$$

- From Figure 2.4.4, the bond is fairly nonpolar and has a low ionic character (10% or less)
- The bonding is in the middle of a covalent bond and a metallic bond

b: SrLi

- The electronegativity of Sr is 0.95
- The electronegativity of Li is 0.98

Using Equations 2.4.1 and 2.4.2:

$$\begin{aligned}\sum\chi &= \frac{\chi_A + \chi_B}{2} \\ &= \frac{0.95 + 0.98}{2} \\ &= 0.965\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta\chi &= \chi_A - \chi_B \\ &= 0.98 - 0.95 \\ &= 0.025\end{aligned}$$

- From Figure 2.4.4, the bond is fairly nonpolar and has a low ionic character (~3% or less)
- The bonding is likely metallic.

c: KF

- The electronegativity of K is 0.82
- The electronegativity of F is 3.98

Using Equations 2.4.1 and 2.4.2:

$$\begin{aligned}\sum\chi &= \frac{\chi_A + \chi_B}{2} \\ &= \frac{0.82 + 3.98}{2} \\ &= 2.4\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta\chi &= \chi_A - \chi_B \\ &= |0.82 - 3.98| \\ &= 3.16\end{aligned}$$

- From Figure 2.4.4, the bond is fairly polar and has a high ionic character (~75%)
- The bonding is likely ionic.

Exercise 2.4.2

Contrast the bonding of NaCl and silicon tetrafluoride.

Answer

NaCl is an ionic crystal structure, and an electrolyte when dissolved in water; $\Delta\chi = 1.58$, average $\sum\chi = 1.79$, while silicon tetrafluoride is covalent (molecular, non-polar gas; $\Delta\chi = 2.08$, average $\sum\chi = 2.94$.

Contributors and Attributions

- Jim Clark (Chemguide.co.uk)
- Daniel James Berger
- Wikipedia
- Ed Vitz (Kutztown University), John W. Moore (UW-Madison), Justin Shorb (Hope College), Xavier Prat-Resina (University of Minnesota Rochester), Tim Wendorff, and Adam Hahn.

2.4: Metallic Bonds is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **Metallic Bonding** by Jim Clark is licensed CC BY-NC 4.0.

2.5: Electronegativity

Electronegativity is a measure of the tendency of an atom to attract a bonding pair of electrons. The Pauling scale is the most commonly used. Fluorine (the most electronegative element) is assigned a value of 4.0, and values range down to cesium and francium which are the least electronegative at 0.7.

What if two atoms of equal electronegativity bond together?

Consider a bond between two atoms, A and B. If the atoms are equally electronegative, both have the same tendency to attract the bonding pair of electrons, and so it will be found on average half way between the two atoms:



To get a bond like this, A and B would usually have to be the same atom. You will find this sort of bond in, for example, H_2 or Cl_2 molecules. **Note:** It's important to realize that this is an average picture. The electrons are actually in a molecular orbital, and are moving around all the time within that orbital. This sort of bond could be thought of as being a "pure" covalent bond - where the electrons are shared evenly between the two atoms.

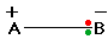
What if B is slightly more electronegative than A?

B will attract the electron pair rather more than A does.



That means that the B end of the bond has more than its fair share of electron density and so becomes slightly negative. At the same time, the A end (rather short of electrons) becomes slightly positive. In the diagram, "δ" (read as "delta") means "slightly" - so $\delta+$ means "slightly positive".

A polar bond is a covalent bond in which there is a separation of charge between one end and the other - in other words in which one end is slightly positive and the other slightly negative. Examples include most covalent bonds. The hydrogen-chlorine bond in HCl or the hydrogen-oxygen bonds in water are typical.



If B is a lot more electronegative than A, then the electron pair is dragged right over to B's end of the bond. To all intents and purposes, A has lost control of its electron, and B has complete control over both electrons. Ions have been formed. The bond is then an ionic bond rather than a covalent bond.

A "spectrum" of bonds

The implication of all this is that there is no clear-cut division between covalent and ionic bonds. In a pure covalent bond, the electrons are held on average exactly half way between the atoms. In a polar bond, the electrons have been dragged slightly towards one end. How far does this dragging have to go before the bond counts as ionic? There is no real answer to that. Sodium chloride is typically considered an ionic solid, but even here the sodium has not completely lost control of its electron. Because of the properties of sodium chloride, however, we tend to count it as if it were purely ionic. Lithium iodide, on the other hand, would be described as being "ionic with some covalent character". In this case, the pair of electrons has not moved entirely over to the iodine end of the bond. Lithium iodide, for example, dissolves in organic solvents like ethanol - not something which ionic substances normally do.

Summary

- No electronegativity difference between two atoms leads to a pure non-polar covalent bond.
- A small electronegativity difference leads to a polar covalent bond.
- A large electronegativity difference leads to an ionic bond.

Example 1: Polar Bonds vs. Polar Molecules

In a simple diatomic molecule like HCl, if the bond is polar, then the whole molecule is polar. What about more complicated molecules?

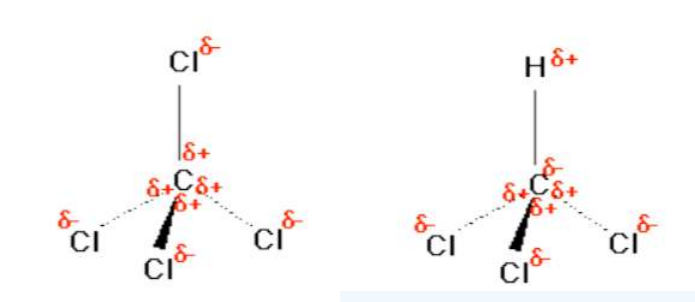


Figure 2.5.1: (left) CCl_4 (right) $CHCl_3$

Consider CCl_4, (left panel in figure above), which as a molecule is not polar - in the sense that it doesn't have an end (or a side) which is slightly negative and one which is slightly positive. The whole of the outside of the molecule is somewhat negative, but there is no overall separation of charge from top to bottom, or from left to right.

In contrast, $CHCl_3$ is a polar molecule (right panel in figure above). The hydrogen at the top of the molecule is less electronegative than carbon and so is slightly positive. This means that the molecule now has a slightly positive "top" and a slightly negative "bottom", and so is overall a polar molecule.

A polar molecule will need to be "lop-sided" in some way.

Patterns of electronegativity in the Periodic Table

The distance of the electrons from the nucleus remains relatively constant in a periodic table row, but not in a periodic table column. The force between two charges is given by Coulomb's law.

$$F = k\frac{Q_1 Q_2}{r^2} \tag{2.5.1}$$

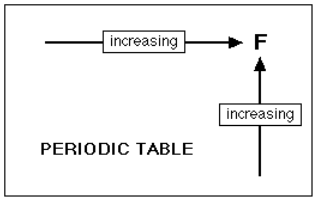
In this expression, Q represents a charge, k represents a constant and r is the distance between the charges. When r = 2, then r^2= 4. When r = 3, then r^2 = 9. When r = 4, then r^2 = 16. It is readily seen from these numbers that, as the distance between the charges increases, the force decreases very rapidly. This is called a quadratic change.

The result of this change is that electronegativity increases from bottom to top in a column in the periodic table even though there are more protons in the elements at the bottom of the column. Elements at the top of a column have greater electronegativities than elements at the bottom of a given column.

The overall trend for electronegativity in the periodic table is diagonal from the lower left corner to the upper right corner. Since the electronegativity of some of the important elements cannot be determined by these trends (they lie in the wrong diagonal), we have to memorize the following order of electronegativity for some of these common elements.

F > O > Cl > N > Br > I > S > C > H > metals

The most electronegative element is fluorine. If you remember that fact, everything becomes easy, because electronegativity must always increase towards fluorine in the Periodic Table.

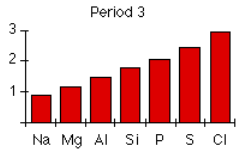


Note

This simplification ignores the noble gases. Historically this is because they were believed not to form bonds - and if they do not form bonds, they cannot have an electronegativity value. Even now that we know that some of them do form bonds, data sources still do not quote electronegativity values for them.

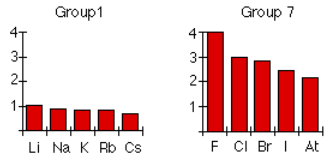
Trends in electronegativity across a period

The positively charged protons in the nucleus attract the negatively charged electrons. As the number of protons in the nucleus increases, the electronegativity or attraction will increase. Therefore electronegativity **increases** from **left to right** in a row in the periodic table. This effect only holds true for a row in the periodic table because the attraction between charges falls off rapidly with distance. The chart shows electronegativities from sodium to chlorine (ignoring argon since it does not does not form bonds).



Trends in electronegativity down a group

As you go down a group, electronegativity decreases. (If it increases up to fluorine, it must decrease as you go down.) The chart shows the patterns of electronegativity in Groups 1 and 7.



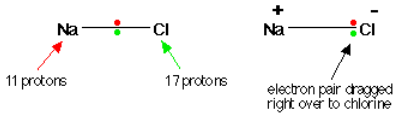
Explaining the patterns in electronegativity

The attraction that a bonding pair of electrons feels for a particular nucleus depends on:

- the number of protons in the nucleus;
- the distance from the nucleus;
- the amount of screening by inner electrons.

Why does electronegativity increase across a period?

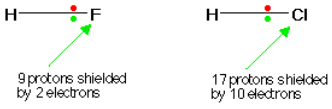
Consider sodium at the beginning of period 3 and chlorine at the end (ignoring the noble gas, argon). Think of sodium chloride as if it were covalently bonded.



Both sodium and chlorine have their bonding electrons in the 3-level. The electron pair is screened from both nuclei by the 1s, 2s and 2p electrons, but the chlorine nucleus has 6 more protons in it. It is no wonder the electron pair gets dragged so far towards the chlorine that ions are formed. Electronegativity increases across a period because the number of charges on the nucleus increases. That attracts the bonding pair of electrons more strongly.

Why does electronegativity fall as you go down a group?

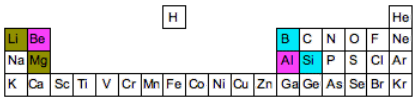
As you go **down** a group, electronegativity **decreases** because the bonding pair of electrons is increasingly distant from the attraction of the nucleus. Consider the hydrogen fluoride and hydrogen chloride molecules:



The bonding pair is shielded from the fluorine's nucleus only by the $1s^2$ electrons. In the chlorine case it is shielded by all the $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$ electrons. In each case there is a net pull from the center of the fluorine or chlorine of +7. But fluorine has the bonding pair in the 2-level rather than the 3-level as it is in chlorine. If it is closer to the nucleus, the attraction is greater.

Diagonal relationships in the Periodic Table

At the beginning of periods 2 and 3 of the Periodic Table, there are several cases where an element at the top of one group has some similarities with an element in the next group. Three examples are shown in the diagram below. Notice that the similarities occur in elements which are diagonal to each other - not side-by-side.



For example, boron is a non-metal with some properties rather like silicon. Unlike the rest of Group 2, beryllium has some properties resembling aluminum. And lithium has some properties which differ from the other elements in Group 1, and in some ways resembles magnesium. There is said to be a diagonal relationship between these elements. There are several reasons for this, but each depends on the way atomic properties like electronegativity vary around the Periodic Table. So we will have a quick look at this with regard to electronegativity - which is probably the simplest to explain.

Explaining the diagonal relationship with regard to electronegativity

Electronegativity increases across the Periodic Table. So, for example, the electronegativities of beryllium and boron are:

Be	1.5
B	2.0

Electronegativity falls as you go down the Periodic Table. So, for example, the electronegativities of boron and aluminum are:

B	2.0
Al	1.5

So, comparing Be and Al, you find the values are (by chance) exactly the same. The increase from Group 2 to Group 3 is offset by the fall as you go down Group 3 from boron to aluminum. Something similar happens from lithium (1.0) to magnesium (1.2), and from boron (2.0) to silicon (1.8). In these cases, the electronegativities are not exactly the same, but are very close.

Similar electronegativities between the members of these diagonal pairs means that they are likely to form similar types of bonds, and that will affect their chemistry. You may well come across examples of this later on in your course.

2.5: Electronegativity is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **Electronegativity** by Jim Clark is licensed CC BY-NC 4.0.

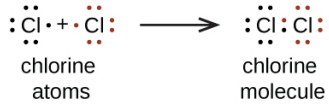
2.6: Lewis Symbols and Structures

Learning Objectives

- Draw Lewis structures depicting the bonding in simple molecules

Lewis Structures

We also use Lewis symbols to indicate the formation of covalent bonds, which are shown in Lewis structures, drawings that describe the bonding in molecules and polyatomic ions. For example, when two chlorine atoms form a chlorine molecule, they share one pair of electrons:



The Lewis structure indicates that each Cl atom has three pairs of electrons that are not used in bonding (called lone pairs) and one shared pair of electrons (written between the atoms). A dash (or line) is usually used to indicate a shared pair of electrons:



In the Lewis model, a single shared pair of electrons is a single bond. Each Cl atom interacts with eight valence electrons total: the six in the lone pairs and the two in the single bond.

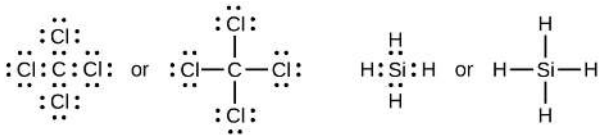


Lewis Structure of Molecules: https://youtu.be/xWiFCqA9Ur0

The Octet Rule

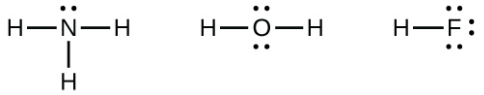
The other halogen molecules (F_2, Br_2, I_2, and At_2) form bonds like those in the chlorine molecule: one single bond between atoms and three lone pairs of electrons per atom. This allows each halogen atom to have a noble gas electron configuration. The tendency of main group atoms to form enough bonds to obtain eight valence electrons is known as the octet rule.

The number of bonds that an atom can form can often be predicted from the number of electrons needed to reach an octet (eight valence electrons); this is especially true of the nonmetals of the second period of the periodic table (C, N, O, and F). For example, each atom of a group 14 element has four electrons in its outermost shell and therefore requires four more electrons to reach an octet. These four electrons can be gained by forming four covalent bonds, as illustrated here for carbon in CCl_4 (carbon tetrachloride) and silicon in SiH_4 (silane). Because hydrogen only needs two electrons to fill its valence shell, it is an exception to the octet rule and only needs to form one bond. The transition elements and inner transition elements also do not follow the octet rule since they have d and f electrons involved in their valence shells.



carbon tetrachloride silane

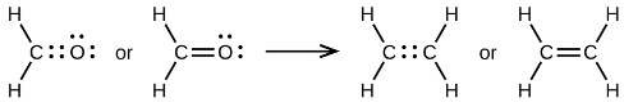
Group 15 elements such as nitrogen have five valence electrons in the atomic Lewis symbol: one lone pair and three unpaired electrons. To obtain an octet, these atoms form three covalent bonds, as in NH_3 (ammonia). Oxygen and other atoms in group 16 obtain an octet by forming two covalent bonds:



ammonia Water hydrogen fluoride

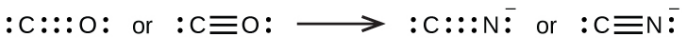
Double and Triple Bonds

As previously mentioned, when a pair of atoms shares one pair of electrons, we call this a single bond. However, a pair of atoms may need to share more than one pair of electrons in order to achieve the requisite octet. A double bond forms when two pairs of electrons are shared between a pair of atoms, as between the carbon and oxygen atoms in CH_2O (formaldehyde) and between the two carbon atoms in C_2H_4 (ethylene):



formaldehyde ethylene

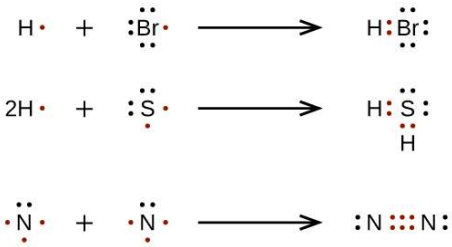
A triple bond forms when three electron pairs are shared by a pair of atoms, as in carbon monoxide (CO) and the cyanide ion (CN^-):



carbon monoxide cyanide ion

Writing Lewis Structures with the Octet Rule

For very simple molecules and molecular ions, we can write the Lewis structures by merely pairing up the unpaired electrons on the constituent atoms. See these examples:



For more complicated molecules and molecular ions, it is helpful to follow the step-by-step procedure outlined here:

1. Determine the total number of valence (outer shell) electrons among all the atoms. For cations, subtract one electron for each positive charge. For anions, add one electron for each negative charge.
2. Draw a skeleton structure of the molecule or ion, arranging the atoms around a central atom. (Generally, the least electronegative element should be placed in the center.) Connect each atom to the central atom with a single bond (one electron pair).
3. Distribute the remaining electrons as lone pairs on the terminal atoms (except hydrogen), completing an octet around each atom.

4. Place all remaining electrons on the central atom.
5. Rearrange the electrons of the outer atoms to make multiple bonds with the central atom in order to obtain octets wherever possible.

Let us determine the Lewis structures of SiH_4, CHO_2^-, NO^+, and OF_2 as examples in following this procedure:

1. Determine the total number of valence (outer shell) electrons in the molecule or ion.
   - For a molecule, we add the number of valence electrons on each atom in the molecule:

$$\begin{aligned} &SiH_4 && (2.6.1)\\ &\text{Si: } 4 \text{ valence electrons/atom} \times 1 \text{ atom} = 4 && (2.6.2)\\ +&\text{H: } 1 \text{ valence electron/atom} \times 4 \text{ atoms} = 4 && (2.6.3)\\ &= 8 \text{ valence electrons} && (2.6.4)\end{aligned}$$

   - For a *negative ion*, such as CHO_2^-, we add the number of valence electrons on the atoms to the number of negative charges on the ion (one electron is gained for each single negative charge):

$$\begin{aligned} &CHO_2^-\\ &\text{C: } 4 \text{ valence electrons/atom} \times 1 \text{ atom} = 4\\ &\text{H: } 1 \text{ valence electron/atom} \times 1 \text{ atom} = 1\\ &\text{O: } 6 \text{ valence electrons/atom} \times 2 \text{ atoms} = 12\\ +&\text{1 additional electron} = 1\\ &= 18 \text{ valence electrons}\end{aligned}$$

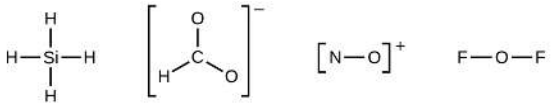
   - For a *positive ion*, such as NO^+, we add the number of valence electrons on the atoms in the ion and then subtract the number of positive charges on the ion (one electron is lost for each single positive charge) from the total number of valence electrons:

$$\begin{aligned} &NO^+\\ &\text{N: } 5 \text{ valence electrons/atom} \times 1 \text{ atom} = 5\\ &\text{O: } 6 \text{ valence electron/atom} \times 1 \text{ atom} = 6\\ +&-1 \text{ electron (positive charge)} = -1\\ &= 10 \text{ valence electrons}\end{aligned}$$

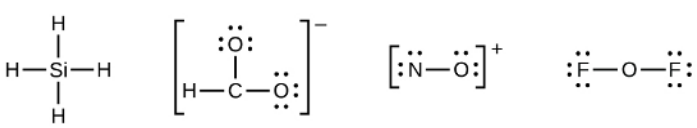
   - Since OF_2 is a neutral molecule, we simply add the number of valence electrons:

$$\begin{aligned} &OF_2\\ &\text{O: } 6 \text{ valence electrons/atom} \times 1 \text{ atom} = 6\\ +&\text{F: } 7 \text{ valence electrons/atom} \times 2 \text{ atoms} = 14\\ &= 20 \text{ valence electrons}\end{aligned}$$

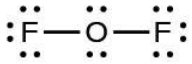
2. Draw a skeleton structure of the molecule or ion, arranging the atoms around a central atom and connecting each atom to the central atom with a single (one electron pair) bond. (Note that we denote ions with brackets around the structure, indicating the charge outside the brackets:)



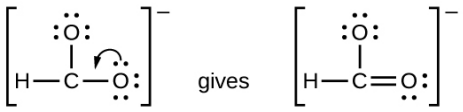
3. When several arrangements of atoms are possible, as for CHO_2^-, we must use experimental evidence to choose the correct one. In general, the less electronegative elements are more likely to be central atoms. In CHO_2^-, the less electronegative carbon atom occupies the central position with the oxygen and hydrogen atoms surrounding it. Other examples include P in $POCl_3$, S in SO_2, and Cl in ClO_4^-. An exception is that hydrogen is almost never a central atom. As the most electronegative element, fluorine also cannot be a central atom.
4. Distribute the remaining electrons as lone pairs on the terminal atoms (except hydrogen) to complete their valence shells with an octet of electrons.
   - There are no remaining electrons on SiH_4, so it is unchanged:



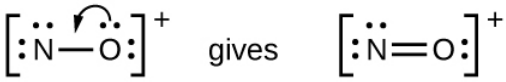
5. Place all remaining electrons on the central atom.
   - For SiH_4, CHO_2^-, and NO^+, there are no remaining electrons; we already placed all of the electrons determined in Step 1.
   - For OF_2, we had 16 electrons remaining in Step 3, and we placed 12, leaving 4 to be placed on the central atom:



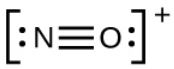
6. Rearrange the electrons of the outer atoms to make multiple bonds with the central atom in order to obtain octets wherever possible.
   - SiH_4: Si already has an octet, so nothing needs to be done.
   - CHO_2^-: We have distributed the valence electrons as lone pairs on the oxygen atoms, but the carbon atom lacks an octet:



- NO^+: For this ion, we added eight outer electrons, but neither atom has an octet. We cannot add any more electrons since we have already used the total that we found in Step 1, so we must move electrons to form a multiple bond:



- This still does not produce an octet, so we must move another pair, forming a triple bond:



- In OF_2, each atom has an octet as drawn, so nothing changes.

Example 2.6.1: Writing Lewis Structures

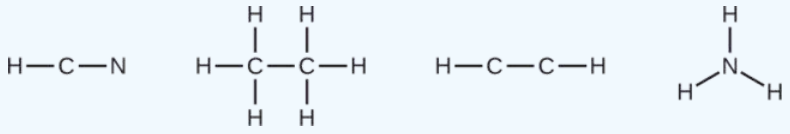
NASA's Cassini-Huygens mission detected a large cloud of toxic hydrogen cyanide (HCN) on Titan, one of Saturn's moons. Titan also contains ethane (H_3CCH_3), acetylene (HCCH), and ammonia (NH_3). What are the Lewis structures of these molecules?

Solution

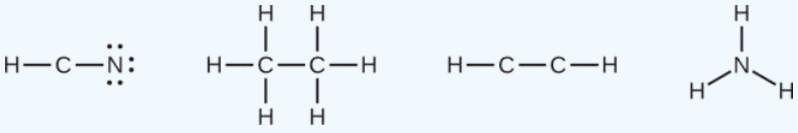
Calculate the number of valence electrons.

- HCN: (1 × 1) + (4 × 1) + (5 × 1) = 10
- H_3CCH_3: (1 × 3) + (2 × 4) + (1 × 3) = 14
- HCCH: (1 × 1) + (2 × 4) + (1 × 1) = 10
- NH_3: (5 × 1) + (3 × 1) = 8

Draw a skeleton and connect the atoms with single bonds. Remember that H is never a central atom:



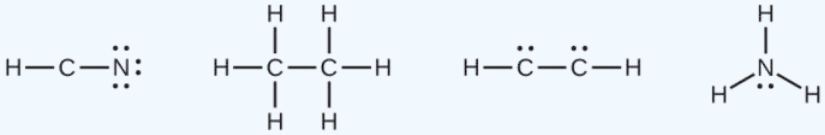
Where needed, distribute electrons to the terminal atoms:



- HCN: six electrons placed on N
- H_3CCH_3: no electrons remain

- HCCH: no terminal atoms capable of accepting electrons
- NH_3: no terminal atoms capable of accepting electrons

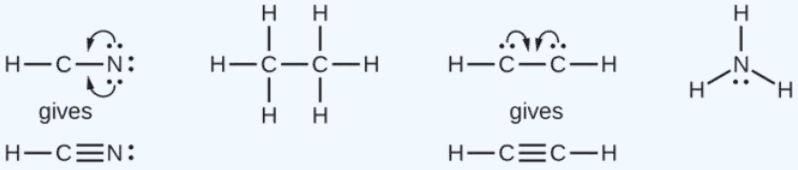
Where needed, place remaining electrons on the central atom:



- HCN: no electrons remain
- H_3CCH_3: no electrons remain
- HCCH: four electrons placed on carbon
- NH_3: two electrons placed on nitrogen

Where needed, rearrange electrons to form multiple bonds in order to obtain an octet on each atom:

- HCN: form two more C–N bonds
- H_3CCH_3: all atoms have the correct number of electrons
- HCCH: form a triple bond between the two carbon atoms
- NH_3: all atoms have the correct number of electrons



? Exercise 2.6.1

Both carbon monoxide, CO, and carbon dioxide, CO_2, are products of the combustion of fossil fuels. Both of these gases also cause problems: CO is toxic and CO_2 has been implicated in global climate change. What are the Lewis structures of these two molecules?

Answer



Exceptions to the Octet Rule

Many covalent molecules have central atoms that do not have eight electrons in their Lewis structures. These molecules fall into three categories:

- Odd-electron molecules have an odd number of valence electrons, and therefore have an unpaired electron.
- Electron-deficient molecules have a central atom that has fewer electrons than needed for a noble gas configuration.
- Hypervalent molecules have a central atom that has more electrons than needed for a noble gas configuration.

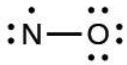
Odd-electron Molecules

We call molecules that contain an odd number of electrons free radicals. Nitric oxide, NO, is an example of an odd-electron molecule; it is produced in internal combustion engines when oxygen and nitrogen react at high temperatures.

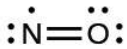
To draw the Lewis structure for an odd-electron molecule like NO, we follow the same five steps we would for other molecules, but with a few minor changes:

1. *Determine the total number of valence (outer shell) electrons*. The sum of the valence electrons is 5 (from N) + 6 (from O) = 11. The odd number immediately tells us that we have a free radical, so we know that not every atom can have eight electrons in its valence shell.
2. *Draw a skeleton structure of the molecule*. We can easily draw a skeleton with an N–O single bond: N–O

3. *Distribute the remaining electrons as lone pairs on the terminal atoms*. In this case, there is no central atom, so we distribute the electrons around both atoms. We give eight electrons to the more electronegative atom in these situations; thus oxygen has the filled valence shell:

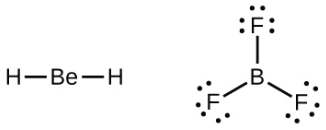


4. *Place all remaining electrons on the central atom*. Since there are no remaining electrons, this step does not apply.
5. *Rearrange the electrons to make multiple bonds with the central atom in order to obtain octets wherever possible.* We know that an odd-electron molecule cannot have an octet for every atom, but we want to get each atom as close to an octet as possible. In this case, nitrogen has only five electrons around it. To move closer to an octet for nitrogen, we take one of the lone pairs from oxygen and use it to form a NO double bond. (We cannot take another lone pair of electrons on oxygen and form a triple bond because nitrogen would then have nine electrons:)

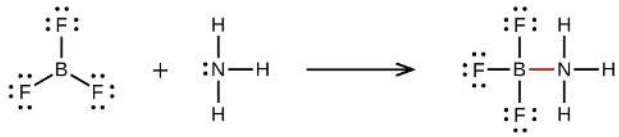


Electron-deficient Molecules

We will also encounter a few molecules that contain central atoms that do not have a filled valence shell. Generally, these are molecules with central atoms from groups 2 and 13 and outer atoms that are hydrogen or other atoms that do not form multiple bonds. For example, in the Lewis structures of beryllium dihydride, BeH_2, and boron trifluoride, BF_3, the beryllium and boron atoms each have only four and six electrons, respectively. It is possible to draw a structure with a double bond between a boron atom and a fluorine atom in BF_3, satisfying the octet rule, but experimental evidence indicates the bond lengths are closer to that expected for B–F single bonds. This suggests the best Lewis structure has three B–F single bonds and an electron deficient boron. The reactivity of the compound is also consistent with an electron deficient boron. However, the B–F bonds are slightly shorter than what is actually expected for B–F single bonds, indicating that some double bond character is found in the actual molecule.



An atom like the boron atom in BF_3, which does not have eight electrons, is very reactive. It readily combines with a molecule containing an atom with a lone pair of electrons. For example, NH_3 reacts with BF_3 because the lone pair on nitrogen can be shared with the boron atom:



Hypervalent Molecules

Elements in the second period of the periodic table ($n = 2$) can accommodate only eight electrons in their valence shell orbitals because they have only four valence orbitals (one 2*s* and three 2*p* orbitals). Elements in the third and higher periods ($n \geq 3$) have more than four valence orbitals and can share more than four pairs of electrons with other atoms because they have empty *d* orbitals in the same shell. Molecules formed from these elements are sometimes called hypervalent molecules.Table 2.6.5 shows the Lewis structures for two hypervalent molecules, PCl_5 and SF_6.

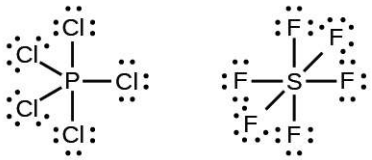
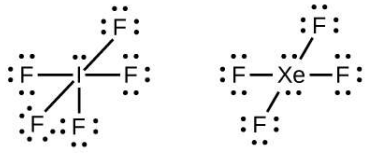


Table **2.6.5***: In PCl_5, the central atom phosphorus shares five pairs of electrons. In SF_6, sulfur shares six pairs of electrons.*

In some hypervalent molecules, such as IF_5 and XeF_4, some of the electrons in the outer shell of the central atom are lone pairs:



When we write the Lewis structures for these molecules, we find that we have electrons left over after filling the valence shells of the outer atoms with eight electrons. These additional electrons must be assigned to the central atom.

Example 2.6.2: Octet Rule Violations

Xenon is a noble gas, but it forms a number of stable compounds. We examined XeF_4 earlier. What are the Lewis structures of XeF_2 and XeF_6?

Solution

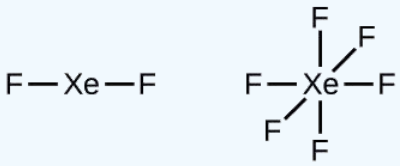
We can draw the Lewis structure of any covalent molecule by following the six steps discussed earlier. In this case, we can condense the last few steps, since not all of them apply.

Step 1: Calculate the number of valence electrons:

$$XeF_2: 8 + (2 \times 7) = 22$$

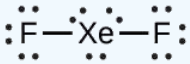
$$XeF_6: 8 + (6 \times 7) = 50$$

***Step 2: Draw a skeleton joining the atoms by single bonds.* Xenon will be the central atom because fluorine cannot be a central atom:**

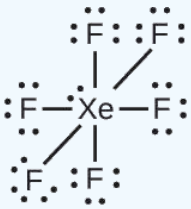


Step 3: Distribute the remaining electrons.

XeF_2: We place three lone pairs of electrons around each F atom, accounting for 12 electrons and giving each F atom 8 electrons. Thus, six electrons (three lone pairs) remain. These lone pairs must be placed on the Xe atom. This is acceptable because Xe atoms have empty valence shell *d* orbitals and can accommodate more than eight electrons. The Lewis structure of XeF_2 shows two bonding pairs and three lone pairs of electrons around the Xe atom:



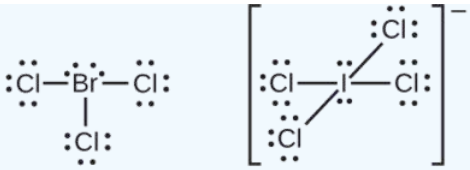
XeF_6: We place three lone pairs of electrons around each F atom, accounting for 36 electrons. Two electrons remain, and this lone pair is placed on the Xe atom:



Exercise 2.6.2: interhalogens

The halogens form a class of compounds called the interhalogens, in which halogen atoms covalently bond to each other. Write the Lewis structures for the interhalogens $BrCl_3$ and ICl_4^-.

Answer





Expanded Valence Shell Bonding: https://youtu.be/Y4fBdOJBSHI

Summary

Valence electronic structures can be visualized by drawing Lewis symbols (for atoms and monatomic ions) and Lewis structures (for molecules and polyatomic ions). Lone pairs, unpaired electrons, and single, double, or triple bonds are used to indicate where the valence electrons are located around each atom in a Lewis structure. Most structures—especially those containing second row elements—obey the octet rule, in which every atom (except H) is surrounded by eight electrons. Exceptions to the octet rule occur for odd-electron molecules (free radicals), electron-deficient molecules, and hypervalent molecules.

Glossary

double bond
covalent bond in which two pairs of electrons are shared between two atoms

free radical
molecule that contains an odd number of electrons

hypervalent molecule
molecule containing at least one main group element that has more than eight electrons in its valence shell

Lewis structure
diagram showing lone pairs and bonding pairs of electrons in a molecule or an ion

Lewis symbol
symbol for an element or monatomic ion that uses a dot to represent each valence electron in the element or ion

lone pair
two (a pair of) valence electrons that are not used to form a covalent bond

octet rule

guideline that states main group atoms will form structures in which eight valence electrons interact with each nucleus, counting bonding electrons as interacting with both atoms connected by the bond

single bond

bond in which a single pair of electrons is shared between two atoms

triple bond

bond in which three pairs of electrons are shared between two atoms

---

This page titled 2.6: Lewis Symbols and Structures is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **7.4: Lewis Symbols and Structures** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

2.7: Formal Charges and Resonance

Learning Objectives

- Compute formal charges for atoms in any Lewis structure
- Use formal charges to identify the most reasonable Lewis structure for a given molecule
- Explain the concept of resonance and draw Lewis structures representing resonance forms for a given molecule

Previously, we discussed how to write Lewis structures for molecules and polyatomic ions. In some cases, however, there is seemingly more than one valid structure for a molecule. We can use the concept of formal charges to help us predict the most appropriate Lewis structure when more than one is reasonable.

Calculating Formal Charge

The formal charge of an atom in a molecule is the *hypothetical* charge the atom would have if we could redistribute the electrons in the bonds evenly between the atoms. Another way of saying this is that formal charge results when we take the number of valence electrons of a neutral atom, subtract the nonbonding electrons, and then subtract the number of bonds connected to that atom in the Lewis structure.

Thus, we calculate formal charge as follows:

$$\text{formal charge} = \#\text{ valence shell electrons (free atom)} - \#\text{ lone pair electrons} - \frac{1}{2}\#\text{ bonding electrons}$$

We can double-check formal charge calculations by determining the sum of the formal charges for the whole structure. The sum of the formal charges of all atoms in a molecule must be zero; the sum of the formal charges in an ion should equal the charge of the ion.

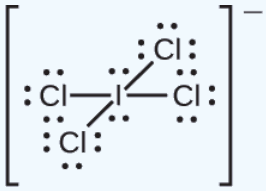
We must remember that the formal charge calculated for an atom is not the *actual* charge of the atom in the molecule. Formal charge is only a useful bookkeeping procedure; it does not indicate the presence of actual charges.

Example 2.7.1: Calculating Formal Charge from Lewis Structures

Assign formal charges to each atom in the interhalogen ion ICl_4^-.

Solution

We divide the bonding electron pairs equally for all I– Cl bonds:



We assign lone pairs of electrons to their atoms. Each Cl atom now has seven electrons assigned to it, and the I atom has eight.

Subtract this number from the number of valence electrons for the neutral atom:

- I: 7 – 8 = –1
- Cl: 7 – 7 = 0

The sum of the formal charges of all the atoms equals –1, which is identical to the charge of the ion (–1).

Exercise 2.7.1

Calculate the formal charge for each atom in the carbon monoxide molecule:



Answer

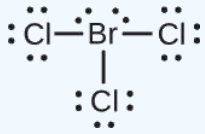
C −1, O +1

Example 2.7.2: Calculating Formal Charge from Lewis Structures

Assign formal charges to each atom in the interhalogen molecule $BrCl_3$.

Solution

Assign one of the electrons in each Br–Cl bond to the Br atom and one to the Cl atom in that bond:



Assign the lone pairs to their atom. Now each Cl atom has seven electrons and the Br atom has seven electrons.

Subtract this number from the number of valence electrons for the neutral atom. This gives the formal charge:

- Br: 7 – 7 = 0
- Cl: 7 – 7 = 0

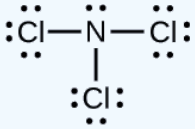
All atoms in $BrCl_3$ have a formal charge of zero, and the sum of the formal charges totals zero, as it must in a neutral molecule.

Exercise 2.7.2

Determine the formal charge for each atom in NCl_3.

Answer

N: 0; all three Cl atoms: 0



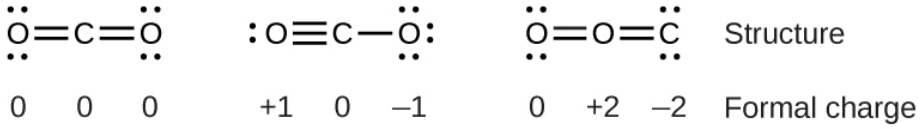
Using Formal Charge to Predict Molecular Structure

The arrangement of atoms in a molecule or ion is called its molecular structure. In many cases, following the steps for writing Lewis structures may lead to more than one possible molecular structure—different multiple bond and lone-pair electron placements or different arrangements of atoms, for instance. A few guidelines involving formal charge can be helpful in deciding which of the possible structures is most likely for a particular molecule or ion.

Predicting Molecular Structure Guidelines

1. A molecular structure in which all formal charges are zero is preferable to one in which some formal charges are not zero.
2. If the Lewis structure must have nonzero formal charges, the arrangement with the smallest nonzero formal charges is preferable.
3. Lewis structures are preferable when adjacent formal charges are zero or of the opposite sign.
4. When we must choose among several Lewis structures with similar distributions of formal charges, the structure with the negative formal charges on the more electronegative atoms is preferable.

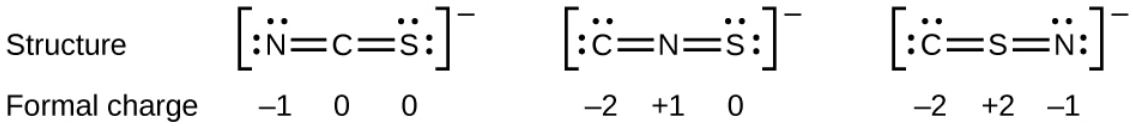
To see how these guidelines apply, let us consider some possible structures for carbon dioxide, CO_2. We know from our previous discussion that the less electronegative atom typically occupies the central position, but formal charges allow us to understand *why* this occurs. We can draw three possibilities for the structure: carbon in the center and double bonds, carbon in the center with a single and triple bond, and oxygen in the center with double bonds:



Three Lewis structures are shown. The left and right structures show a carbon atom double bonded to two oxygen atoms, each of which has two lone pairs of electrons. The center structure shows a carbon atom that is triple bonded to an oxygen atom with one lone pair of electrons and single bonded to an oxygen atom with three lone pairs of electrons. The third structure shows an oxygen atom double bonded to another oxygen atom with to lone pairs of electrons. The first oxygen atom is also double bonded to a carbon atom with two lone pairs of electrons.

Comparing the three formal charges, we can definitively identify the structure on the left as preferable because it has only formal charges of zero (Guideline 1).

As another example, the thiocyanate ion, an ion formed from a carbon atom, a nitrogen atom, and a sulfur atom, could have three different molecular structures: CNS^-, NCS^-, or CSN^-. The formal charges present in each of these molecular structures can help us pick the most likely arrangement of atoms. Possible Lewis structures and the formal charges for each of the three possible structures for the thiocyanate ion are shown here:

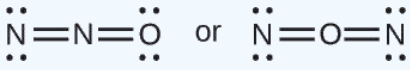


Two rows of structures and numbers are shown. The top row is labeled, “Structure” and depicts three Lewis structures and the bottom row is labeled, “Formal charge.” The left structure shows a carbon atom double bonded to a nitrogen atom with two lone electron pairs on one side and double bonded to a sulfur atom with two lone electron pairs on the other. The structure is surrounded by brackets and has a superscripted negative sign. Below this structure are the numbers negative one, zero, and zero. The middle structure shows a carbon atom with two lone pairs of electrons double bonded to a nitrogen atom that is double bonded to a sulfur atom with two lone electron pairs. The structure is surrounded by brackets and has a superscripted negative sign. Below this structure are the numbers negative two, positive one, and zero. The right structure shows a carbon atom with two lone electron pairs double bonded to a sulfur atom that is double bonded to a nitrogen atom with two lone electron pairs. The structure is surrounded by brackets and has a superscripted negative sign. Below this structure are the numbers negative two, positive two, and one.

Note that the sum of the formal charges in each case is equal to the charge of the ion (–1). However, the first arrangement of atoms is preferred because it has the lowest number of atoms with nonzero formal charges (Guideline 2). Also, it places the least electronegative atom in the center, and the negative charge on the more electronegative element (Guideline 4).

Example 2.7.3: Using Formal Charge to Determine Molecular Structure

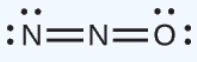
Nitrous oxide, N_2O, commonly known as laughing gas, is used as an anesthetic in minor surgeries, such as the routine extraction of wisdom teeth. Which is the likely structure for nitrous oxide?



Solution Determining formal charge yields the following:



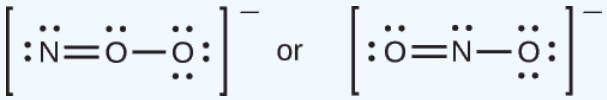
The structure with a terminal oxygen atom best satisfies the criteria for the most stable distribution of formal charge:



The number of atoms with formal charges are minimized (Guideline 2), and there is no formal charge larger than one (Guideline 2). This is again consistent with the preference for having the less electronegative atom in the central position.

? Exercise 2.7.3

Which is the most likely molecular structure for the nitrite (NO_2^-) ion?



Answer

ONO^-

Resonance

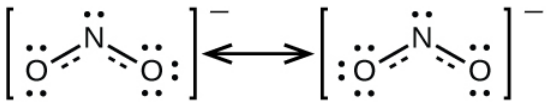
You may have noticed that the nitrite anion in Example 2.7.3 can have two possible structures with the atoms in the same positions. The electrons involved in the N–O double bond, however, are in different positions:



Two Lewis structures are shown. The left structure shows an oxygen atom with three lone pairs of electrons single bonded to a nitrogen atom with one lone pair of electrons that is double bonded to an oxygen with two lone pairs of electrons. Brackets surround this structure, and there is a superscripted negative sign. The right structure shows an oxygen atom with two lone pairs of electrons double bonded to a nitrogen atom with one lone pair of electrons that is single bonded to an oxygen atom with three lone pairs of electrons. Brackets surround this structure, and there is a superscripted negative sign.

If nitrite ions do indeed contain a single and a double bond, we would expect for the two bond lengths to be different. A double bond between two atoms is shorter (and stronger) than a single bond between the same two atoms. Experiments show, however, that both N–O bonds in NO_2^- have the same strength and length, and are identical in all other properties.

It is not possible to write a single Lewis structure for NO_2^- in which nitrogen has an octet and both bonds are equivalent. Instead, we use the concept of resonance: if two or more Lewis structures with the same arrangement of atoms can be written for a molecule or ion, the actual distribution of electrons is an *average* of that shown by the various Lewis structures. The actual distribution of electrons in each of the nitrogen-oxygen bonds in NO_2^- is the average of a double bond and a single bond. We call the individual Lewis structures resonance forms. The actual electronic structure of the molecule (the average of the resonance forms) is called a resonance hybrid of the individual resonance forms. A double-headed arrow between Lewis structures indicates that they are resonance forms. Thus, the electronic structure of the NO_2^- ion is shown as:

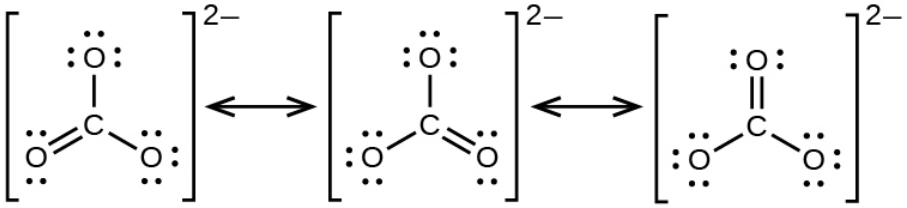


Two Lewis structures are shown with a double headed arrow drawn between them. The left structure shows an oxygen atom with two lone pairs of electrons double bonded to a nitrogen atom with one lone pair of electrons that is single bonded to an oxygen atom with three lone pairs of electrons. Brackets surround this structure, and there is a superscripted negative sign. The right structure shows an oxygen atom with three lone pairs of electrons single bonded to a nitrogen atom with one lone pair of electrons that is double bonded to an oxygen atom with two lone pairs of electrons. Brackets surround this structure, and there is a superscripted negative sign.

We should remember that a molecule described as a resonance hybrid *never* possesses an electronic structure described by either resonance form. It does not fluctuate between resonance forms; rather, the actual electronic structure is *always* the average of that shown by all resonance forms. George Wheland, one of the pioneers of resonance theory, used a historical analogy to describe the relationship between resonance forms and resonance hybrids. A medieval traveler, having never before seen a rhinoceros, described it as a hybrid of a dragon and a unicorn because it had many properties in common with both. Just as a rhinoceros is neither a

dragon sometimes nor a unicorn at other times, a resonance hybrid is neither of its resonance forms at any given time. Like a rhinoceros, it is a real entity that experimental evidence has shown to exist. It has some characteristics in common with its resonance forms, but the resonance forms themselves are convenient, imaginary images (like the unicorn and the dragon).

The carbonate anion, CO_3^{2-}, provides a second example of resonance:



Three Lewis structures are shown with double headed arrows in between. Each structure is surrounded by brackets, and each has a superscripted two negative sign. The left structure depicts a carbon atom bonded to three oxygen atoms. It is single bonded to two of these oxygen atoms, each of which has three lone pairs of electrons, and double bonded to the third, which has two lone pairs of electrons. The double bond is located between the lower left oxygen atom and the carbon atom. The central and right structures are the same as the first, but the position of the double bonded oxygen has moved to the lower right oxygen in the central structure and to the top oxygen in the right structure.

One oxygen atom must have a double bond to carbon to complete the octet on the central atom. All oxygen atoms, however, are equivalent, and the double bond could form from any one of the three atoms. This gives rise to three resonance forms of the carbonate ion. Because we can write three identical resonance structures, we know that the actual arrangement of electrons in the carbonate ion is the average of the three structures. Again, experiments show that all three C–O bonds are exactly the same.

Summary

In a Lewis structure, formal charges can be assigned to each atom by treating each bond as if one-half of the electrons are assigned to each atom. These hypothetical formal charges are a guide to determining the most appropriate Lewis structure. A structure in which the formal charges are as close to zero as possible is preferred. Resonance occurs in cases where two or more Lewis structures with identical arrangements of atoms but different distributions of electrons can be written. The actual distribution of electrons (the resonance hybrid) is an average of the distribution indicated by the individual Lewis structures (the resonance forms).

Key Equations

- $\text{formal charge} = \#\text{ valence shell electrons (free atom)} - \#\text{ one pair electrons} - \frac{1}{2}\#\text{ bonding electrons}$

Glossary

formal charge

charge that would result on an atom by taking the number of valence electrons on the neutral atom and subtracting the nonbonding electrons and the number of bonds (one-half of the bonding electrons)

molecular structure

arrangement of atoms in a molecule or ion

resonance

situation in which one Lewis structure is insufficient to describe the bonding in a molecule and the average of multiple structures is observed

resonance forms

two or more Lewis structures that have the same arrangement of atoms but different arrangements of electrons

resonance hybrid

average of the resonance forms shown by the individual Lewis structures

This page titled 2.7: Formal Charges and Resonance is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **7.5: Formal Charges and Resonance** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/321499

2.8: Organic Structural Representations- Bond-Line Notation

Learning Objectives

- Define bond-line notation.
- Represent an organic molecule using bond-line notation.
- Identify the compositional characteristics of a molecule that can be determined by analyzing a structure that is represented using bond-line notation.

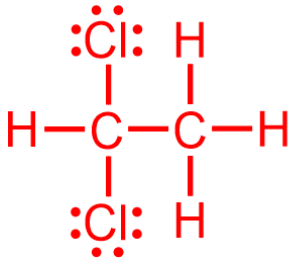
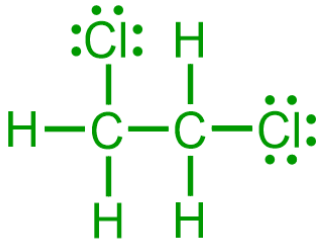
As stated previously, organic chemists use several different notations to represent organic molecules. While a molecular formula only indicates the types and quantities of elements that are present in a molecule, nearly all of the compositional characteristics of an organic substance can be determined by analyzing a structure that is symbolized using expanded structural notation. The types of elements that are present are indicated by the elemental symbols that are shown in the corresponding structural representation. The quantity of each element, as well as the total number of bonds and lone pairs that are present in a molecule, can be established by counting the number of times that each symbol is written in a molecular image. Furthermore, the connectivity, or relative bonding arrangement, of each atom, bond, and lone pair can be explained by describing the placement of each of these components, relative to one another, in an organic structural representation. The types of bonds that are found in a molecule can be determined by counting the number of lines that are drawn between any two atoms in the corresponding image. Structures that are drawn using Valence Shell Electron Pair Repulsion notation also reflect the three-dimensional spatial orientations of organic molecules and their constituent atoms, in addition to all of the compositional characteristics that are listed above above. However, since organic molecules can contain thousands of individual carbon atoms, the expanded and VSEPR images of these substances can become prohibitively-large in size. Furthermore, representing large molecules using these notations is incredibly time-consuming, due to the amount of detail that must be incorporated into the pictures that are generated. Therefore, in order to visually-represent organic molecules using smaller images, organic chemists have symbolized these substances using condensed structural notation, which eliminates specific structural components from a provided expanded structure or VSEPR picture and, instead, uses a "formula-style" format to indicate the number of hydrogens that are bonded to a particular non-metal. A second, more minimalistic, drawing convention, which is known as bond-line notation, will be discussed in the following paragraphs.

Images that are symbolized using **bond-line notation**, which uses "zig-zag" lines to represent the bonds that exist between consecutive carbon atoms, are generated by eliminating specific structural components from a provided expanded, VSEPR, or condensed picture. Therefore, bond-line structures are substantially smaller in scale, compared to the structures from which they are derived. In particular,

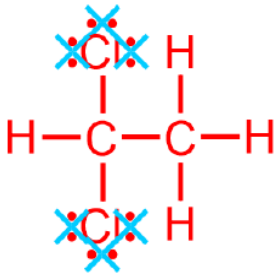
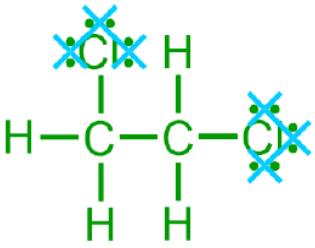
- all lone pairs,
- all non-metal/hydrogen bonds,
- all elemental symbols that represent carbon, C, and
- any hydrogen, H, elemental symbols that are *associated with carbon atoms*

should be removed when generating a bond-line structure from an image that is drawn using a more detailed notation. All remaining single bonds should be represented using "zig-zag" lines that are analogous to those that are used in VSEPR notation. This "zig-zag" pattern can be initiated using either an upward or a downward angle, because, as stated previously, the second atom in any organic structure can be bonded to any "side" of the first elemental symbol that is written. Any *double* or *triple* bonds that are present in a molecule should be symbolized by writing an extra "floating" line in the corresponding position in the "zig-zag" pattern that has been drawn. Furthermore, any hydrogen atoms that are *bonded to heteroatoms* should be *retained* and represented using the condensed "JH_Q" format that was introduced in the previous section of this chapter. Recall that the generic placeholder letter "J" should be replaced with the elemental symbol of a non-metal and that the "Q" subscript corresponds to the number of hydrogens that are bonded to that atom. If only a single hydrogen is associated with a particular atom, no subscript should be written, since values of "1" are usually implicitly-understood in chemistry.

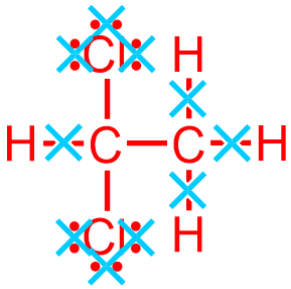
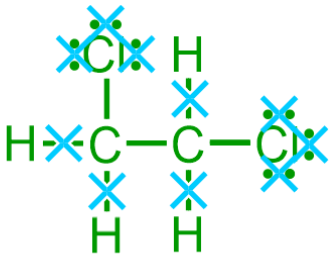
For example, represent each of the following organic molecular structures using bond-line notation.

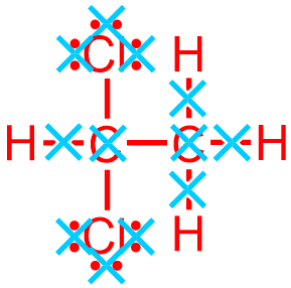
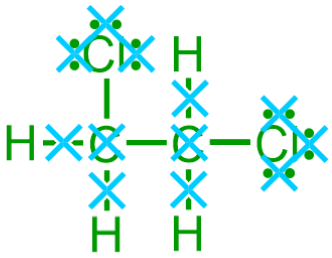
A bond-line structure is generated by eliminating specific structural components from a provided expanded, VSEPR, or condensed picture. In particular, when generating a bond-line structure from an image that is represented in a more detailed notation, all lone pairs,

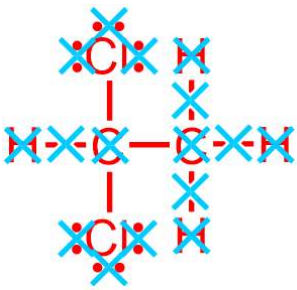
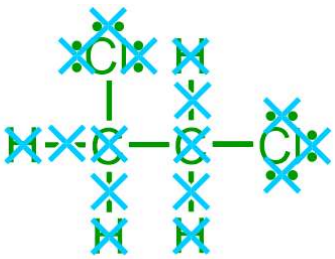
all non-metal/hydrogen bonds,

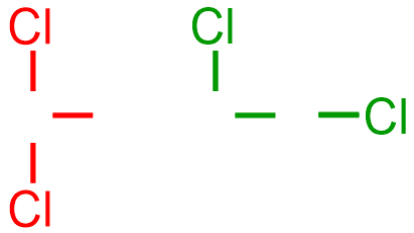
all elemental symbols that represent carbon, C,

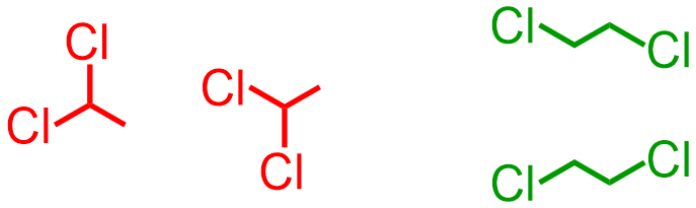
and any hydrogen, H, elemental symbols that are *associated with carbon atoms*

are removed, as indicated by the light blue "X" symbols in the images that are shown above. After eliminating all of these structural characteristics from the given molecule, the following elemental symbols and bonds remain.



In a bond-line structure, these remaining single bonds are represented using "zig-zag" lines that are analogous to those that are used in VSEPR notation. This "zig-zag" pattern can be initiated using either an upward or a downward angle, because, as stated previously, the second atom in any organic structure can be bonded to any "side" of the first elemental symbol that is written. Therefore, both red structures that are shown below are equivalent to one another, as are both green images. These pictures, which are substantially smaller in scale, relative to the expanded structures from which they were derived, are both chemically-correct bond-line representations of the given images.



Although bond-line structures are significantly more challenging to interpret, relative to expanded, VSEPR, and condensed representations, nearly all of the compositional characteristics of a molecule can still be determined by analyzing a structure that is symbolized using bond-line notation. The types and quantities of heteroatoms that are present in a molecule can be determined by counting the number of times that each elemental symbol is written in a molecular image. In bond-line notation, a carbon atom is understood to be located at every point at which two or more bonds meet and on the end of every line that is not explicitly-associated with a heteroatom. Furthermore, each carbon atom is assumed to be bonded to enough hydrogens to achieve its preferred four-bond configuration. The total number of bonds and lone pairs that are present in a molecule, as well as the connectivity of each atom, bond, and lone pair, can be inferred by applying an understanding of standard non-metal bonding configurations. Finally, the types of bonds that are found in a molecule can be determined by counting the number of lines that are drawn between any two atoms in the corresponding bond-line image. However, the bond-line images that are drawn above are two-dimensional drawing conventions and, therefore, do not correctly depict the spatial orientations of organic molecules or their constituent atoms.

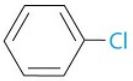
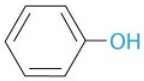
2.8: Organic Structural Representations- Bond-Line Notation is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

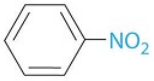
2.9: Functional Groups and Classes of Organic Compounds

Learning Objectives

- To know the major classes of organic compounds and identify important functional groups.

You were previously introduced to several structural units that chemists use to classify organic compounds and predict their reactivities. These functional groups, which determine the chemical reactivity of a molecule under a given set of conditions, can consist of a single atom (such as Cl) or a group of atoms (such as CO_2H). The major families of organic compounds are characterized by their functional groups. Figure 2.9.1 summarizes five families introduced in earlier chapters, gives examples of compounds that contain each functional group, and lists the suffix or prefix used in the systematic nomenclature of compounds that contain each functional group.

Class	General Formula	Example	Common Name (Systematic Name)	Common Suffix/Prefix (Systematic)
Hydrocarbons				
Alkanes	RH	CH_3CH_3	ethane	-ane
Alkenes	RR′C═CR″R‴	$H_2C{=}CH_2$	ethylene (ethene)	-ene
Alkynes	RC≡CR′	HC≡CH	acetylene (ethyne)	(-yne)
Arenes	ArH[a]		benzene	-ene
Halogen-Containing Compounds				
Alkyl halides	RX	CH_3CH_2Cl	ethyl chloride (chloroethane)	halide (halo-)
Aryl halides	ArX[a]		chlorobenzene	halo-
Oxygen-Containing Compounds				
Alcohols	ROH[a]	CH_3CH_2OH	ethyl alcohol (ethanol)	-ol
Phenols	ArOH[b]		phenol	-ol
Ethers	ROR′	$H_3CH_2COCH_2CH_3$	diethyl ether	ether
Aldehydes	RCHO		acetaldehyde (ethanal)	-aldehyde (-al)
Ketones	RR′C═O		acetone (2-propanone)	-one
Carboxylic acids	RCO_2H		acetic acid (ethanoic acid)	-ic acid (-oic acid)
Carboxylic Acid Derivatives				
			methyl acetate	-ate

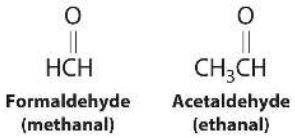
Esters	RCO_2R'	CH_3COCH_3	(methyl ethanoate)	(-oate)
Amides	RCONHR′	CH_3CNHCH_3	*N*-methylacetamide	-amide
Nitrogen-Containing Compounds				
Amines	RNH_2, RNHR′, RNR′R″	$CH_3CH_2NH_2$	ethylamine	-amine
Nitriles	$RC{\equiv}N$	$H_3CC{\equiv}N$	acetonitrile	-nitrile
Nitro compounds	$ArNO_2$[a]		nitrobenzene	nitro-

[a]R indicates an alkyl group [b]Ar indicates an *aryl* group.

Figure 2.9.1: Major Classes of Organic Compounds

The first family listed in Figure 2.9.1 is the hydrocarbons. These include alkanes, with the general molecular formula C_nH_{2n+2} where n is an integer; alkenes, represented by C_nH_{2n}; alkynes, represented by C_nH_{2n-2}; and arenes. Halogen-substituted alkanes, alkenes, and arenes form a second major family of organic compounds, which include the alkyl halides and the aryl halides. Oxygen-containing organic compounds, a third family, may be divided into two main types: those that contain at least one C–O bond, which include alcohols, phenols (derivatives of benzene), and ethers, and those that contain a carbonyl group (C=O), which include aldehydes, ketones, and carboxylic acids. Carboxylic acid derivatives, the fourth family listed, are compounds in which the OH of the $–CO_2H$ functional group is replaced by either an alkoxy (–OR) group, producing an ester, or by an amido (–NRR′, where R and R′ can be H and/or alkyl groups), forming an amide. Nitrogen-containing organic compounds, the fifth family, include amines; nitriles, which have a C≡N bond; and nitro compounds, which contain the $–NO_2$ group.

The systematic nomenclature of organic compounds indicates the positions of substituents using the lowest numbers possible to identify their locations in the carbon chain of the parent compound. If two compounds have the same systematic name, then they are the same compound. Although systematic names are preferred because they are unambiguous, many organic compounds are known by their common names rather than their systematic names. Common nomenclature uses the prefix form—for a compound that contains no carbons other than those in the functional group, and acet—for those that have one carbon atom in addition [two in the case of acetone, $(CH_3)_2C{=}O$]. Thus methanal and ethanal, respectively, are the systematic names for formaldehyde and acetaldehyde.



Formaldehyde (methanal) **Acetaldehyde (ethanal)**

Recall that in the systematic nomenclature of aromatic compounds, the positions of groups attached to the aromatic ring are indicated by numbers, starting with 1 and proceeding around the ring in the direction that produces the lowest possible numbers. For example, the position of the first CH_3 group in dimethyl benzene is indicated with a 1, but the second CH_3 group, which can be placed in any one of three positions, produces 1,2-dimethylbenzene, 1,3-dimethylbenzene, or 1,4-dimethylbenzene (Figure 2.9.2). In common nomenclature, in contrast, the prefixes ortho-, meta-, and para- are used to describe the relative positions of groups attached to an aromatic ring. If the CH_3 groups in dimethylbenzene, whose common name is xylene, are adjacent to each other, the compound is commonly called ortho-xylene, abbreviated o-xylene. If they are across from each other on the ring, the compound is commonly called para-xylene or p-xylene. When the arrangement is intermediate between those of ortho- and para- compounds, the name is meta-xylene or m-xylene.

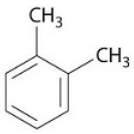
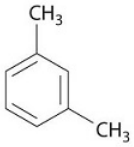
Prefix	Positions of Methyl Groups	Example	Common Name (Systematic Name)
ortho-	1,2		*o*-xylene (1,2-dimethylbenzene)
meta-	1,3		*m*-xylene (1,3-dimethylbenzene)
para-	1,4		*p*-xylene (1,4-dimethylbenzene)

Figure 2.9.2: Common Nomenclature for Aromatic Ring Substitutions

We begin our discussion of the structure and reactivity of organic compounds by exploring structural variations in the simple saturated hydrocarbons known as alkanes. These compounds serve as the scaffolding to which the various functional groups are most often attached.

Summary

Functional groups determine the chemical reactivity of an organic molecule. Functional groups are structural units that determine the chemical reactivity of a molecule under a given set of conditions. Organic compounds are classified into several major categories based on the functional groups they contain. In the systematic names of organic compounds, numbers indicate the positions of functional groups in the basic hydrocarbon framework. Many organic compounds also have common names, which use the prefix form—for a compound that contains no carbons other than those in the functional group and acet—for those that have one additional carbon atom.

2.9: Functional Groups and Classes of Organic Compounds is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

2.10: Molecular Structure and Polarity

Learning Objectives

- Predict the structures of small molecules using valence shell electron pair repulsion (VSEPR) theory
- Explain the concepts of polar covalent bonds and molecular polarity
- Assess the polarity of a molecule based on its bonding and structure

Thus far, we have used two-dimensional Lewis structures to represent molecules. However, molecular structure is actually three-dimensional, and it is important to be able to describe molecular bonds in terms of their distances, angles, and relative arrangements in space (Figure 2.10.1). A bond angle is the angle between any two bonds that include a common atom, usually measured in degrees. A bond distance (or bond length) is the distance between the nuclei of two bonded atoms along the straight line joining the nuclei. Bond distances are measured in Ångstroms (1 Å = 10^{-10} m) or picometers (1 pm = 10^{-12} m, 100 pm = 1 Å).

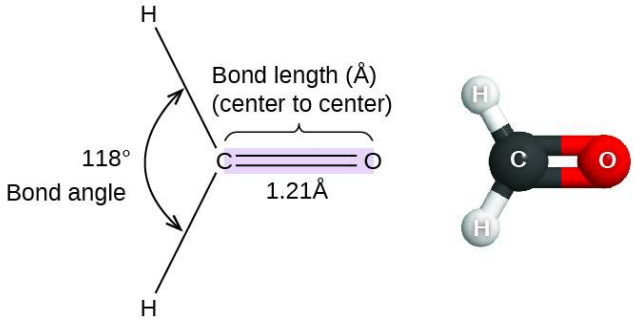


Figure 2.10.1: Bond distances (lengths) and angles are shown for the formaldehyde molecule, H_2CO.

A pair of images are shown. The left image shows a carbon atom with three atoms bonded in a triangular arrangement around it. There are two hydrogen atoms bonded on the left side of the carbon and the angle between them is labeled, “118 degrees” and, “Bond angle.” The carbon is also double bonded to an oxygen atom. The double bond is shaded and there is a bracket which labels the bond, “Bond length (angstrom), (center to center),” and, “1.21 angstrom.” The right image shows a ball-and-stick model of the same elements. The hydrogen atoms are white, the carbon atom is black, and the oxygen atom is red."

VSEPR Theory

Valence shell electron-pair repulsion theory (VSEPR theory) enables us to predict the molecular structure, including approximate bond angles around a central atom, of a molecule from an examination of the number of bonds and lone electron pairs in its Lewis structure. The VSEPR model assumes that electron pairs in the valence shell of a central atom will adopt an arrangement that minimizes repulsions between these electron pairs by maximizing the distance between them. The electrons in the valence shell of a central atom form either bonding pairs of electrons, located primarily between bonded atoms, or lone pairs. The electrostatic repulsion of these electrons is reduced when the various regions of high electron density assume positions as far from each other as possible.

VSEPR theory predicts the arrangement of electron pairs around each central atom and, usually, the correct arrangement of atoms in a molecule. We should understand, however, that the theory only considers electron-pair repulsions. Other interactions, such as nuclear-nuclear repulsions and nuclear-electron attractions, are also involved in the final arrangement that atoms adopt in a particular molecular structure.

As a simple example of VSEPR theory, let us predict the structure of a gaseous BeF_2 molecule. The Lewis structure of BeF_2 (Figure 2.10.2) shows only two electron pairs around the central beryllium atom. With two bonds and no lone pairs of electrons on the central atom, the bonds are as far apart as possible, and the electrostatic repulsion between these regions of high electron density is reduced to a minimum when they are on opposite sides of the central atom. The bond angle is 180° (Figure 2.10.2).

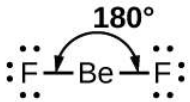


Figure 2.10.2: The BeF_2 molecule adopts a linear structure in which the two bonds are as far apart as possible, on opposite sides of the Be atom.

A Lewis structure is shown. A fluorine atom with three lone pairs of electrons is single bonded to a beryllium atom which is single bonded to a fluorine atom with three lone pairs of electrons. The angle of the bonds between the two fluorine atoms and the beryllium atom is labeled, “180 degrees.”

Figure 2.10.3 illustrates this and other electron-pair geometries that minimize the repulsions among regions of high electron density (bonds and/or lone pairs). Two regions of electron density around a central atom in a molecule form a linear geometry; three regions form a trigonal planar geometry; four regions form a tetrahedral geometry; five regions form a trigonal bipyramidal geometry; and six regions form an octahedral geometry.

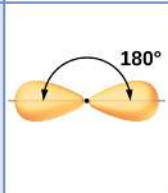
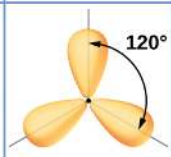
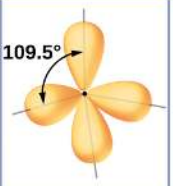
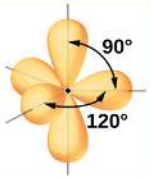
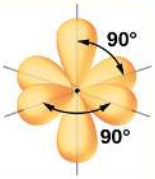
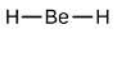
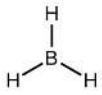
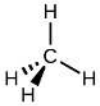
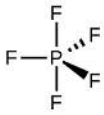
Number of regions	Two regions of high electron density (bonds and/or unshared pairs)	Three regions of high electron density (bonds and/or unshared pairs)	Four regions of high electron density (bonds and/or unshared pairs)	Five regions of high electron density (bonds and/or unshared pairs)	Six regions of high electron density (bonds and/or unshared pairs)
Spatial arrangement					
Line-dash-wedge notation					
Electron pair geometry	Linear; 180° angle	Trigonal planar; all angles 120°	Tetrahedral; all angles 109.5°	Trigonal bipyramidal; angles of 90° or 120° An attached atom may be equatorial (in the plane of the triangle) or axial (above or below the plane of the triangle).	Octahedral; all angles 90° or 180°

Figure 2.10.3: The basic electron-pair geometries predicted by VSEPR theory maximize the space around any region of electron density (bonds or lone pairs).

A table with four rows and six columns is shown. The header column contains the phrases, “Number of regions,” “Spatial arrangement,” “Wedge/dash Notation,” and “Electron pair Geometry.” The first row reads: “Two regions of high electron density (bonds and/or unshared pairs)”, “Three regions of high electron density (bonds and/or unshared pairs),” “Four regions of high electron density (bonds and/or unshared pairs),” “Five regions of high electron density (bonds and/or unshared pairs),” and “Six regions of high electron density (bonds and/or unshared pairs).” The second row shows diagrams of orbitals. The first image shows two oval-shaped orbs with an arrow indicating an angle of 180 degrees. The second image shows three oval-shaped orbs with an arrow indicating an angle of 120 degrees. The third image shows four oval-shaped orbs with an arrow indicating an angle of 109.5 degrees. The fourth image shows five oval-shaped orbs with an arrow indicating an angle of 90 and 120 degrees. The fifth image shows six oval-shaped orbs with an arrow indicating an angle of 90 degrees. The third row contains Lewis structures. The first structure shows a beryllium atom single bonded to two hydrogen atoms. The second structure shows a boron atom single bonded to three hydrogen atoms. The third structure shows a carbon atom single bonded to four hydrogen atoms. The fourth structure shows a phosphorus atom single bonded to five fluorine atoms. The fifth structure shows a sulfur atom single bonded to six fluorine atoms. The fourth row contains the phrases “Linear; 180 degree angle,” Trigonal Planar; all angles 120 degrees,” “Tetrahedral; all angles 109.5 degrees,” “Trigonal bipyramidal; angles of 90 degrees and 120 degrees. An attached atom may be equatorial, (in the plane of the triangle), or axial, (above the plane of the triangle),” and “Octahedral; 90 degrees or 180 degrees.”

Electron-pair Geometry versus Molecular Structure

It is important to note that electron-pair geometry around a central atom is *not* the same thing as its molecular structure. The electron-pair geometries shown in Figure 2.10.3 describe all regions where electrons are located, bonds as well as lone pairs. Molecular structure describes the location of the *atoms*, not the electrons.

We differentiate between these two situations by naming the geometry that includes *all* electron pairs the electron-pair geometry. The structure that includes only the placement of the atoms in the molecule is called the molecular structure. The electron-pair geometries will be the same as the molecular structures when there are no lone electron pairs around the central atom, but they will be different when there are lone pairs present on the central atom.

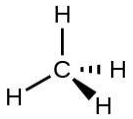


Figure 2.10.4: The molecular structure of the methane molecule, CH_4, is shown with a tetrahedral arrangement of the hydrogen atoms. VSEPR structures like this one are often drawn using the wedge and dash notation, in which solid lines represent bonds in the plane of the page, solid wedges represent bonds coming up out of the plane, and dashed lines represent bonds going down into the plane.

A Lewis structure shows a carbon atom single bonded to four hydrogen atoms. This structure uses wedges and dashes to give it a three dimensional appearance.

For example, the methane molecule, CH_4, which is the major component of natural gas, has four bonding pairs of electrons around the central carbon atom; the electron-pair geometry is tetrahedral, as is the molecular structure (Figure 2.10.4). On the other hand, the ammonia molecule, NH_3, also has four electron pairs associated with the nitrogen atom, and thus has a tetrahedral electron-pair geometry. One of these regions, however, is a lone pair, which is not included in the molecular structure, and this lone pair influences the shape of the molecule (Figure 2.10.5).

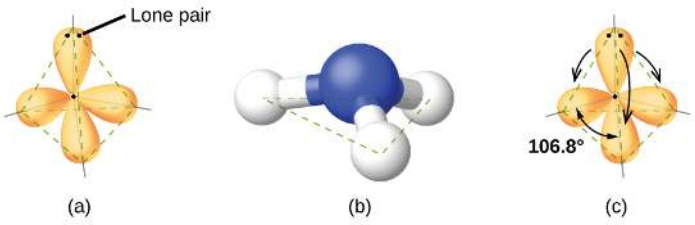


Figure 2.10.5: (a) The electron-pair geometry for the ammonia molecule is tetrahedral with one lone pair and three single bonds. (b) The trigonal pyramidal molecular structure is determined from the electron-pair geometry. (c) The actual bond angles deviate slightly from the idealized angles because the lone pair takes up a larger region of space than do the single bonds, causing the HNH angle to be slightly smaller than 109.5°.

Three images are shown and labeled, “a,” “b,” and “c.” Image a shows a nitrogen atom single bonded to three hydrogen atoms. There are four oval-shaped orbs that surround each hydrogen and one facing away from the rest of the molecule. These orbs are located in a tetrahedral arrangement. Image b shows a ball-and-stick model of the nitrogen single bonded to the three hydrogen atoms. Image c is the same as image a, but there are four curved, double headed arrows that circle the molecule and are labeled, “106.8 degrees.”

Small distortions from the ideal angles in Figure 2.10.5 can result from differences in repulsion between various regions of electron density. VSEPR theory predicts these distortions by establishing an order of repulsions and an order of the amount of space occupied by different kinds of electron pairs. The order of electron-pair repulsions from greatest to least repulsion is:

lone pair-lone pair > lone pair-bonding pair > bonding pair-bonding pair

This order of repulsions determines the amount of space occupied by different regions of electrons. A lone pair of electrons occupies a larger region of space than the electrons in a triple bond; in turn, electrons in a triple bond occupy more space than those in a double bond, and so on. The order of sizes from largest to smallest is:

lone pair > triple bond > double bond > single bond

Consider formaldehyde, H_2CO, which is used as a preservative for biological and anatomical specimens. This molecule has regions of high electron density that consist of two single bonds and one double bond. The basic geometry is trigonal planar with 120° bond angles, but we see that the double bond causes slightly larger angles (121°), and the angle between the single bonds is slightly smaller (118°).

In the ammonia molecule, the three hydrogen atoms attached to the central nitrogen are not arranged in a flat, trigonal planar molecular structure, but rather in a three-dimensional trigonal pyramid (Figure 2.10.6) with the nitrogen atom at the apex and the three hydrogen atoms forming the base. The ideal bond angles in a trigonal pyramid are based on the tetrahedral electron pair geometry. Again, there are slight deviations from the ideal because lone pairs occupy larger regions of space than do bonding electrons. The H–N–H bond angles in NH_3 are slightly smaller than the 109.5° angle in a regular tetrahedron (Figure 2.10.6) because the lone pair-bonding pair repulsion is greater than the bonding pair-bonding pair repulsion. The ideal molecular structures are predicted based on the electron-pair geometries for various combinations of lone pairs and bonding pairs.

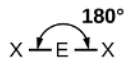
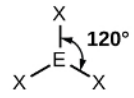
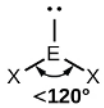
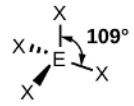
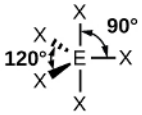
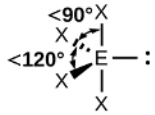
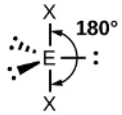
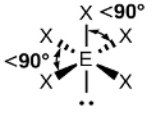
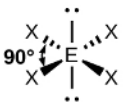
Number of electron pairs	Electron pair geometries: 0 lone pair	1 lone pair	2 lone pairs	3 lone pairs	4 lone pairs
2	 Linear				
3	 Trigonal planar	 Bent or angular			
4	 Tetrahedral	 Trigonal pyramid	 Bent or angular		
5	 Trigonal bipyramid	 Sawhorse or seesaw	 T-shape	 Linear	
6	 Octahedral	 Square pyramid	 Square planar	 T-shape	 Linear

Figure 2.10.6: The molecular structures are identical to the electron-pair geometries when there are no lone pairs present (first column). For a particular number of electron pairs (row), the molecular structures for one or more lone pairs are determined based on modifications of the corresponding electron-pair geometry.

A table is shown that is comprised of six rows and six columns. The header row reads: “Number of Electron Pairs,” “Electron pair geometries; 0 lone pair,” “1 lone pair,” “2 lone pairs,” “3 lone pairs,” and “4 lone pairs.” The first column contains the numbers 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6. The first space in the second column contains a structure in which the letter E is single bonded to the letter X on each side. The angle of the bonds is labeled with a curved, double headed arrow and the value, “180 degrees.” The structure is labeled, “Linear.” The second space in the second column contains a structure in which the letter E is single bonded to the letter X on three sides. The angle between the bonds is labeled with a curved, double headed arrow and the value, “120 degrees.” The structure is labeled, “Trigonal planar.” The third space in the second column contains a structure in which the letter E is single bonded to the letter X four times. The angle between the bonds is labeled with a curved, double headed arrow and the value, “109 degrees.” The structure is labeled, “Tetrahedral.” The fourth space in the second column contains a structure in which the letter E is single bonded to the letter X on five sides. The angle between the bonds is labeled with a curved, double headed arrow and the values “90 and 120 degrees.” The structure is labeled, “Trigonal bipyramid.” The fifth space in the second column contains a structure in which the letter E is single bonded to the letter X on six sides. The angle between the bonds is labeled with a curved, double headed arrow and the value, “90 degrees.” The structure is labeled, “Octahedral.” The first space in the third column is empty while the second contains a structure in which the letter E is single bonded to the letter X on each side and has a lone pair of electrons. The angle between the bonds is labeled with a curved, double headed arrow and the value, “less than 120 degrees.” The structure is labeled, “Bent or angular.” The third space in the third column contains a structure in which the letter E is single bonded to the letter X three times and to a lone pair of electrons. It is labeled with a curved, double headed arrow and the value, “less than 109 degrees.” The structure is labeled, “Trigonal pyramid.” The fourth space in the third column contains a structure in which the letter E is single bonded to the letter X on four sides and has a lone pair of electrons. The bond angle is labeled with a curved, double headed arrow and the values, “less than 90 and less than 120 degrees.” The structure is labeled, “Sawhorse or seesaw.” The fifth space in the third column contains a structure in which the letter E is single bonded to the letter X on five sides and has a lone pair of electrons. The bond angle is labeled with a curved, double headed arrow and the value, “less than 90 degrees.” The structure is labeled, “Square pyramidal.” The first and second spaces in the fourth column are empty while the third contains a structure in which the letter E is single bonded to the letter X on each side and has two lone pairs of electrons. The bond angle is labeled with a curved, double headed arrow and the value, “less than less than 109 degrees.” The structure is labeled, “Bent or angular.” The fourth space in the fourth column contains a structure in which the letter E is single bonded to the letter X three times and to two lone pairs of electrons. The bond angle is labeled with a curved, double headed arrow and the value, “less than 90 degrees.” The structure is labeled, “T - shape.” The fifth space in the fourth column contains a structure in which the letter E is single bonded to the letter X on four sides and has two lone pairs of electrons. The bond angle is labeled with a curved, double headed arrow and the value “90 degrees.” The structure is labeled, “Square planar.” The first, second and third spaces in the fifth column are empty while the fourth contains a structure in which the letter E is single bonded to the letter X on each side and has three lone pairs of electrons. The

bond angle is labeled with a curved, double headed arrow and the value, “180 degrees.” The structure is labeled, “Linear.” The fifth space in the fifth column contains a structure in which the letter E is single bonded to the letter X three times and to three lone pairs of electrons. The bond angle is labeled with a curved, double headed arrow and the value, “less than 90 degrees.” The structure is labeled, “T - shape.” The first, second, third, and fourth spaces in the sixth column are empty while the fifth contains a structure in which the letter E is single bonded to the letter X on each side and has four lone pairs of electrons. The bond angle is labeled with a curved, double headed arrow and the value “180 degrees.” The structure is labeled, “Linear.” All the structures use wedges and dashes to give them three dimensional appearances.

According to VSEPR theory, the terminal atom locations (Xs in Figure 2.10.7) are equivalent within the linear, trigonal planar, and tetrahedral electron-pair geometries (the first three rows of the table). It does not matter which X is replaced with a lone pair because the molecules can be rotated to convert positions. For trigonal bipyramidal electron-pair geometries, however, there are two distinct X positions (Figure 2.10.7a): an axial position (if we hold a model of a trigonal bipyramid by the two axial positions, we have an axis around which we can rotate the model) and an equatorial position (three positions form an equator around the middle of the molecule). The axial position is surrounded by bond angles of 90°, whereas the equatorial position has more space available because of the 120° bond angles. In a trigonal bipyramidal electron-pair geometry, lone pairs always occupy equatorial positions because these more spacious positions can more easily accommodate the larger lone pairs.

Theoretically, we can come up with three possible arrangements for the three bonds and two lone pairs for the ClF_3 molecule (Figure 2.10.7). The stable structure is the one that puts the lone pairs in equatorial locations, giving a T-shaped molecular structure.

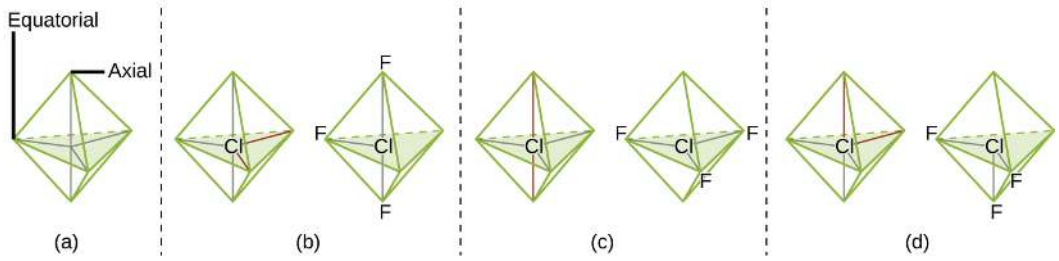


Figure 2.10.7: (a) In a trigonal bipyramid, the two axial positions are located directly across from one another, whereas the three equatorial positions are located in a triangular arrangement. (b–d) The two lone pairs (red lines) in ClF_3 have several possible arrangements, but the T-shaped molecular structure (b) is the one actually observed, consistent with the larger lone pairs both occupying equatorial positions.

Four sets of images are shown and labeled, “a,” “b,” “c,” and “d.” Each image is separated by a dashed vertical line. Image a shows a six-faced, bi-pyramidal structure where the central vertical axis is labeled, “Axial,” and the horizontal plane is labeled, “Equatorial.” Image b shows a pair of diagrams in the same shape as image a, but in these diagrams, the left has a chlorine atom in the center while the right has a chlorine atom in the center, two fluorine atoms on the upper and lower ends, and one fluorine in the left horizontal position. Image c shows a pair of diagrams in the same shape as image a, but in these diagrams, the left has a chlorine atom in the center while the right has a chlorine atom in the center and three fluorine atoms in each horizontal position. Image d shows a pair of diagrams in the same shape as image a, but in these diagrams, the left has a chlorine atom in the center while the right has a chlorine atom in the center, two fluorine atoms in the horizontal positions, and one in the axial bottom position.

When a central atom has two lone electron pairs and four bonding regions, we have an octahedral electron-pair geometry. The two lone pairs are on opposite sides of the octahedron (180° apart), giving a square planar molecular structure that minimizes lone pair-lone pair repulsions.

Predicting Electron Pair Geometry and Molecular Structure

The following procedure uses VSEPR theory to determine the electron pair geometries and the molecular structures:

1. Write the Lewis structure of the molecule or polyatomic ion.
2. Count the number of regions of electron density (lone pairs and bonds) around the central atom. A single, double, or triple bond counts as one region of electron density.
3. Identify the electron-pair geometry based on the number of regions of electron density: linear, trigonal planar, tetrahedral, trigonal bipyramidal, or octahedral (Figure 2.10.7, first column).
4. Use the number of lone pairs to determine the molecular structure (Figure 2.10.7). If more than one arrangement of lone pairs and chemical bonds is possible, choose the one that will minimize repulsions, remembering that lone pairs occupy more space than multiple bonds, which occupy more space than single bonds. In trigonal bipyramidal arrangements,

repulsion is minimized when every lone pair is in an equatorial position. In an octahedral arrangement with two lone pairs, repulsion is minimized when the lone pairs are on opposite sides of the central atom.

The following examples illustrate the use of VSEPR theory to predict the molecular structure of molecules or ions that have no lone pairs of electrons. In this case, the molecular structure is identical to the electron pair geometry.

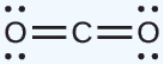
Example 2.10.1: Predicting Electron-pair Geometry and Molecular Structure

Predict the electron-pair geometry and molecular structure for each of the following:

a. carbon dioxide, CO_2, a molecule produced by the combustion of fossil fuels
b. boron trichloride, BCl_3, an important industrial chemical

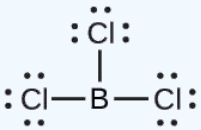
Solution

(a) We write the Lewis structure of CO_2 as:

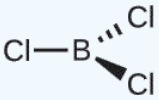


This shows us two regions of high electron density around the carbon atom—each double bond counts as one region, and there are no lone pairs on the carbon atom. Using VSEPR theory, we predict that the two regions of electron density arrange themselves on opposite sides of the central atom with a bond angle of 180°. The electron-pair geometry and molecular structure are identical, and CO_2 molecules are linear.

(b) We write the Lewis structure of BCl_3 as:



Thus we see that BCl_3 contains three bonds, and there are no lone pairs of electrons on boron. The arrangement of three regions of high electron density gives a trigonal planar electron-pair geometry. The B–Cl bonds lie in a plane with 120° angles between them. BCl_3 also has a trigonal planar molecular structure.



The electron-pair geometry and molecular structure of BCl_3 are both trigonal planar. Note that the VSEPR geometry indicates the correct bond angles (120°), unlike the Lewis structure shown above.

Exercise 2.10.1

Carbonate, CO_3^{2-}, is a common polyatomic ion found in various materials from eggshells to antacids. What are the electron-pair geometry and molecular structure of this polyatomic ion?

Answer

The electron-pair geometry is trigonal planar and the molecular structure is trigonal planar. Due to resonance, all three C–O bonds are identical. Whether they are single, double, or an average of the two, each bond counts as one region of electron density.

Example 2.10.2: Predicting Electron-pair Geometry and Molecular Structure

Two of the top 50 chemicals produced in the United States, ammonium nitrate and ammonium sulfate, both used as fertilizers, contain the ammonium ion. Predict the electron-pair geometry and molecular structure of the NH_4^+ cation.

Solution

We write the Lewis structure of NH_4^+ as:

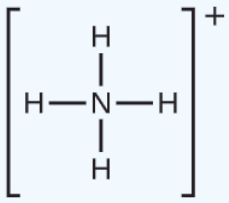


Figure 2.10.7).

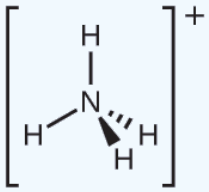


Figure 2.10.8: *The ammonium ion displays a tetrahedral electron-pair geometry as well as a tetrahedral molecular structure.*

Exercise 2.10.2

Identify a molecule with trigonal bipyramidal molecular structure.

Answer

Any molecule with five electron pairs around the central atoms including no lone pairs will be trigonal bipyramidal. PF_5 is a common example

The next several examples illustrate the effect of lone pairs of electrons on molecular structure.

Example 2.10.3: Lone Pairs on the Central Atom

Predict the electron-pair geometry and molecular structure of a water molecule.

Solution

The Lewis structure of H_2O indicates that there are four regions of high electron density around the oxygen atom: two lone pairs and two chemical bonds:

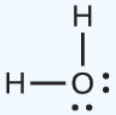


Figure 2.10.9. Thus, the electron-pair geometry is tetrahedral and the molecular structure is bent with an angle slightly less than 109.5°. In fact, the bond angle is 104.5°.

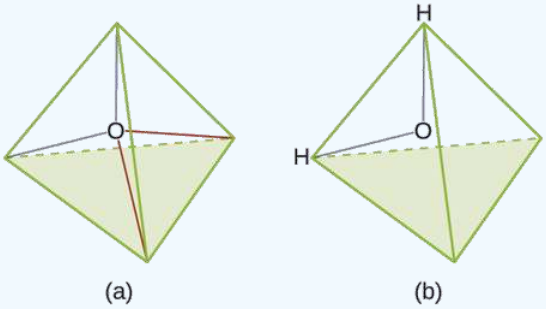


Figure 2.10.9: (a) H_2O has four regions of electron density around the central atom, so it has a tetrahedral electron-pair geometry. (b) Two of the electron regions are lone pairs, so the molecular structure is bent.

Exercise 2.10.3

The hydronium ion, H_3O^+, forms when acids are dissolved in water. Predict the electron-pair geometry and molecular structure of this cation.

Answer

electron pair geometry: tetrahedral; molecular structure: trigonal pyramidal

Example 2.10.4: SF_4 Sulfur tetrafluoride,

Predicting Electron-pair Geometry and Molecular Structure: SF_4, is extremely valuable for the preparation of fluorine-containing compounds used as herbicides (i.e., SF_4 is used as a fluorinating agent). Predict the electron-pair geometry and molecular structure of a SF_4 molecule.

Solution

The Lewis structure of SF_4 indicates five regions of electron density around the sulfur atom: one lone pair and four bonding pairs:

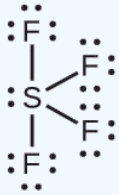


Figure 2.10.10).

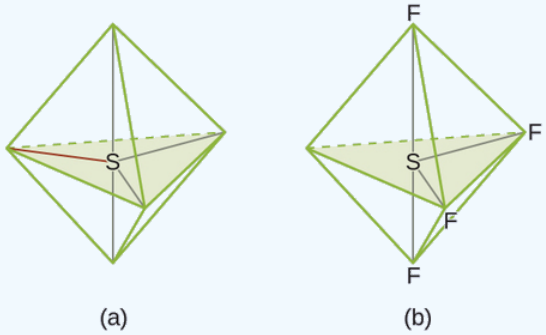


Figure 2.10.10: (a) SF_4 has a trigonal bipyramidal arrangement of the five regions of electron density. (b) One of the regions is a lone pair, which results in a seesaw-shaped molecular structure.

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/321500

Exercise 2.10.4

Predict the electron pair geometry and molecular structure for molecules of XeF_2.

Answer

The electron-pair geometry is trigonal bipyramidal. The molecular structure is linear.

Example 2.10.4: XeF_4

Of all the noble gases, xenon is the most reactive, frequently reacting with elements such as oxygen and fluorine. Predict the electron-pair geometry and molecular structure of the XeF_4 molecule.

Solution

The Lewis structure of XeF_4 indicates six regions of high electron density around the xenon atom: two lone pairs and four bonds:

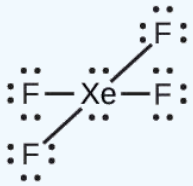


Figure 2.10.11: The five atoms are all in the same plane and have a square planar molecular structure.

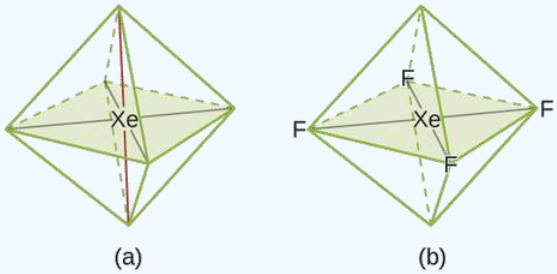


Figure 2.10.11: (a) XeF_4 adopts an octahedral arrangement with two lone pairs (red lines) and four bonds in the electron-pair geometry. (b) The molecular structure is square planar with the lone pairs directly across from one another.

Exercise 2.10.4

In a certain molecule, the central atom has three lone pairs and two bonds. What will the electron pair geometry and molecular structure be?

Answer

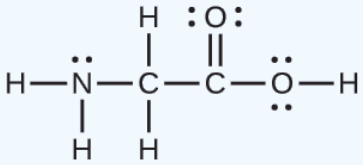
electron pair geometry: trigonal bipyramidal; molecular structure: linear

Molecular Structure for Multicenter Molecules

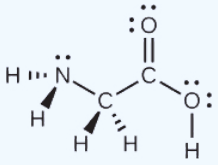
When a molecule or polyatomic ion has only one central atom, the molecular structure completely describes the shape of the molecule. Larger molecules do not have a single central atom, but are connected by a chain of interior atoms that each possess a "local" geometry. The way these local structures are oriented with respect to each other also influences the molecular shape, but such considerations are largely beyond the scope of this introductory discussion. For our purposes, we will only focus on determining the local structures.

Example 2.10.5: Predicting Structure in Multicenter Molecules

The Lewis structure for the simplest amino acid, glycine, $H_2NCH_2CO_2H$, is shown here. Predict the local geometry for the nitrogen atom, the two carbon atoms, and the oxygen atom with a hydrogen atom attached:



Solution



Consider each central atom independently. The electron-pair geometries:

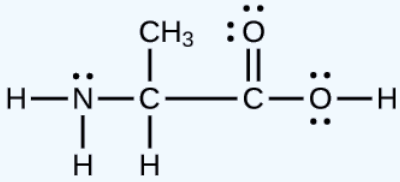
- nitrogen—four regions of electron density; tetrahedral
- carbon ($\underline{C}H_2$)—four regions of electron density; tetrahedral
- carbon ($\underline{C}O_2$)—three regions of electron density; trigonal planar
- oxygen ($\underline{O}H$)—four regions of electron density; tetrahedral

The local structures:

- nitrogen—three bonds, one lone pair; trigonal pyramidal
- carbon ($\underline{C}H_2$)—four bonds, no lone pairs; tetrahedral
- carbon ($\underline{C}O_2$)—three bonds (double bond counts as one bond), no lone pairs; trigonal planar
- oxygen ($\underline{O}H$)—two bonds, two lone pairs; bent (109°)

Exercise 2.10.5

Another amino acid is alanine, which has the Lewis structure shown here. Predict the electron-pair geometry and local structure of the nitrogen atom, the three carbon atoms, and the oxygen atom with hydrogen attached:



Answer

electron-pair geometries: nitrogen—tetrahedral; carbon ($\underline{C}H$)—tetrahedral; carbon ($\underline{C}H_3$)—tetrahedral; carbon ($\underline{C}O_2$)—trigonal planar; oxygen ($\underline{O}H$)—tetrahedral; local structures: nitrogen—trigonal pyramidal; carbon ($\underline{C}H$)—tetrahedral; carbon ($\underline{C}H_3$)—tetrahedral; carbon ($\underline{C}O_2$)—trigonal planar; oxygen ($\underline{O}H$)—bent (109°)

Example 2.10.6: Molecular Simulation

Using this molecular shape simulator allows us to control whether bond angles and/or lone pairs are displayed by checking or unchecking the boxes under “Options” on the right. We can also use the “Name” checkboxes at bottom-left to display or hide the electron pair geometry (called “electron geometry” in the simulator) and/or molecular structure (called “molecular shape” in the simulator).

Build the molecule HCN in the simulator based on the following Lewis structure:

$$H-C\equiv N$$

Click on each bond type or lone pair at right to add that group to the central atom. Once you have the complete molecule, rotate it to examine the predicted molecular structure. What molecular structure is this?

Solution

The molecular structure is linear.

? Exercise 2.10.6

Build a more complex molecule in the simulator. Identify the electron-group geometry, molecular structure, and bond angles. Then try to find a chemical formula that would match the structure you have drawn.

Answer

Answers will vary. For example, an atom with four single bonds, a double bond, and a lone pair has an octahedral electron-group geometry and a square pyramidal molecular structure. $XeOF_4$ is a molecule that adopts this structure.

Molecular Polarity and Dipole Moment

As discussed previously, polar covalent bonds connect two atoms with differing electronegativities, leaving one atom with a partial positive charge (δ+) and the other atom with a partial negative charge (δ–), as the electrons are pulled toward the more electronegative atom. This separation of charge gives rise to a bond dipole moment. The magnitude of a bond dipole moment is represented by the Greek letter mu (μ) and is given by

$$\mu = Qr \tag{2.10.1}$$

where

- Q is the magnitude of the partial charges (determined by the electronegativity difference) and
- r is the distance between the charges:

This bond moment can be represented as a vector, a quantity having both direction and magnitude (Figure 2.10.12). Dipole vectors are shown as arrows pointing along the bond from the less electronegative atom toward the more electronegative atom. A small plus sign is drawn on the less electronegative end to indicate the partially positive end of the bond. The length of the arrow is proportional to the magnitude of the electronegativity difference between the two atoms.

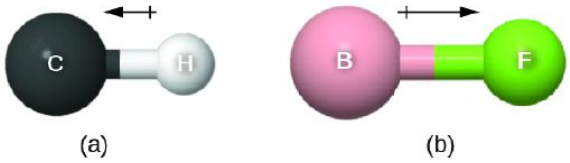


Figure 2.10.12: (a) There is a small difference in electronegativity between C and H, represented as a short vector. (b) The electronegativity difference between B and F is much larger, so the vector representing the bond moment is much longer.

A whole molecule may also have a separation of charge, depending on its molecular structure and the polarity of each of its bonds. If such a charge separation exists, the molecule is said to be a polar molecule (or dipole); otherwise the molecule is said to be nonpolar. The dipole moment measures the extent of net charge separation in the molecule as a whole. We determine the dipole moment by adding the bond moments in three-dimensional space, taking into account the molecular structure.

For diatomic molecules, there is only one bond, so its bond dipole moment determines the molecular polarity. Homonuclear diatomic molecules such as Br_2 and N_2 have no difference in electronegativity, so their dipole moment is zero. For heteronuclear molecules such as CO, there is a small dipole moment. For HF, there is a larger dipole moment because there is a larger difference in electronegativity.

When a molecule contains more than one bond, the geometry must be taken into account. If the bonds in a molecule are arranged such that their bond moments cancel (vector sum equals zero), then the molecule is nonpolar. This is the situation in CO_2 (Figure 2.10.13*A*). Each of the bonds is polar, but the molecule as a whole is nonpolar. From the Lewis structure, and using VSEPR theory, we determine that the CO_2 molecule is linear with polar C=O bonds on opposite sides of the carbon atom. The bond moments cancel because they are pointed in opposite directions. In the case of the water molecule (Figure 2.10.13*B*), the Lewis structure

again shows that there are two bonds to a central atom, and the electronegativity difference again shows that each of these bonds has a nonzero bond moment. In this case, however, the molecular structure is bent because of the lone pairs on O, and the two bond moments do not cancel. Therefore, water does have a net dipole moment and is a polar molecule (dipole).

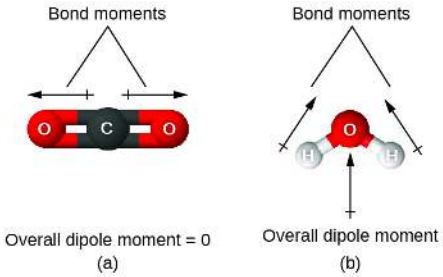
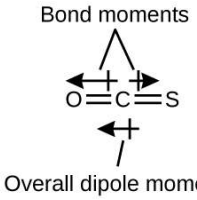


Figure 2.10.13: The overall dipole moment of a molecule depends on the individual bond dipole moments and how they are arranged. (a) Each CO bond has a bond dipole moment, but they point in opposite directions so that the net CO_2 molecule is nonpolar. (b) In contrast, water is polar because the OH bond moments do not cancel out.

The OCS molecule has a structure similar to CO_2, but a sulfur atom has replaced one of the oxygen atoms. To determine if this molecule is polar, we draw the molecular structure. VSEPR theory predicts a linear molecule:

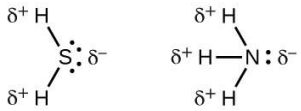


The C–O bond is considerably polar. Although C and S have very similar electronegativity values, S is slightly more electronegative than C, and so the C-S bond is just slightly polar. Because oxygen is more electronegative than sulfur, the oxygen end of the molecule is the negative end.

Chloromethane, CH_3Cl, is another example of a polar molecule. Although the polar C–Cl and C–H bonds are arranged in a tetrahedral geometry, the C–Cl bonds have a larger bond moment than the C–H bond, and the bond moments do not completely cancel each other. All of the dipoles have a upward component in the orientation shown, since carbon is more electronegative than hydrogen and less electronegative than chlorine:



When we examine the highly symmetrical molecules BF_3 (trigonal planar), CH_4 (tetrahedral), PF_5 (trigonal bipyramidal), and SF_6 (octahedral), in which all the polar bonds are identical, the molecules are nonpolar. The bonds in these molecules are arranged such that their dipoles cancel. However, just because a molecule contains identical bonds does not mean that the dipoles will always cancel. Many molecules that have identical bonds and lone pairs on the central atoms have bond dipoles that do not cancel. Examples include H_2S and NH_3. A hydrogen atom is at the positive end and a nitrogen or sulfur atom is at the negative end of the polar bonds in these molecules:



To summarize, to be polar, a molecule must:

1. Contain at least one polar covalent bond.
2. Have a molecular structure such that the sum of the vectors of each bond dipole moment does not cancel.

Properties of Polar Molecules

Polar molecules tend to align when placed in an electric field with the positive end of the molecule oriented toward the negative plate and the negative end toward the positive plate (Figure 2.10.14). We can use an electrically charged object to attract polar

molecules, but nonpolar molecules are not attracted. Also, polar solvents are better at dissolving polar substances, and nonpolar solvents are better at dissolving nonpolar substances.

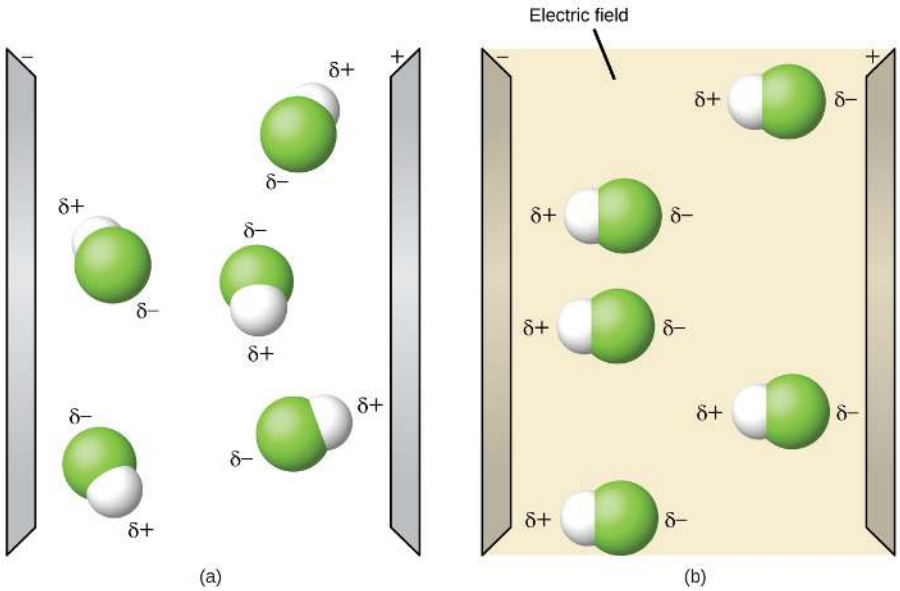


Figure 2.10.14: (a) Molecules are always randomly distributed in the liquid state in the absence of an electric field. (b) When an electric field is applied, polar molecules like HF will align to the dipoles with the field direction.

Example 2.10.7: Polarity Simulations

Open the molecule polarity simulation and select the "Three Atoms" tab at the top. This should display a molecule ABC with three electronegativity adjustors. You can display or hide the bond moments, molecular dipoles, and partial charges at the right. Turning on the Electric Field will show whether the molecule moves when exposed to a field, similar to Figure 2.10.14

Use the electronegativity controls to determine how the molecular dipole will look for the starting bent molecule if:

a. A and C are very electronegative and B is in the middle of the range.
b. A is very electronegative, and B and C are not.

Solution

a. Molecular dipole moment points immediately between A and C.
b. Molecular dipole moment points along the A–B bond, toward A.

Exercise 2.10.7

Determine the partial charges that will give the largest possible bond dipoles.

Answer

The largest bond moments will occur with the largest partial charges. The two solutions above represent how unevenly the electrons are shared in the bond. The bond moments will be maximized when the electronegativity difference is greatest. The controls for A and C should be set to one extreme, and B should be set to the opposite extreme. Although the magnitude of the bond moment will not change based on whether B is the most electronegative or the least, the direction of the bond moment will.

Summary

VSEPR theory predicts the three-dimensional arrangement of atoms in a molecule. It states that valence electrons will assume an electron-pair geometry that minimizes repulsions between areas of high electron density (bonds and/or lone pairs). Molecular structure, which refers only to the placement of atoms in a molecule and not the electrons, is equivalent to electron-pair geometry

only when there are no lone electron pairs around the central atom. A dipole moment measures a separation of charge. For one bond, the bond dipole moment is determined by the difference in electronegativity between the two atoms. For a molecule, the overall dipole moment is determined by both the individual bond moments and how these dipoles are arranged in the molecular structure. Polar molecules (those with an appreciable dipole moment) interact with electric fields, whereas nonpolar molecules do not.

Glossary

axial position
location in a trigonal bipyramidal geometry in which there is another atom at a 180° angle and the equatorial positions are at a 90° angle

bond angle
angle between any two covalent bonds that share a common atom

bond distance
(also, bond length) distance between the nuclei of two bonded atoms

bond dipole moment
separation of charge in a bond that depends on the difference in electronegativity and the bond distance represented by partial charges or a vector

dipole moment
property of a molecule that describes the separation of charge determined by the sum of the individual bond moments based on the molecular structure

electron-pair geometry
arrangement around a central atom of all regions of electron density (bonds, lone pairs, or unpaired electrons)

equatorial position
one of the three positions in a trigonal bipyramidal geometry with 120° angles between them; the axial positions are located at a 90° angle

linear
shape in which two outside groups are placed on opposite sides of a central atom

molecular structure
structure that includes only the placement of the atoms in the molecule

octahedral
shape in which six outside groups are placed around a central atom such that a three-dimensional shape is generated with four groups forming a square and the other two forming the apex of two pyramids, one above and one below the square plane

polar molecule
(also, dipole) molecule with an overall dipole moment

tetrahedral
shape in which four outside groups are placed around a central atom such that a three-dimensional shape is generated with four corners and 109.5° angles between each pair and the central atom

trigonal bipyramidal
shape in which five outside groups are placed around a central atom such that three form a flat triangle with 120° angles between each pair and the central atom, and the other two form the apex of two pyramids, one above and one below the triangular plane

trigonal planar

shape in which three outside groups are placed in a flat triangle around a central atom with 120° angles between each pair and the central atom

valence shell electron-pair repulsion theory (VSEPR)

theory used to predict the bond angles in a molecule based on positioning regions of high electron density as far apart as possible to minimize electrostatic repulsion

vector

quantity having magnitude and direction

This page titled 2.10: Molecular Structure and Polarity is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **7.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

3: States of Matter

3.1: Overview of States of Matter
3.2: Intermolecular forces
3.3: Crystalline and Amorphous Solids
3.4: The Solid State of Matter
3.5: Gaseous Elements and Compounds
3.6: Gas Pressure
3.7: The Ideal Gas Law
3.8: Gas Mixtures
3.9: Kinetic Theory of Gases
3.10: Real Gases
3.11: Unique Properties of Liquids
3.12: Solubility
3.13: Vapor Pressure

3: States of Matter is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

3.1: Overview of States of Matter

Learning Objectives

- Define *phase*.
- Identify the types of interactions between molecules.

A phase is a certain form of matter that includes a specific set of physical properties. That is, the atoms, the molecules, or the ions that make up the phase do so in a consistent manner throughout the phase. Science recognizes three stable phases: the ***solid*** *phase*, in which individual particles can be thought of as in contact and held in place; the ***liquid*** *phase*, in which individual particles are in contact but moving with respect to each other; and the ***gas*** *phase*, in which individual particles are separated from each other by relatively large distances (see Figure 3.1.1). Not all substances will readily exhibit all phases. For example, carbon dioxide does not exhibit a liquid phase unless the pressure is greater than about six times normal atmospheric pressure. Other substances, especially complex organic molecules, may decompose at higher temperatures, rather than becoming a liquid or a gas.

> *For many substances, there are different arrangements the particles can take in the solid phase, depending on temperature and pressure.*

Which phase a substance adopts depends on the pressure and the temperature it experiences. Of these two conditions, temperature variations are more obviously related to the phase of a substance. When it is very cold, H_2O exists in the solid form as ice. When it is warmer, the liquid phase of H_2O is present. At even higher temperatures, H_2O boils and becomes steam.

Pressure changes can also affect the presence of a particular phase (as we indicated for carbon dioxide), but its effects are less obvious most of the time. We will mostly focus on the temperature effects on phases, mentioning pressure effects only when they are important. Most chemical substances follow the same pattern of phases when going from a low temperature to a high temperature: the solid phase, then the liquid phase, and then the gas phase. However, the temperatures at which these phases are present differ for all substances and can be rather extreme. Table 3.1.1 shows the temperature ranges for solid, liquid, and gas phases for three substances. As you can see, there is extreme variability in the temperature ranges.

Table 3.1.1: Temperature Ranges for the Three Phases of Various Substances

Substance	Solid Phase Below	Liquid Phase Above	Gas Phase Above
hydrogen (H_2)	−259°C	−259°C	−253°C
water (H_2O)	0°C	0°C	100°C
sodium chloride (NaCl)	801°C	801°C	1413°C

The *melting point* of a substance is the temperature that separates a solid and a liquid. The *boiling point* of a substance is the temperature that separates a liquid and a gas.

What accounts for this variability? Why do some substances become liquids at very low temperatures, while others require very high temperatures before they become liquids? It all depends on the strength of the **intermolecular forces (IMF)** between the **particles** of substances and the **kinetic energies** (KE) of its molecules. (Although ionic compounds are not composed of discrete molecules, we will still use the term *intermolecular* to include interactions between the ions in such compounds.) Substances that experience **strong intermolecular interactions** require **higher temperatures to become liquids and, finally, gases.** Substances that experience **weak intermolecular interactions** do not need much energy (as measured by temperature) to become liquids and gases and will exhibit these phases at **lower temperatures.**

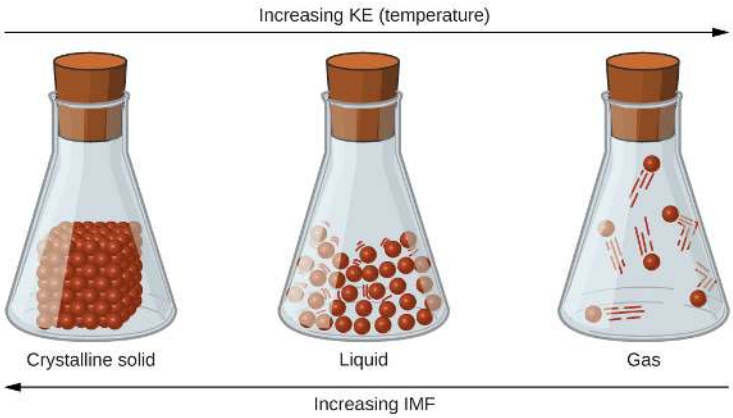


Figure 3.1.1: Transitions between solid, liquid, and gaseous states of a substance occur when conditions of temperature or pressure favor the associated changes in intermolecular forces. (Note: The space between particles in the gas phase is much greater than shown.)

3.1: Overview of States of Matter is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

3.2: Intermolecular forces

Learning Objectives

- To describe intermolecular forces.

The properties of liquids are intermediate between those of gases and solids but are more similar to solids. In contrast to *intra*molecular forces, such as the covalent bonds that hold atoms together in molecules and polyatomic ions, *inter*molecular forces hold molecules together in a liquid or solid. Intermolecular forces are generally much weaker than covalent bonds. For example, it requires 927 kJ to overcome the intramolecular forces and break both O–H bonds in 1 mol of water, but it takes only about 41 kJ to overcome the intermolecular attractions and convert 1 mol of liquid water to water vapor at 100°C. (Despite this seemingly low value, the intermolecular forces in liquid water are among the strongest such forces known!) Given the large difference in the strengths of intra- and intermolecular forces, changes between the solid, liquid, and gaseous states almost invariably occur for molecular substances *without breaking covalent bonds*.

Note the Pattern

The properties of liquids are intermediate between those of gases and solids but are more similar to solids.

Intermolecular forces determine bulk properties such as the melting points of solids and the boiling points of liquids. Liquids boil when the molecules have enough thermal energy to overcome the intermolecular attractive forces that hold them together, thereby forming bubbles of vapor within the liquid. Similarly, solids melt when the molecules acquire enough thermal energy to overcome the intermolecular forces that lock them into place in the solid.

Intermolecular forces are electrostatic in nature; that is, they arise from the interaction between positively and negatively charged species. Like covalent and ionic bonds, intermolecular interactions are the sum of both attractive and repulsive components. Because electrostatic interactions fall off rapidly with increasing distance between molecules, intermolecular interactions are most important for solids and liquids, where the molecules are close together. These interactions become important for gases only at very high pressures, where they are responsible for the observed deviations from the ideal gas law at high pressures.

In this section, we explicitly consider three kinds of intermolecular interactions:There are two additional types of electrostatic interaction that you are already familiar with: the ion–ion interactions that are responsible for ionic bonding and the ion–dipole interactions that occur when ionic substances dissolve in a polar substance such as water. The three intermolecular interactions that will be studied here are *dipole–dipole interactions*, *London dispersion forces*, and *hydrogen bonds*. The first two are often described collectively as van der Waals forces.

Dipole–Dipole Interactions

Recall that polar covalent bonds behave as if the bonded atoms have localized fractional charges that are equal but opposite (i.e., the two bonded atoms generate a *dipole*). If the structure of a molecule is such that the individual bond dipoles do not cancel one another, then the molecule has a net dipole moment. Molecules with net dipole moments tend to align themselves so that the positive end of one dipole is near the negative end of another and vice versa, as shown in part (a) in Figure 11.2.1 . These arrangements are more stable than arrangements in which two positive or two negative ends are adjacent (part (c) in Figure 11.2.1). Hence dipole–dipole interactions. A kind of intermolecular interaction (force) that results between molecules with net dipole moments., such as those in part (b) in Figure 11.2.1 , are *attractive intermolecular interactions*, whereas those in part (d) in Figure 11.2.1 are *repulsive intermolecular interactions*. Because molecules in a liquid move freely and continuously, molecules always experience both attractive and repulsive dipole–dipole interactions simultaneously, as shown in Figure 11.2.2 . On average, however, the attractive interactions dominate.

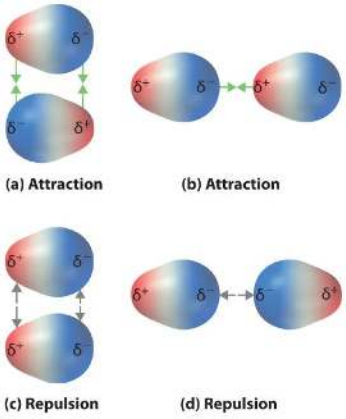


Figure 11.2.1 Attractive and Repulsive Dipole–Dipole Interactions (a and b) Molecular orientations in which the positive end of one dipole (δ^+) is near the negative end of another (δ^-) (and vice versa) produce attractive interactions. (c and d) Molecular orientations that juxtapose the positive or negative ends of the dipoles on adjacent molecules produce repulsive interactions.

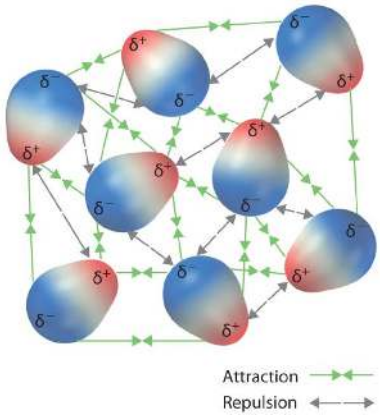


Figure 11.2.2 Both Attractive and Repulsive Dipole–Dipole Interactions Occur in a Liquid Sample with Many Molecules

Because each end of a dipole possesses only a fraction of the charge of an electron, dipole–dipole interactions are substantially weaker than the interactions between two ions, each of which has a charge of at least ±1, or between a dipole and an ion, in which one of the species has at least a full positive or negative charge. In addition, the attractive interaction between dipoles falls off much more rapidly with increasing distance than do the ion–ion interactions we considered in Chapter 4 . Recall that the attractive energy between two ions is proportional to $1/r$, where r is the distance between the ions. Doubling the distance ($r \rightarrow 2r$) decreases the attractive energy by one-half. In contrast, the energy of the interaction of two dipoles is proportional to $1/r^6$, so doubling the distance between the dipoles decreases the strength of the interaction by 2^6, or 64-fold. Thus a substance such as HCl, which is partially held together by dipole–dipole interactions, is a gas at room temperature and 1 atm pressure, whereas NaCl, which is held together by interionic interactions, is a high-melting-point solid. Within a series of compounds of similar molar mass, the strength of the intermolecular interactions increases as the dipole moment of the molecules increases, as shown in Table 11.2.1 . Using what we learned in Chapter 5 about predicting relative bond polarities from the electronegativities of the bonded atoms, we can make educated guesses about the relative boiling points of similar molecules.

Table 11.2.1 Relationships between the Dipole Moment and the Boiling Point for Organic Compounds of Similar Molar Mass

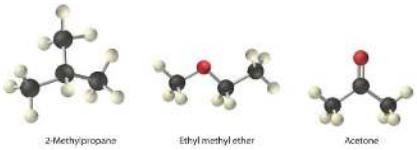
Compound	Molar Mass (g/mol)	Dipole Moment (D)	Boiling Point (K)
C_3H_6 (cyclopropane)	42	0	240
CH_3OCH_3 (dimethyl ether)	46	1.30	248
CH_3CN (acetonitrile)	41	3.9	355

Note the Pattern

The attractive energy between two ions is proportional to $1/r$, whereas the attractive energy between two dipoles is proportional to $1/r^6$.

Example 11.2.1

Arrange ethyl methyl ether ($CH_3OCH_2CH_3$), 2-methylpropane [isobutane, $(CH_3)_2CHCH_3$], and acetone (CH_3COCH_3) in order of increasing boiling points. Their structures are as follows:



Given: compounds

Asked for: order of increasing boiling points

Strategy:

Compare the polarities of the compounds. Compounds with greater dipole moments have the highest boiling points.

Solution:

We must look at differences in polarity to predict the strength of the intermolecular dipole–dipole interactions and thus the boiling points of the compounds. The first compound, 2-methylpropane, contains only C–H bonds, which are not very polar because C and H have similar electronegativities. It should therefore have a very small (but nonzero) dipole moment and a very low boiling point. Ethyl methyl ether has a structure similar to H_2O; it contains two polar C–O single bonds oriented at about a 109° angle to each other, in addition to relatively nonpolar C–H bonds. As a result, the C–O bond dipoles partially reinforce one another and generate a significant dipole moment that should give a moderately high boiling point. Acetone contains a polar C=O double bond oriented at about 120° to two methyl groups with nonpolar C–H bonds. The C–O bond dipole therefore corresponds to the molecular dipole, which should result in both a rather large dipole moment and a high boiling point. Thus we predict the following order of boiling points: 2-methylpropane < ethyl methyl ether < acetone. This result is in good agreement with the actual data: 2-methylpropane, boiling point = −11.7°C, and the dipole moment (μ) = 0.13 D; methyl ethyl ether, boiling point = 7.4°C and μ = 1.17 D; acetone, boiling point = 56.1°C and μ = 2.88 D.

Exercise

Arrange carbon tetrafluoride (CF_4), ethyl methyl sulfide ($CH_3SC_2H_5$), dimethyl sulfoxide [$(CH_3)_2S{=}O$], and 2-methylbutane [isopentane, $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_3$] in order of decreasing boiling points.

Answer: dimethyl sulfoxide (boiling point = 189.9°C) > ethyl methyl sulfide (boiling point = 67°C) > 2-methylbutane (boiling point = 27.8°C) > carbon tetrafluoride (boiling point = −128°C)

London Dispersion Forces

Thus far we have considered only interactions between polar molecules, but other factors must be considered to explain why many nonpolar molecules, such as bromine, benzene, and hexane, are liquids at room temperature, and others, such as iodine and naphthalene, are solids. Even the noble gases can be liquefied or solidified at low temperatures, high pressures, or both (Table 11.2.2)

What kind of attractive forces can exist between nonpolar molecules or atoms? This question was answered by Fritz London (1900–1954), a German physicist who later worked in the United States. In 1930, London proposed that temporary fluctuations in the electron distributions within atoms and nonpolar molecules could result in the formation of short-lived instantaneous dipole moments. The short-lived dipole moment in atoms and nonpolar molecules caused by the constant motion of their electrons, which results in an asymmetrical distribution of charge at any given instant and thus produces attractive forces called London dispersion forces. London dispersion forces are a kind of intermolecular interaction (force) that results from temporary fluctuations in the electron distribution within atoms and nonpolar molecules, and even occur between otherwise nonpolar substances.

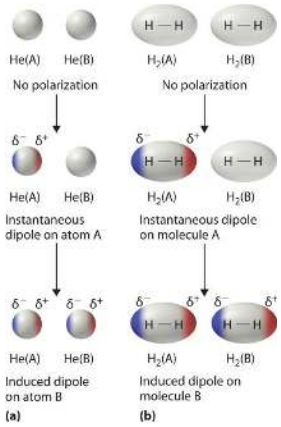


Figure 11.2.3 Instantaneous Dipole Moments The formation of an instantaneous dipole moment on one He atom (a) or an H_2 molecule (b) results in the formation of an induced dipole on an adjacent atom or molecule.

Table 11.2.2 Normal Melting and Boiling Points of Some Elements and Nonpolar Compounds

Substance	Molar Mass (g/mol)	Melting Point (°C)	Boiling Point (°C)
Ar	40	−189.4	−185.9
Xe	131	−111.8	−108.1
N_2	28	−210	−195.8
O_2	32	−218.8	−183.0
F_2	38	−219.7	−188.1
I_2	254	113.7	184.4
CH_4	16	−182.5	−161.5

Consider a pair of adjacent He atoms, for example. On average, the two electrons in each He atom are uniformly distributed around the nucleus. Because the electrons are in constant motion, however, their distribution in one atom is likely to be asymmetrical at any given instant, resulting in an instantaneous dipole moment. As shown in part (a) in Figure 11.2.3, the instantaneous dipole moment on one atom can interact with the electrons in an adjacent atom, pulling them toward the positive end of the instantaneous dipole or repelling them from the negative end. The net effect is that the first atom causes the temporary formation of a dipole, called an induced dipole. A short-lived dipole moment that is created in atoms and nonpolar molecules adjacent to atoms or molecules with an instantaneous dipole moment., in the second. Interactions between these temporary dipoles cause atoms to be attracted to one another. These attractive interactions are weak and fall off rapidly with increasing distance. London was able to show with quantum mechanics that the attractive energy between molecules due to temporary dipole–induced dipole interactions falls off as $1/r^6$. Doubling the distance therefore decreases the attractive energy by 2^6, or 64-fold.

Instantaneous dipole–induced dipole interactions between nonpolar molecules can produce intermolecular attractions just as they produce interatomic attractions in monatomic substances like Xe. This effect, illustrated for two H_2 molecules in part (b) in Figure 11.2.3 tends to become more pronounced as atomic and molecular masses increase (Table 11.2.2). For example, Xe boils at −108.1°C, whereas He boils at −269°C. The reason for this trend is that the strength of London dispersion forces is related to the ease with which the electron distribution in a given atom can be perturbed. In small atoms such as He, the two electrons are held close to the nucleus in a very small volume, and electron–electron repulsions are strong enough to prevent significant asymmetry in their distribution. In larger atoms such as Xe, however, the outer electrons are much less strongly attracted to the nucleus because of filled intervening shells. As a result, it is relatively easy to temporarily deform the electron distribution to generate an instantaneous or induced dipole. The ease of deformation of the electron distribution in an atom or molecule is called its polarizability (the ease of deformation of the electron distribution in an atom or molecule). Because the electron distribution is more easily perturbed in large, heavy species than in small, light species, we say that heavier substances tend to be much more *polarizable* than lighter ones.

Note the Pattern

For similar substances, London dispersion forces get stronger with increasing molecular size.

London dispersion forces are responsible for the general trend toward higher boiling points with increased molecular mass and greater surface area in a homologous series of compounds, such as the alkanes (part (a) in Figure 11.2.4). The strengths of London dispersion forces also depend significantly on molecular shape because shape determines how much of one molecule can interact with its neighboring molecules at any given time. For example, part (b) in Figure 11.2.4 shows 2,2-dimethylpropane (neopentane) and *n*-pentane, both of which have the empirical formula C_5H_{12}. Neopentane is almost spherical, with a small surface area for intermolecular interactions, whereas *n*-pentane has an extended conformation that enables it to come into close contact with other *n*-pentane molecules. As a result, the boiling point of neopentane (9.5°C) is more than 25°C lower than the boiling point of *n*-pentane (36.1°C).

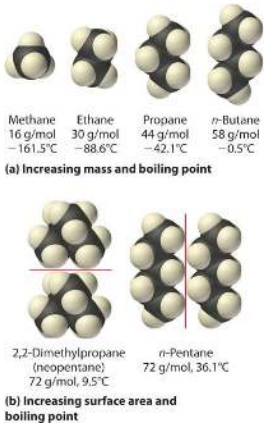


Figure 11.2.4 Mass and Surface Area Affect the Strength of London Dispersion Forces (a) In this series of four simple alkanes, larger molecules have stronger London forces between them than smaller molecules and consequently higher boiling points. (b) Linear *n*-pentane molecules have a larger surface area and stronger intermolecular forces than spherical neopentane molecules. As a result, neopentane is a gas at room temperature, whereas *n*-pentane is a volatile liquid.

All molecules, whether polar or nonpolar, are attracted to one another by London dispersion forces in addition to any other attractive forces that may be present. In general, however, dipole–dipole interactions in small polar molecules are significantly stronger than London dispersion forces, so the former predominate.

Example 11.2.2

Arrange *n*-butane, propane, 2-methylpropane [isobutene, $(CH_3)_2CHCH_3$], and *n*-pentane in order of increasing boiling points.

Given: compounds

Asked for: order of increasing boiling points

Strategy:

Determine the intermolecular forces in the compounds and then arrange the compounds according to the strength of those forces. The substance with the weakest forces will have the lowest boiling point.

Solution:

The four compounds are alkanes and nonpolar, so London dispersion forces are the only important intermolecular forces. These forces are generally stronger with increasing molecular mass, so propane should have the lowest boiling point and *n*-pentane should have the highest, with the two butane isomers falling in between. Of the two butane isomers, 2-methylpropane is more compact, and *n*-butane has the more extended shape. Consequently, we expect intermolecular interactions for *n*-butane to be stronger due to its larger surface area, resulting in a higher boiling point. The overall order is thus as follows, with actual boiling points in parentheses: propane (−42.1°C) < 2-methylpropane (−11.7°C) < *n*-butane (−0.5°C) < *n*-pentane (36.1°C).

Exercise

Arrange GeH_4, $SiCl_4$, SiH_4, CH_4, and $GeCl_4$ in order of decreasing boiling points.

Answer: $GeCl_4$ (87°C) > $SiCl_4$ (57.6°C) > GeH_4 (−88.5°C) > SiH_4 (−111.8°C) > CH_4 (−161°C)

Hydrogen Bonds

Molecules with hydrogen atoms bonded to electronegative atoms such as O, N, and F (and to a much lesser extent Cl and S) tend to exhibit unusually strong intermolecular interactions. These result in much higher boiling points than are observed for substances in which London dispersion forces dominate, as illustrated for the covalent hydrides of elements of groups 14–17 in Figure 11.2.5 . Methane and its heavier congeners in group 14 form a series whose boiling points increase smoothly with increasing molar mass. This is the expected trend in nonpolar molecules, for which London dispersion forces are the exclusive intermolecular forces. In contrast, the hydrides of the lightest members of groups 15–17 have boiling points that are more than 100°C greater than predicted on the basis of their molar masses. The effect is most dramatic for water: if we extend the straight line connecting the points for H_2Te and H_2Se to the line for period 2, we obtain an estimated boiling point of −130°C for water! Imagine the implications for life on Earth if water boiled at −130°C rather than 100°C.

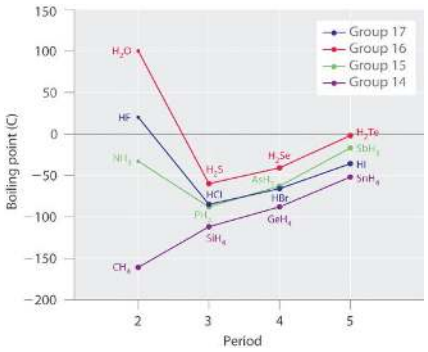


Figure 11.2.5 The Effects of Hydrogen Bonding on Boiling Points These plots of the boiling points of the covalent hydrides of the elements of groups 14–17 show that the boiling points of the lightest members of each series for which hydrogen bonding is possible (HF, NH_3, and H_2O) are anomalously high for compounds with such low molecular masses.

Why do strong intermolecular forces produce such anomalously high boiling points and other unusual properties, such as high enthalpies of vaporization and high melting points? The answer lies in the highly polar nature of the bonds between hydrogen and very electronegative elements such as O, N, and F. The large difference in electronegativity results in a large partial positive charge on hydrogen and a correspondingly large partial negative charge on the O, N, or F atom. Consequently, H–O, H–N, and H–F bonds have very large bond dipoles that can interact strongly with one another. Because a hydrogen atom is so small, these dipoles can also approach one another more closely than most other dipoles. The combination of large bond dipoles and short dipole–dipole distances results in very strong dipole–dipole interactions called hydrogen bonds. An unusually strong dipole-dipole interaction (intermolecular force) that results when hydrogen is bonded to very electronegative elements, such as O, N, and F., as shown for ice in Figure 11.2.6 . A hydrogen bond is usually indicated by a dotted line between the hydrogen atom attached to O, N, or F (the *hydrogen bond donor*) and the atom that has the lone pair of electrons (the *hydrogen bond acceptor*). Because each water molecule contains two hydrogen atoms and two lone pairs, a tetrahedral arrangement maximizes the number of hydrogen bonds that can be formed. In the structure of ice, each oxygen atom is surrounded by a distorted tetrahedron of hydrogen atoms that form bridges to the oxygen atoms of adjacent water molecules. The bridging hydrogen atoms are *not* equidistant from the two oxygen atoms they connect, however. Instead, each hydrogen atom is 101 pm from one oxygen and 174 pm from the other. In contrast, each oxygen atom is bonded to two H atoms at the shorter distance and two at the longer distance, corresponding to two O–H covalent bonds and two O·H hydrogen bonds from adjacent water molecules, respectively. The resulting open, cagelike structure of ice means that the solid is actually slightly less dense than the liquid, which explains why ice floats on water rather than sinks.

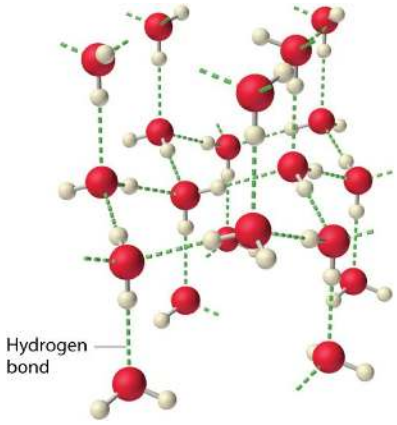


Figure 11.2.6 The Hydrogen-Bonded Structure of Ice Each water molecule accepts two hydrogen bonds from two other water molecules and donates two hydrogen atoms to form hydrogen bonds with two more water molecules, producing an open, cagelike structure. The structure of liquid water is very similar, but in the liquid, the hydrogen bonds are continually broken and formed because of rapid molecular motion.

Note the Pattern

Hydrogen bond formation requires *both* a hydrogen bond donor *and* a hydrogen bond acceptor.

Because ice is less dense than liquid water, rivers, lakes, and oceans freeze from the top down. In fact, the ice forms a protective surface layer that insulates the rest of the water, allowing fish and other organisms to survive in the lower levels of a frozen lake or sea. If ice were denser than the liquid, the ice formed at the surface in cold weather would sink as fast as it formed. Bodies of water would freeze from the bottom up, which would be lethal for most aquatic creatures. The expansion of water when freezing also explains why automobile or boat engines must be protected by "antifreeze" (we will discuss how antifreeze works in Chapter 13) and why unprotected pipes in houses break if they are allowed to freeze.

Although hydrogen bonds are significantly weaker than covalent bonds, with typical dissociation energies of only 15–25 kJ/mol, they have a significant influence on the physical properties of a compound. Compounds such as HF can form only two hydrogen bonds at a time as can, on average, pure liquid NH_3. Consequently, even though their molecular masses are similar to that of water, their boiling points are significantly lower than the boiling point of water, which forms *four* hydrogen bonds at a time.

Example 11.2.3

Considering CH_3OH, C_2H_6, Xe, and $(CH_3)_3N$, which can form hydrogen bonds with themselves? Draw the hydrogen-bonded structures.

Given: compounds

Asked for: formation of hydrogen bonds and structure

Strategy:

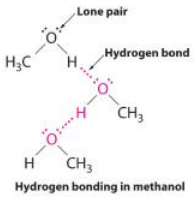
A Identify the compounds with a hydrogen atom attached to O, N, or F. These are likely to be able to act as hydrogen bond donors.

B Of the compounds that can act as hydrogen bond donors, identify those that also contain lone pairs of electrons, which allow them to be hydrogen bond acceptors. If a substance is both a hydrogen donor and a hydrogen bond acceptor, draw a structure showing the hydrogen bonding.

Solution:

A Of the species listed, xenon (Xe), ethane (C_2H_6), and trimethylamine [$(CH_3)_3N$] do not contain a hydrogen atom attached to O, N, or F; hence they cannot act as hydrogen bond donors.

B The one compound that can act as a hydrogen bond donor, methanol (CH_3OH), contains both a hydrogen atom attached to O (making it a hydrogen bond donor) and two lone pairs of electrons on O (making it a hydrogen bond acceptor); methanol can thus form hydrogen bonds by acting as either a hydrogen bond donor or a hydrogen bond acceptor. The hydrogen-bonded structure of methanol is as follows:

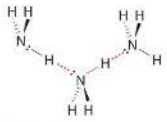


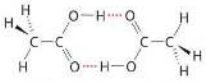
Hydrogen bonding in methanol

Exercise

Considering CH_3CO_2H, $(CH_3)_3N$, NH_3, and CH_3F, which can form hydrogen bonds with themselves? Draw the hydrogen-bonded structures.

Answer: CH_3CO_2H and NH_3;


Hydrogen bonding in ammonia


Hydrogen bonding in acetic acid

Example 11.2.4

Arrange C_{60} (buckminsterfullerene, which has a cage structure), NaCl, He, Ar, and N_2O in order of increasing boiling points.

Given: compounds

Asked for: order of increasing boiling points

Strategy:

Identify the intermolecular forces in each compound and then arrange the compounds according to the strength of those forces. The substance with the weakest forces will have the lowest boiling point.

Solution:

Electrostatic interactions are strongest for an ionic compound, so we expect NaCl to have the highest boiling point. To predict the relative boiling points of the other compounds, we must consider their polarity (for dipole–dipole interactions), their ability to form hydrogen bonds, and their molar mass (for London dispersion forces). Helium is nonpolar and by far the lightest, so it should have the lowest boiling point. Argon and N_2O have very similar molar masses (40 and 44 g/mol, respectively), but N_2O is polar while Ar is not. Consequently, N_2O should have a higher boiling point. A C_{60} molecule is nonpolar, but its molar mass is 720 g/mol, much greater than that of Ar or N_2O. Because the boiling points of nonpolar substances increase rapidly with molecular mass, C_{60} should boil at a higher temperature than the other nonionic substances. The predicted order is thus as follows, with actual boiling points in parentheses: He (−269°C) < Ar (−185.7°C) < N_2O (−88.5°C) < C_{60} (>280°C) < NaCl (1465°C).

Exercise

Arrange 2,4-dimethylheptane, Ne, CS_2, Cl_2, and KBr in order of decreasing boiling points.

Answer: KBr (1435°C) > 2,4-dimethylheptane (132.9°C) > CS_2 (46.6°C) > Cl_2 (−34.6°C) > Ne (−246°C)

Summary

Molecules in liquids are held to other molecules by intermolecular interactions, which are weaker than the intramolecular interactions that hold the atoms together within molecules and polyatomic ions. Transitions between the solid and liquid or the liquid and gas phases are due to changes in intermolecular interactions but do not affect intramolecular interactions. The three major types of intermolecular interactions are dipole–dipole interactions, London dispersion forces (these two are often referred to collectively as **van der Waals forces**), and hydrogen bonds. **Dipole–dipole interactions** arise from the electrostatic interactions of the positive and negative ends of molecules with permanent dipole moments; their strength is proportional to the magnitude of the dipole moment and to $1/r^6$, where r is the distance between dipoles. **London dispersion forces** are due to the formation of **instantaneous dipole moments** in polar or nonpolar molecules as a result of short-lived fluctuations of electron charge distribution, which in turn cause the temporary formation of an **induced dipole** in adjacent molecules. Like dipole–dipole interactions, their energy falls off as $1/r^6$. Larger atoms tend to be more **polarizable** than smaller ones because their outer electrons are less tightly bound and are therefore more easily perturbed. **Hydrogen bonds** are especially strong dipole–dipole interactions between molecules that have hydrogen bonded to a highly electronegative atom, such as O, N, or F. The resulting partially

positively charged H atom on one molecule (the *hydrogen bond donor*) can interact strongly with a lone pair of electrons of a partially negatively charged O, N, or F atom on adjacent molecules (the *hydrogen bond acceptor*). Because of strong O·H> hydrogen bonding between water molecules, water has an unusually high boiling point, and ice has an open, cagelike structure that is less dense than liquid water.

Key Takeaways

- Intermolecular forces are electrostatic in nature and include van der Waals forces and hydrogen bonds.

Contributors and Attributions

- Anonymous

Modified by Joshua Halpern, Scott Sinex and Scott Johnson

This page titled 3.2: Intermolecular forces is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

3.3: Crystalline and Amorphous Solids

Learning Objectives

- To know the characteristic properties of crystalline and amorphous solids.

With few exceptions, the particles that compose a solid material, whether ionic, molecular, covalent, or metallic, are held in place by strong attractive forces between them. When we discuss solids, therefore, we consider the *positions* of the atoms, molecules, or ions, which are essentially fixed in space, rather than their motions (which are more important in liquids and gases). The constituents of a solid can be arranged in two general ways: they can form a regular repeating three-dimensional structure called a crystal lattice (a regular repeating three-dimensional structure) and thus producing a crystalline solid, or they can aggregate with no particular order, in which case they form an amorphous solid (a solid with no particular structural order; from the Greek *ámorphos*, meaning “shapeless”).

Crystalline solids, or *crystals*, have distinctive internal structures that in turn lead to distinctive flat surfaces, or *faces*. The faces intersect at angles that are characteristic of the substance. When exposed to x-rays, each structure also produces a distinctive pattern that can be used to identify the material (see Section 12.3). The characteristic angles do not depend on the size of the crystal; they reflect the regular repeating arrangement of the component atoms, molecules, or ions in space. When an ionic crystal is cleaved (Figure 12.1.1), for example, repulsive interactions cause it to break along fixed planes to produce new faces that intersect at the same angles as those in the original crystal. In a covalent solid such as a cut diamond, the angles at which the faces meet are also not arbitrary but are determined by the arrangement of the carbon atoms in the crystal.



Crystalline faces. The faces of crystals can intersect at right angles, as in galena (PbS) and pyrite (FeS_2), or at other angles, as in quartz.

Cleavage surfaces of an amorphous solid. Obsidian, a volcanic glass with the same chemical composition as granite (typically $KAlSi_3O_8$), tends to have curved, irregular surfaces when cleaved.



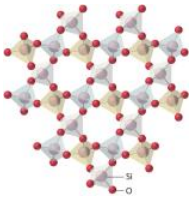


Figure 12.1.1 Cleaving a Crystal of an Ionic Compound along a Plane of Ions Deformation of the ionic crystal causes one plane of atoms to slide along another. The resulting repulsive interactions between ions with like charges cause the layers to separate.

Crystals tend to have relatively sharp, well-defined melting points because all the component atoms, molecules, or ions are the same distance from the same number and type of neighbors; that is, the regularity of the crystalline lattice creates local environments that are the same. Thus the intermolecular forces holding the solid together are uniform, and the same amount of thermal energy is needed to break every interaction simultaneously.

Amorphous solids have two characteristic properties. When cleaved or broken, they produce fragments with irregular, often curved surfaces; and they have poorly defined patterns when exposed to x-rays because their components are not arranged in a regular array. An amorphous, translucent solid is called a glassAn amorphous, translucent solid. A glass is a solid that has been cooled too

quickly to form ordered crystals.. Almost any substance can solidify in amorphous form if the liquid phase is cooled rapidly enough. Some solids, however, are intrinsically amorphous, because either their components cannot fit together well enough to form a stable crystalline lattice or they contain impurities that disrupt the lattice. For example, although the chemical composition and the basic structural units of a quartz crystal and quartz glass are the same—both are SiO_2 and both consist of linked SiO_4 tetrahedra—the arrangements of the atoms in space are not. Crystalline quartz contains a highly ordered arrangement of silicon and oxygen atoms, but in quartz glass the atoms are arranged almost randomly. When molten SiO_2 is cooled rapidly (4 K/min), it forms quartz glass, whereas the large, perfect quartz crystals sold in mineral shops have had cooling times of thousands of years. In contrast, aluminum crystallizes much more rapidly. Amorphous aluminum forms only when the liquid is cooled at the extraordinary rate of 4×10^{13} K/s, which prevents the atoms from arranging themselves into a regular array.



The lattice of crystalline quartz (SiO_2). The atoms form a regular arrangement in a structure that consists of linked tetrahedra.

In an amorphous solid, the local environment, including both the distances to neighboring units and the numbers of neighbors, varies throughout the material. Different amounts of thermal energy are needed to overcome these different interactions. Consequently, amorphous solids tend to soften slowly over a wide temperature range rather than having a well-defined melting point like a crystalline solid. If an amorphous solid is maintained at a temperature just below its melting point for long periods of time, the component molecules, atoms, or ions can gradually rearrange into a more highly ordered crystalline form.

Note the Pattern

Crystals have sharp, well-defined melting points; amorphous solids do not.

Summary

Solids are characterized by an extended three-dimensional arrangement of atoms, ions, or molecules in which the components are generally locked into their positions. The components can be arranged in a regular repeating three-dimensional array (a **crystal lattice**), which results in a **crystalline solid**, or more or less randomly to produce an **amorphous solid**. Crystalline solids have well-defined edges and faces, diffract x-rays, and tend to have sharp melting points. In contrast, amorphous solids have irregular or curved surfaces, do not give well-resolved x-ray diffraction patterns, and melt over a wide range of temperatures.

Key Takeaway

- Crystalline solids have regular ordered arrays of components held together by uniform intermolecular forces, whereas the components of amorphous solids are not arranged in regular arrays.

Contributors and Attributions

- Anonymous

This page titled 3.3: Crystalline and Amorphous Solids is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

3.4: The Solid State of Matter

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Define and describe the bonding and properties of ionic, molecular, metallic, and covalent network crystalline solids
- Describe the main types of crystalline solids: ionic solids, metallic solids, covalent network solids, and molecular solids
- Explain the ways in which crystal defects can occur in a solid

When most liquids are cooled, they eventually freeze and form crystalline solids, solids in which the atoms, ions, or molecules are arranged in a definite repeating pattern. It is also possible for a liquid to freeze before its molecules become arranged in an orderly pattern. The resulting materials are called amorphous solids or noncrystalline solids (or, sometimes, glasses). The particles of such solids lack an ordered internal structure and are randomly arranged (Figure 10.37).

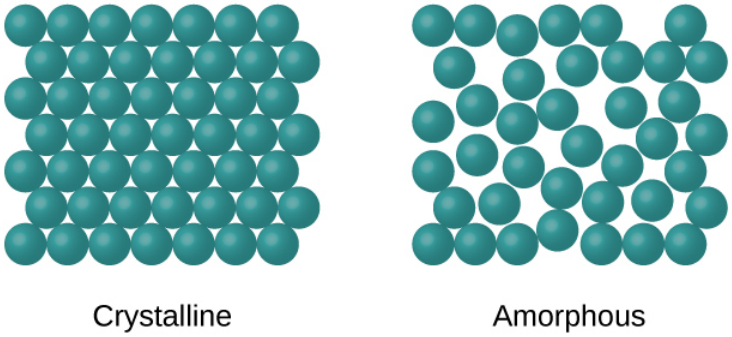


Figure 10.37 The entities of a solid phase may be arranged in a regular, repeating pattern (crystalline solids) or randomly (amorphous).

Metals and ionic compounds typically form ordered, crystalline solids. Substances that consist of large molecules, or a mixture of molecules whose movements are more restricted, often form amorphous solids. For examples, candle waxes are amorphous solids composed of large hydrocarbon molecules. Some substances, such as silicon dioxide (shown in Figure 10.38), can form either crystalline or amorphous solids, depending on the conditions under which it is produced. Also, amorphous solids may undergo a transition to the crystalline state under appropriate conditions.

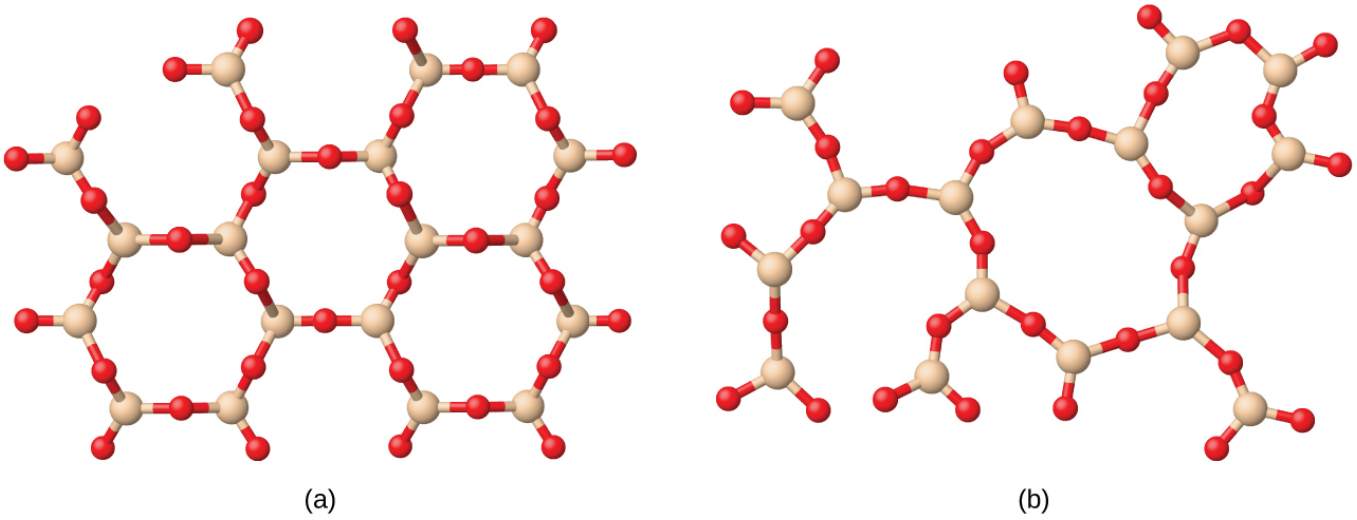


Figure 10.38 (a) Silicon dioxide, SiO_2, is abundant in nature as one of several crystalline forms of the mineral quartz. (b) Rapid cooling of molten SiO_2 yields an amorphous solid known as “fused silica”.

Crystalline solids are generally classified according to the nature of the forces that hold its particles together. These forces are primarily responsible for the physical properties exhibited by the bulk solids. The following sections provide descriptions of the

major types of crystalline solids: ionic, metallic, covalent network, and molecular.

3.4.0.1: Ionic Solids

Ionic solids, such as sodium chloride and nickel oxide, are composed of positive and negative ions that are held together by electrostatic attractions, which can be quite strong (Figure 10.39). Many ionic crystals also have high melting points. This is due to the very strong attractions between the ions—in ionic compounds, the attractions between full charges are (much) larger than those between the partial charges in polar molecular compounds. This will be looked at in more detail in a later discussion of lattice energies. Although they are hard, they also tend to be brittle, and they shatter rather than bend. Ionic solids do not conduct electricity; however, they do conduct when molten or dissolved because their ions are free to move. Many simple compounds formed by the reaction of a metallic element with a nonmetallic element are ionic.

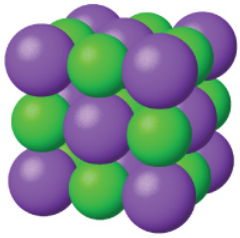


Figure 10.39 Sodium chloride is an ionic solid.

3.4.0.1: Metallic Solids

Metallic solids such as crystals of copper, aluminum, and iron are formed by metal atoms Figure 10.40. The structure of metallic crystals is often described as a uniform distribution of atomic nuclei within a “sea” of delocalized electrons. The atoms within such a metallic solid are held together by a unique force known as *metallic bonding* that gives rise to many useful and varied bulk properties. All exhibit high thermal and electrical conductivity, metallic luster, and malleability. Many are very hard and quite strong. Because of their malleability (the ability to deform under pressure or hammering), they do not shatter and, therefore, make useful construction materials. The melting points of the metals vary widely. Mercury is a liquid at room temperature, and the alkali metals melt below 200 °C. Several post-transition metals also have low melting points, whereas the transition metals melt at temperatures above 1000 °C. These differences reflect differences in strengths of metallic bonding among the metals.

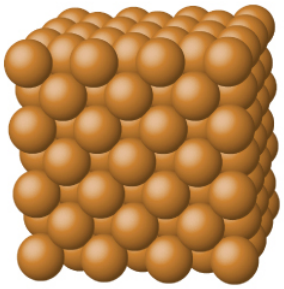


Figure 10.40 Copper is a metallic solid.

3.4.0.1: Covalent Network Solid

Covalent network solids include crystals of diamond, silicon, some other nonmetals, and some covalent compounds such as silicon dioxide (sand) and silicon carbide (carborundum, the abrasive on sandpaper). Many minerals have networks of covalent bonds. The atoms in these solids are held together by a network of covalent bonds, as shown in Figure 10.41. To break or to melt a covalent network solid, covalent bonds must be broken. Because covalent bonds are relatively strong, covalent network solids are typically characterized by hardness, strength, and high melting points. For example, diamond is one of the hardest substances known and melts above 3500 °C.

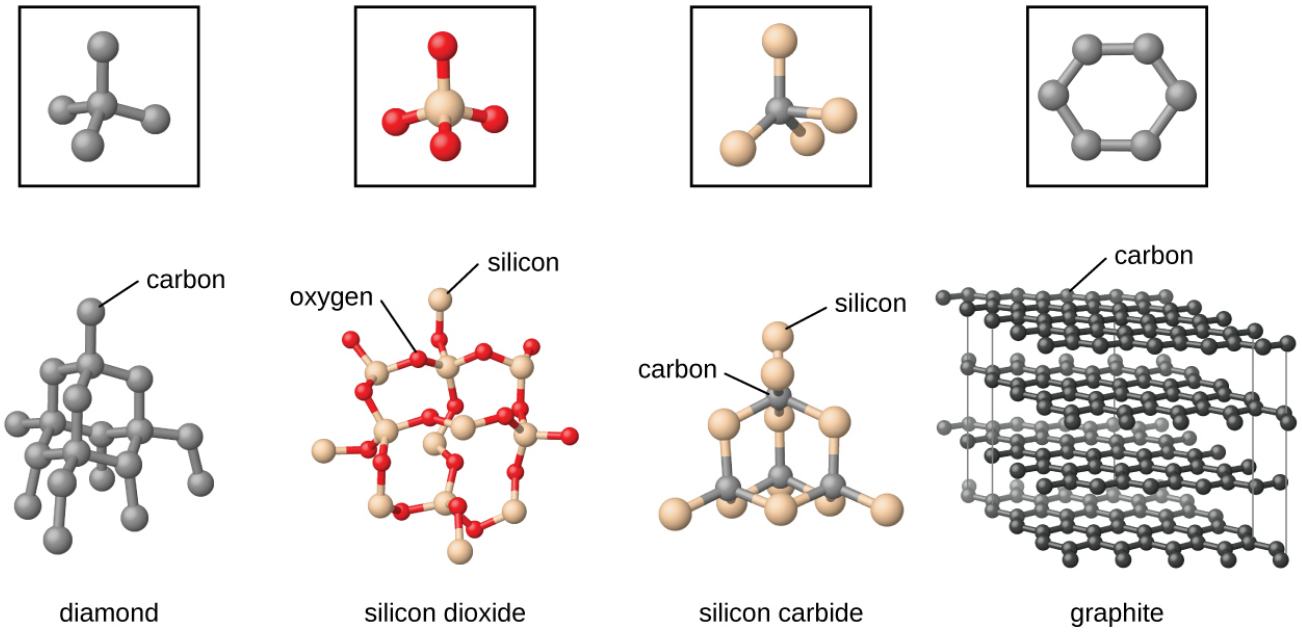


Figure 10.41 A covalent crystal contains a three-dimensional network of covalent bonds, as illustrated by the structures of diamond, silicon dioxide, silicon carbide, and graphite. Graphite is an exceptional example, composed of planar sheets of covalent crystals that are held together in layers by noncovalent forces. Unlike typical covalent solids, graphite is very soft and electrically conductive.

3.4.0.1: Molecular Solid

Molecular solids, such as ice, sucrose (table sugar), and iodine, as shown in Figure 10.42, are composed of neutral molecules. The strengths of the attractive forces between the units present in different crystals vary widely, as indicated by the melting points of the crystals. Small symmetrical molecules (nonpolar molecules), such as H_2, N_2, O_2, and F_2, have weak attractive forces and form molecular solids with very low melting points (below −200 °C). Substances consisting of larger, nonpolar molecules have larger attractive forces and melt at higher temperatures. Molecular solids composed of molecules with permanent dipole moments (polar molecules) melt at still higher temperatures. Examples include ice (melting point, 0 °C) and table sugar (melting point, 185 °C).

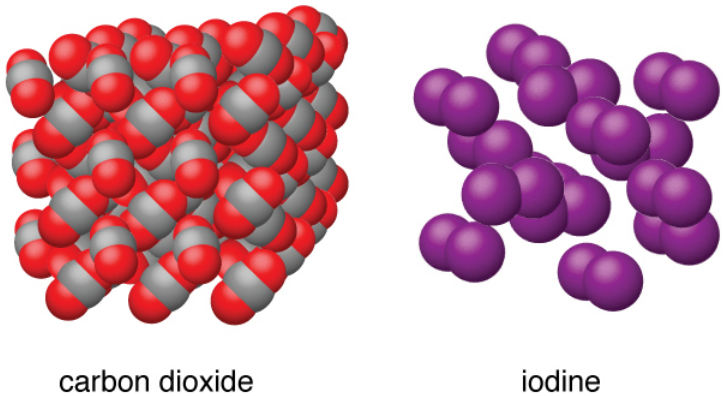


Figure 10.42 Carbon dioxide (CO_2) consists of small, nonpolar molecules and forms a molecular solid with a melting point of −78 °C. Iodine (I_2) consists of larger, nonpolar molecules and forms a molecular solid that melts at 114 °C.

3.4.0.1: Properties of Solids

A crystalline solid, like those listed in Table 10.4, has a precise melting temperature because each atom or molecule of the same type is held in place with the same forces or energy. Thus, the attractions between the units that make up the crystal all have the same strength and all require the same amount of energy to be broken. The gradual softening of an amorphous material differs dramatically from the distinct melting of a crystalline solid. This results from the structural nonequivalence of the molecules in the amorphous solid. Some forces are weaker than others, and when an amorphous material is heated, the weakest intermolecular attractions break first. As the temperature is increased further, the stronger attractions are broken. Thus amorphous materials soften over a range of temperatures.

Types of Crystalline Solids and Their Properties

Type of Solid	Type of Particles	Type of Attractions	Properties	Examples
ionic	ions	ionic bonds	hard, brittle, conducts electricity as a liquid but not as a solid, high to very high melting points	NaCl, Al_2O_3
metallic	atoms of electropositive elements	metallic bonds	shiny, malleable, ductile, conducts heat and electricity well, variable hardness and melting temperature	Cu, Fe, Ti, Pb, U
covalent network	atoms of electronegative elements	covalent bonds	very hard, not conductive, very high melting points	C (diamond), SiO_2, SiC
molecular	molecules (or atoms)	IMFs	variable hardness, variable brittleness, not conductive, low melting points	H_2O, CO_2, I_2, $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$

Table 10.4

3.4.0.1: How Sciences Interconnect

3.4.0.0.1: Graphene: Material of the Future

Carbon is an essential element in our world. The unique properties of carbon atoms allow the existence of carbon-based life forms such as ourselves. Carbon forms a huge variety of substances that we use on a daily basis, including those shown in Figure 10.43. You may be familiar with diamond and graphite, the two most common *allotropes* of carbon. (Allotropes are different structural forms of the same element.) Diamond is one of the hardest-known substances, whereas graphite is soft enough to be used as pencil lead. These very different properties stem from the different arrangements of the carbon atoms in the different allotropes.

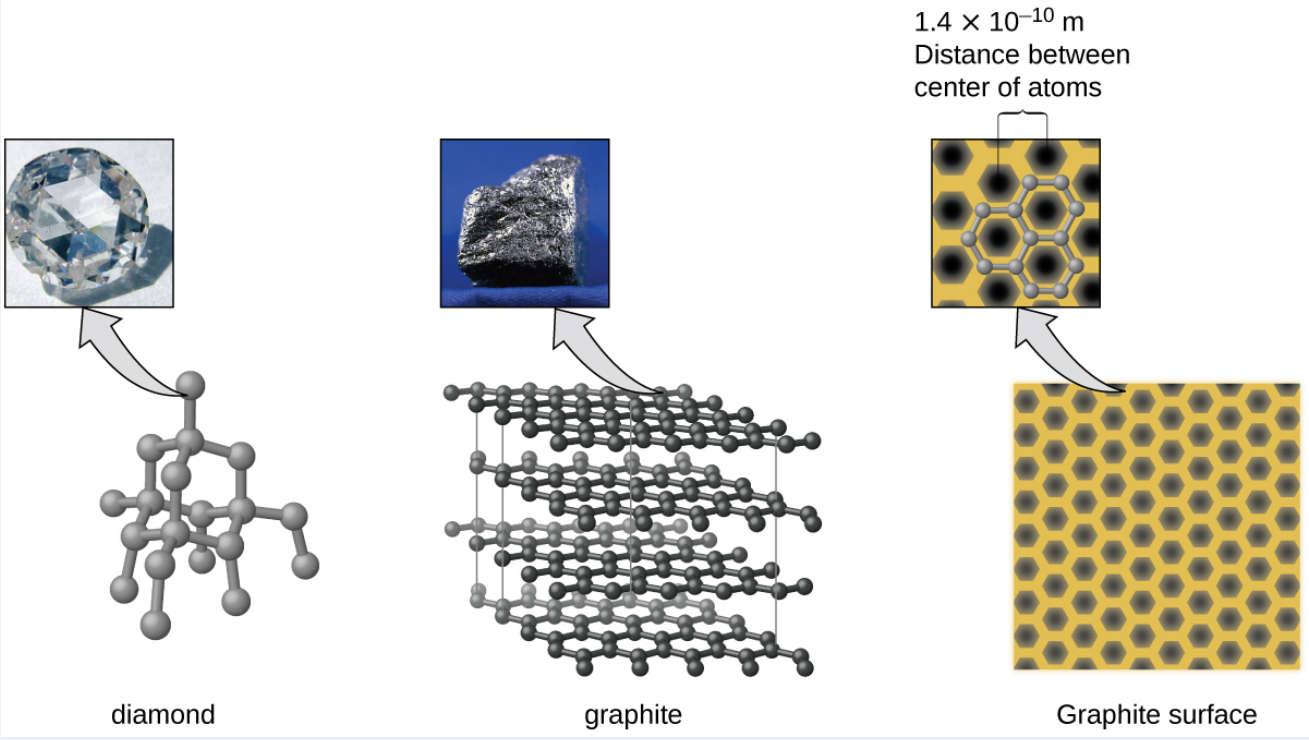


Figure 10.43 Diamond is extremely hard because of the strong bonding between carbon atoms in all directions. Graphite (in pencil lead) rubs off onto paper due to the weak attractions between the carbon layers. An image of a graphite surface shows the distance between the centers of adjacent carbon atoms. (credit left photo: modification of work by Steve Jurvetson; credit middle photo: modification of work by United States Geological Survey)

You may be less familiar with a recently discovered form of carbon: graphene. Graphene was first isolated in 2004 by using tape to peel off thinner and thinner layers from graphite. It is essentially a single sheet (one atom thick) of graphite. Graphene, illustrated in Figure 10.44, is not only strong and lightweight, but it is also an excellent conductor of electricity and heat. These properties may prove very useful in a wide range of applications, such as vastly improved computer chips and circuits, better batteries and solar cells, and stronger and lighter structural materials. The 2010 Nobel Prize in Physics was awarded to Andre Geim and Konstantin Novoselov for their pioneering work with graphene.

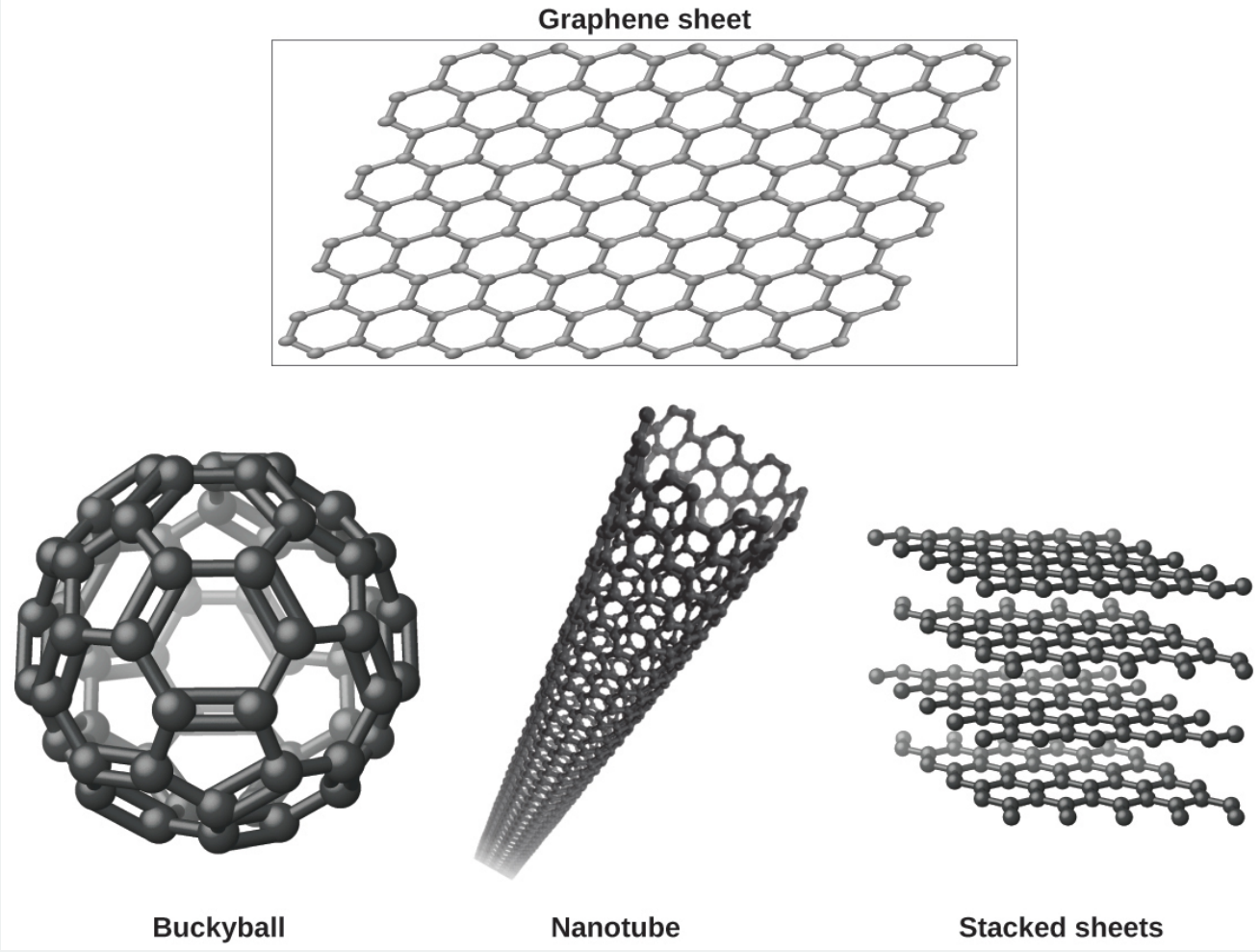


Figure 10.44 Graphene sheets can be formed into buckyballs, nanotubes, and stacked layers.

This page titled 3.4: The Solid State of Matter is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

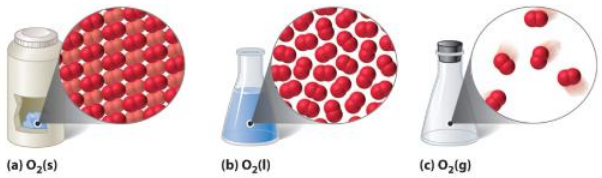
3.5: Gaseous Elements and Compounds

Learning Objectives

- To describe the characteristics of a gas.

The three common phases (or states) of matter are gases, liquids, and solids. Gases have the lowest density of the three, are highly compressible, and completely fill any container in which they are placed. Gases behave this way because their intermolecular forces are relatively weak, so their molecules are constantly moving independently of the other molecules present. Solids, in contrast, are relatively dense, rigid, and incompressible because their intermolecular forces are so strong that the molecules are essentially locked in place. Liquids are relatively dense and incompressible, like solids, but they flow readily to adapt to the shape of their containers, like gases. We can therefore conclude that the sum of the intermolecular forces in liquids are between those of gases and solids. Figure 10.1.1 compares the three states of matter and illustrates the differences at the molecular level.

Figure 10.1.1 A Diatomic Substance (O_2) in the Solid, Liquid, and Gaseous States



(a) Solid O_2 has a fixed volume and shape, and the molecules are packed tightly together. (b) Liquid O_2 conforms to the shape of its container but has a fixed volume; it contains relatively densely packed molecules. (c) Gaseous O_2 fills its container completely—regardless of the container's size or shape—and consists of widely separated molecules.

The state of a given substance depends strongly on conditions. For example, H_2O is commonly found in all three states: solid ice, liquid water, and water vapor (its gaseous form). Under most conditions, we encounter water as the liquid that is essential for life; we drink it, cook with it, and bathe in it. When the temperature is cold enough to transform the liquid to ice, we can ski or skate on it, pack it into a snowball or snow cone, and even build dwellings with it. Water vaporThe distinction between a gas and a vapor is subtle: the term *vapor* refers to the gaseous form of a substance that is a liquid or a solid under normal conditions (25°C, 1.0 atm). Nitrogen (N_2) and oxygen (O_2) are thus referred to as gases, but gaseous water in the atmosphere is called water vapor. is a component of the air we breathe, and it is produced whenever we heat water for cooking food or making coffee or tea. Water vapor at temperatures greater than 100°C is called steam. Steam is used to drive large machinery, including turbines that generate electricity. The properties of the three states of water are summarized in Table 10.1.1

Table 10.1.1 Properties of Water at 1.0 atm

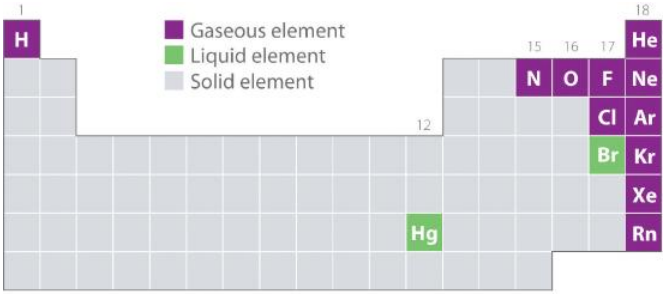
Temperature	State	Density (g/cm^3)
≤0°C	solid (ice)	0.9167 (at 0.0°C)
0°C–100°C	liquid (water)	0.9997 (at 4.0°C)
≥100°C	vapor (steam)	0.005476 (at 127°C)

The geometric structure and the physical and chemical properties of atoms, ions, and molecules usually do *not* depend on their physical state; the individual water molecules in ice, liquid water, and steam, for example, are all identical. In contrast, the macroscopic properties of a substance depend strongly on its physical state, which is determined by intermolecular forces and conditions such as temperature and pressure.

Figure 10.1.2 shows the locations in the periodic table of those elements that are commonly found in the gaseous, liquid, and solid states. Except for hydrogen, the elements that occur naturally as gases are on the right side of the periodic table. Of these, all the noble gases (group 18) are monatomic gases, whereas the other gaseous elements are diatomic molecules (H_2, N_2, O_2, F_2, and Cl_2). Oxygen can also form a second allotrope, the highly reactive triatomic molecule ozone (O_3), which is also a gas. In contrast, bromine (as Br_2) and mercury (Hg) are liquids under normal conditions (25°C and 1.0 atm, commonly referred to as "room temperature and pressure"). Gallium (Ga), which melts at only 29.76°C, can be converted to a liquid simply by holding a container

of it in your hand or keeping it in a non-air-conditioned room on a hot summer day. The rest of the elements are all solids under normal conditions.

Figure 10.1.2 Elements That Occur Naturally as Gases, Liquids, and Solids at 25°C and 1 atm



The noble gases and mercury occur as monatomic species, whereas all other gases and bromine are diatomic molecules.

Many of the elements and compounds we have encountered so far are typically found as gases; some of the more common ones are listed in Table 10.1.2 . Gaseous substances include many binary hydrides, such as the hydrogen halides (HX); hydrides of the chalcogens; hydrides of the group 15 elements N, P, and As; hydrides of the group 14 elements C, Si, and Ge; and diborane (B_2H_6). In addition, many of the simple covalent oxides of the nonmetals are gases, such as CO, CO_2, NO, NO_2, SO_2, SO_3, and ClO_2. Many low-molecular-mass organic compounds are gases as well, including all the hydrocarbons with four or fewer carbon atoms and simple molecules such as dimethyl ether [$(CH_3)_2O$], methyl chloride (CH_3Cl), formaldehyde (CH_2O), and acetaldehyde (CH_3CHO). Finally, refrigerants, such as the chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) and the hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs) are gases which can be easily liquified by compression and in turn the liquids can be turned into gases by decreasing the pressure on the liquids. The phase change from liquid to gas in tubes inside the refrigerator cools, while the compression in coils at the bottom or back of the refrigerator warms the room. Ammonia and SO_2 are other compressible gases that have been used as refrigerants but cannot be used in houses because of their poisonous nature. Ammonia is still used as a refrigerant in large commercial settings because of its efficiency and low cost.

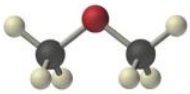
Table 10.1.2 Some Common Substances That Are Gases at 25°C and 1.0 atm

Elements	Compounds	
He (helium)	HF (hydrogen fluoride)	C_2H_4 (ethylene)
Ne (neon)	HCl (hydrogen chloride)	C_2H_2 (acetylene)
Ar (argon)	HBr (hydrogen bromide)	C_3H_8 (propane)
Kr (krypton)	HI (hydrogen iodide)	C_4H_{10} (butane)
Xe (xenon)	HCN (hydrogen cyanide)*	CO (carbon monoxide)
Rn (radon)	H_2S (hydrogen sulfide)	CO_2 (carbon dioxide)
H_2 (hydrogen)	NH_3 (ammonia)	NO (nitric oxide)
N_2 (nitrogen)	PH_3 (phosphine)	N_2O (nitrous oxide)
O_2 (oxygen)	CH_4 (methane)	NO_2 (nitrogen dioxide)
O_3 (ozone)	C_2H_6 (ethane)	SO_2 (sulfur dioxide)
F_2 (fluorine)		
Cl_2 (chlorine)		

*HCN boils at 26°C at 1 atm, so it is included in this table.

All of the gaseous substances mentioned previously (other than the monatomic noble gases) contain covalent or polar covalent bonds and are nonpolar or polar molecules. In contrast, the strong electrostatic attractions in ionic compounds, such as NaBr (boiling point = 1390°C) or LiF (boiling point = 1673°C), prevent them from existing as gases at room temperature and pressure. In

addition, the lightest members of any given family of compounds are most likely gases, and the boiling points of polar compounds are generally greater than those of nonpolar compounds of similar molecular mass. Therefore, in a given series of compounds, the lightest and least polar members are the ones most likely to be gases. With relatively few exceptions, however, compounds with more than about five atoms from period 2 or below are too heavy to exist as gases under normal conditions.



Dimethyl ether

Note the Pattern

Gaseous substances often contain covalent or polar covalent bonds, exist as nonpolar or slightly polar molecules, have relatively low molecular masses, and contain five or fewer atoms from periods 1 or 2.

While gases have a wide array of uses, a particularly grim use of a gaseous substance is believed to have been employed by the Persians on the Roman city of Dura in eastern Syria in the third century AD. The Persians dug a tunnel underneath the city wall to enter and conquer the city. Archeological evidence suggests that when the Romans responded with counter-tunnels to stop the siege, the Persians ignited bitumen and sulfur crystals to produce a dense, poisonous gas. It is likely that bellows or chimneys distributed the toxic fumes. The remains of about 20 Roman soldiers were discovered at the base of the city wall at the entrance to a tunnel that was less than 2 m high and 11 m long. Because it is highly unlikely that the Persians could have slaughtered so many Romans at the entrance to such a confined space, archeologists speculate that the ancient Persians used chemical warfare to successfully conquer the city.

Example 10.1.1

Which compounds would you predict to be gases at room temperature and pressure?

1. cyclohexene
2. lithium carbonate
3. cyclobutane
4. vanadium(III) oxide
5. benzoic acid ($C_6H_5CO_2H$)

Given: compounds

Asked for: physical state

Strategy:

A Decide whether each compound is ionic or covalent. An ionic compound is most likely a solid at room temperature and pressure, whereas a covalent compound may be a solid, a liquid, or a gas.

B Among the covalent compounds, those that are relatively nonpolar and have low molecular masses are most likely gases at room temperature and pressure.

Solution:

A Lithium carbonate is Li_2CO_3, containing Li^+ and CO_3^{2-} ions, and vanadium(III) oxide is V_2O_3, containing V^{3+} and O^{2-} ions. Both are primarily ionic compounds that are expected to be solids. The remaining three compounds are all covalent.

B Benzoic acid has more than four carbon atoms and is polar, so it is not likely to be a gas. Both cyclohexene and cyclobutane are essentially nonpolar molecules, but cyclobutane (C_4H_8) has a significantly lower molecular mass than cyclohexene (C_6H_{10}), which again has more than four carbon atoms. We therefore predict that cyclobutane is most likely a gas at room temperature and pressure, while cyclohexene is a liquid. In fact, with a boiling point of only 12°C, compared to 83°C for cyclohexene, cyclobutane is indeed a gas at room temperature and pressure.

Exercise

Which compounds would you predict to be gases at room temperature and pressure?

1. *n*-butanol
2. ammonium fluoride (NH_4F)

3. ClF
4. ethylene oxide



5. $HClO_4$

Answer: c; d

Summary

Bulk matter can exist in three states: gas, liquid, and solid. Gases have the lowest density of the three, are highly compressible, and fill their containers completely. Elements that exist as gases at room temperature and pressure are clustered on the right side of the periodic table; they occur as either monatomic gases (the noble gases) or diatomic molecules (some halogens, N_2, O_2). Many inorganic and organic compounds with four or fewer nonhydrogen atoms are also gases at room temperature and pressure. All gaseous substances are characterized by weak interactions between the constituent molecules or atoms.

Key Takeaway

- The molecules in gaseous substances often contain covalent or polar covalent bonds, are nonpolar or slightly polar molecules, and have relatively low molecular masses.

Contributors and Attributions

- Anonymous

Modified by Joshua Halpern

This page titled 3.5: Gaseous Elements and Compounds is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

3.6: Gas Pressure

Learning Objectives

- To describe and measure the pressure of a gas.

At the macroscopic level, a complete physical description of a sample of a gas requires four quantities: *temperature* (expressed in kelvins), *volume* (expressed in liters), *amount* (expressed in moles), and *pressure* (in atmospheres). As we explain in this section and Section 10.3, these variables are *not* independent. If we know the values of any *three* of these quantities, we can calculate the fourth and thereby obtain a full physical description of the gas. Temperature, volume, and amount have been discussed in previous chapters. We now discuss pressure and its units of measurement.

Units of Pressure

Any object, whether it is your computer, a person, or a sample of gas, exerts a force on any surface with which it comes in contact. The air in a balloon, for example, exerts a force against the interior surface of the balloon, and a liquid injected into a mold exerts a force against the interior surface of the mold, just as a chair exerts a force against the floor because of its mass and the effects of gravity. If the air in a balloon is heated, the increased kinetic energy of the gas eventually causes the balloon to burst because of the increased pressure(*P*)The amount of force (F)(A)P = F/A of the gas, the force (*F*) per unit area (*A*) of surface:

$$P = \frac{F}{A} \tag{10.2.1}$$

Pressure is dependent on *both* the force exerted *and* the size of the area to which the force is applied. We know from Equation 10.2.1 that applying the same force to a smaller area produces a higher pressure. When we use a hose to wash a car, for example, we can increase the pressure of the water by reducing the size of the opening of the hose with a thumb.

The units of pressure are derived from the units used to measure force and area. In the English system, the units of force are pounds and the units of area are square inches, so we often see pressure expressed in pounds per square inch (lb/in^2, or psi), particularly among engineers. For scientific measurements, however, the SI units for force are preferred. The SI unit for pressure, derived from the SI units for force (newtons) and area (square meters), is the newton per square meter (N/m^2), which is called the pascal (Pa)The SI unit for pressure. The pascal is newtons per square meter: N/m^2, after the French mathematician Blaise Pascal (1623–1662):

$$1\ Pa = 1\ N/m^2 \tag{10.2.1}$$

To convert from pounds per square inch to pascals, multiply psi by 6894.757 [1 Pa = 1 psi (6894.757)].

Blaise Pascal (1623–1662)

In addition to his talents in mathematics (he invented modern probability theory), Pascal did research in physics and was an author and a religious philosopher as well. His accomplishments include invention of the first syringe and the first digital calculator and development of the principle of hydraulic pressure transmission now used in brake systems and hydraulic lifts.

Example 10.2.1

Assuming a paperback book has a mass of 2.00 kg, a length of 27.0 cm, a width of 21.0 cm, and a thickness of 4.5 cm, what pressure does it exert on a surface if it is

1. lying flat?
2. standing on edge in a bookcase?

Given: mass and dimensions of object

Asked for: pressure

Strategy:

A Calculate the force exerted by the book and then compute the area that is in contact with a surface.

B Substitute these two values into Equation 10.2.1 to find the pressure exerted on the surface in each orientation.

Solution:

The force exerted by the book does *not* depend on its orientation. Recall from Section 9.1 that the force exerted by an object is $F = ma$, where m is its mass and a is its acceleration. In Earth's gravitational field, the acceleration is due to gravity (9.8067 m/s^2 at

Earth's surface). In SI units, the force exerted by the book is therefore

$F = ma$ = (2.00 kg)(9.8067 m/s^2) = 19.6 (kg·m)/s^2 = 19.6 N

1. **A** We calculated the force as 19.6 N. When the book is lying flat, the area is (0.270 m)(0.210 m) = 0.0567 m^2. **B** The pressure exerted by the text lying flat is thus $P = \dfrac{19.6\ N}{0.0567\ m^2} = 3.46 \times 10^2\ Pa$
2. **A** If the book is standing on its end, the force remains the same, but the area decreases:
   $(21.0\ cm)\,(4.5\ cm) = (0.210\ m)\,(0.045\ m) = 9.5 \times \times 10^{-3}\ m^2$

   B The pressure exerted by the book in this position is thus

   $$P = \frac{19.6\ N}{9.5 \times 10^{-3}\ m^2} = 2.1 \times 10^3\ Pa$$

   Thus the *pressure* exerted by the book varies by a factor of about six depending on its orientation, although the *force* exerted by the book does not vary.

Exercise

What pressure does a 60.0 kg student exert on the floor

1. when standing flat-footed in the laboratory in a pair of tennis shoes (the surface area of the soles is approximately 180 cm^2)?
2. as she steps heel-first onto a dance floor wearing high-heeled shoes (the area of the heel = 1.0 cm^2)?

Answers:

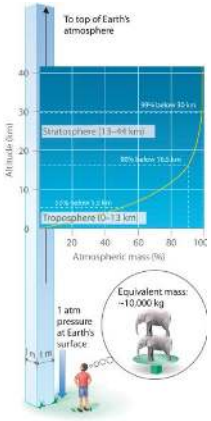
1. 3.27 × 10^4 Pa (4.74 lb/in.^{2})
2. 5.9 × 10^6 Pa (8.5 × 10^2 lb/in.^{2})

Atmospheric Pressure

Just as we exert pressure on a surface because of gravity, so does our atmosphere. We live at the bottom of an ocean of gases that becomes progressively less dense with increasing altitude. Approximately 99% of the mass of the atmosphere lies within 30 km of Earth's surface, and half of it is within the first 5.5 km (Figure 9.3). Every point on Earth's surface experiences a net pressure called *atmospheric pressure*. The pressure exerted by the atmosphere is considerable: a 1.0 m^2 column, measured from sea level to the top of the atmosphere, has a mass of about 10,000 kg, which gives a pressure of about 100 kPa:

$$Pressure = \frac{\left(1.0 \times 10^4\ kg\right)\left(9,807\ m\!\!\not{s}/s^2\right)}{1.0\ m^{\not{2}}} = 0.98 \times 10^5\ Pa = 98\ kPa \qquad (10.2.3)$$

Figure 10.2.1 Atmospheric Pressure



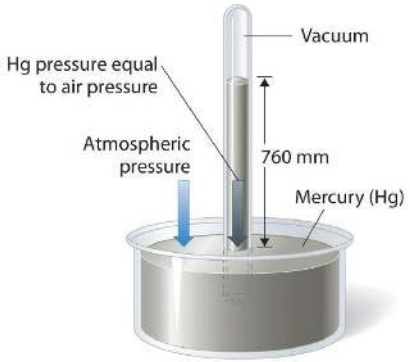
Each square meter of Earth's surface supports a column of air that is more than 200 km high and weighs about 10,000 kg at Earth's surface, resulting in a pressure at the surface of 1.01 × 10^5 N/m^2. This corresponds to a pressure of 101 kPa = 760 mmHg = 1 atm.

In English units, this is about 14 lb/in.^{2}, but we are so accustomed to living under this pressure that we never notice it. Instead, what we notice are *changes* in the pressure, such as when our ears pop in fast elevators in skyscrapers or in airplanes during rapid

changes in altitude. We make use of atmospheric pressure in many ways. We can use a drinking straw because sucking on it removes air and thereby reduces the pressure inside the straw. The atmospheric pressure pushing down on the liquid in the glass then forces the liquid up the straw.

Atmospheric pressure can be measured using a barometer (a device used to measure atmospheric pressure), which was invented in 1643 by one of Galileo's students, Evangelista Torricelli (1608–1647). A barometer may be constructed from a long glass tube that is closed at one end. It is filled with mercury and placed upside down in a dish of mercury without allowing any air to enter the tube. Some of the mercury will run out of the tube, but a relatively tall column remains inside (Figure 10.2.1). Why doesn't all the mercury run out? Gravity is certainly exerting a downward force on the mercury in the tube, but it is opposed by the pressure of the atmosphere pushing down on the surface of the mercury in the dish, which has the net effect of pushing the mercury up into the tube. Because there is no air above the mercury inside the tube in a properly filled barometer (it contains a *vacuum*), there is no pressure pushing down on the column. Thus the mercury runs out of the tube until the pressure exerted by the mercury column itself exactly balances the pressure of the atmosphere. Under normal weather conditions at sea level, the two forces are balanced when the top of the mercury column is approximately 760 mm above the level of the mercury in the dish, as shown in Figure 10.2.2 This value varies with meteorological conditions and altitude. In Denver, Colorado, for example, at an elevation of about 1 mile, or 1609 m (5280 ft), the height of the mercury column is 630 mm rather than 760 mm.

Figure 10.2.2 A Mercury Barometer



The pressure exerted by the atmosphere on the surface of the pool of mercury supports a column of mercury in the tube that is about 760 mm tall. Because the boiling point of mercury is quite high (356.73°C), there is very little mercury vapor in the space above the mercury column.

Mercury barometers have been used to measure atmospheric pressure for so long that they have their own unit for pressure: the millimeter of mercury (mmHg) often called the torr (a unit of pressure). One torr is the same as 1 mmHg, after Torricelli. Standard atmospheric pressure is the atmospheric pressure required to support a column of mercury exactly 760 mm tall; this pressure is also referred to as 1 atmosphere (atm). Also referred to as standard atmospheric pressure, it is the atmospheric pressure required to support a column of mercury exactly 760 mm tall. These units are also related to the pascal as follows:

$$1\ atm = 760\ mmHg = 760\ torr = 1.01325 \times \times 10^5\ Pa = 101.325\ kPa \tag{10.2.4}$$

Thus a pressure of 1 atm equals 760 mmHg exactly and is approximately equal to 100 kPa.

While mercury barometers were the workhorses for pressure measurement into the last quarter of the 20th century, they have been replaced by electronic gauges. One motivation was safety. Mercury and mercury vapor are heavy metal poisons.

The oldest and simplest replacement for mercury barometers are aneroid gauges. The simplest version of an aneroid gauge (Figure 6.2.3) has a thin metal diaphram which expands and contracts. The diaphragm is connected to a dial by a mechanical linkage. Aneroid gauges can either be absolute or differential. Differential aneroid gauges compare the pressure in the gauge housing to that being measured. A common use for aneroid gauges was airplane altimeters.

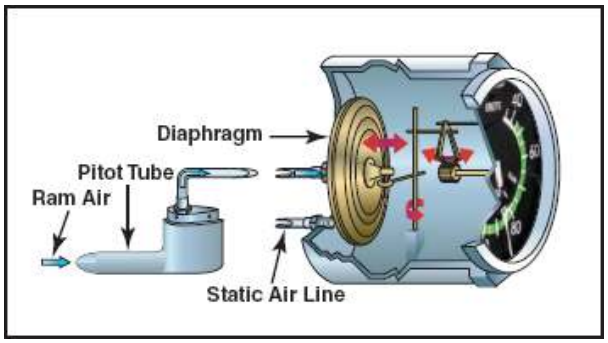


Figure 6.2.2 An Aneroid Barometer *An Aneroid Barometer uses the expansion/contraction of a metal diaphragm to move the indicator dial. This drawing from the Wikipedia shows a simple aneroid barometer used for an airplane altimeter.*

Most modern pressure sensors are based on strain gauge which convert pressure into a strain on a semiconductor element. The strain is converted into an electrical signal by the piezoelectric effect as a change in resistance monitored by a resistance bridge. Alternatively pressure is related to the change in frequency of a quartz crystal oscillator. Modern balances are also based on this later principle.

A very accurate type of pressure sensor uses a metal diaphragm as one part of a capacitor. As the pressure changes the diaphragm moves altering the capacitance. Handbooks are available from sensor manufacturers with details including OMEGA and WIKA.

Below atmospheric pressures another type of gauge is used based on measuring temperature change of a hot wire as a function of pressure. This is best suited to pressures below atmospheric. Older types called thermocouple or Pirani gauges measure only up to a few Torr. Modern variations called convection gauges can measure up to atmospheric pressure

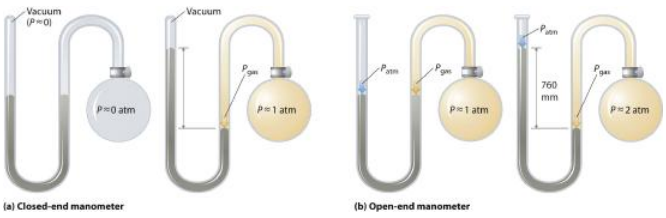
A summary of the various types of pressure gauge in use today can be found in a technical note at the Kurt Lesker site

Pressure gauges specify whether the measurement is absolute (relative to zero pressure) or gauge (relative to the standard atmosphere). One must be careful about which kind a gauge is when buying or using one..

Manometers

Barometers measure atmospheric pressure, but manometers measure the pressures of samples of gases contained in an apparatus. The key feature of a manometer is a U-shaped tube containing mercury (or occasionally another nonvolatile liquid). A closed-end manometer is shown schematically in part (a) in Figure 10.2.3. When the bulb contains no gas (i.e., when its interior is a near vacuum), the heights of the two columns of mercury are the same because the space above the mercury on the left is a near vacuum (it contains only traces of mercury vapor). If a gas is released into the bulb on the right, it will exert a pressure on the mercury in the right column, and the two columns of mercury will no longer be the same height. The *difference* between the heights of the two columns is equal to the pressure of the gas.

Figure 10.2.3 The Two Types of Manometer



(a) In a closed-end manometer, the space above the mercury column on the left (the reference arm) is essentially a vacuum (P ≈ 0), and the difference in the heights of the two columns gives the pressure of the gas contained in the bulb directly. (b) In an open-end manometer, the left (reference) arm is open to the atmosphere (P ≈ 1 atm), and the difference in the heights of the two columns gives the difference between atmospheric pressure and the pressure of the gas in the bulb.

If the tube is open to the atmosphere instead of closed, as in the open-end manometer shown in part (b) in Figure 10.2.3, then the two columns of mercury have the same height only if the gas in the bulb has a pressure equal to the atmospheric pressure. If the gas in the bulb has a *higher* pressure, the mercury in the open tube will be forced up by the gas pushing down on the mercury in the

other arm of the U-shaped tube. The pressure of the gas in the bulb is therefore the sum of the atmospheric pressure (measured with a barometer) and the difference in the heights of the two columns. If the gas in the bulb has a pressure *less* than that of the atmosphere, then the height of the mercury will be greater in the arm attached to the bulb. In this case, the pressure of the gas in the bulb is the atmospheric pressure minus the difference in the heights of the two columns.

Example 10.2.3

Suppose you want to construct a closed-end manometer to measure gas pressures in the range 0.000–0.200 atm. Because of the toxicity of mercury, you decide to use water rather than mercury. How tall a column of water do you need? (At 25°C, the density of water is 0.9970 g/cm^3; the density of mercury is 13.53 g/cm^3.)

Given: pressure range and densities of water and mercury

Asked for: column height

Strategy:

A Calculate the height of a column of mercury corresponding to 0.200 atm in millimeters of mercury. This is the height needed for a mercury-filled column.

B From the given densities, use a proportion to compute the height needed for a water-filled column.

Solution:

A In millimeters of mercury, a gas pressure of 0.200 atm is

$$P = \left(0.200 \ \cancel{atm}\right)\left(\frac{760\ mmHg}{1\ \cancel{atm}}\right) = 152\ mmHg$$

Using a mercury manometer, you would need a mercury column at least 152 mm high.

B Because water is less dense than mercury, you need a *taller* column of water to achieve the same pressure as a given column of mercury. The height needed for a water-filled column corresponding to a pressure of 0.200 atm is proportional to the ratio of the density of mercury (d_{Hg})(d_{H2O})

$$\left(height_{H_2O}\right)\left(d_{H_2O}\right) = \left(height_{Hg}\right)\left(d_{Hg}\right)$$

$$height_{H_2O} = \left(height_{Hg}\right)\frac{d_{Hg}}{d_{H_2O}}$$

$$= \left(152\ mmHg\right)\left(\frac{13.53\ \ g/\cancel{cm^2}}{0.9970\ \ g/\cancel{cm^2}}\right)$$

$$= 2.06 \times 10^3\ mm\ H_2O$$

This answer makes sense: it takes a taller column of a less dense liquid to achieve the same pressure.

Exercise

Suppose you want to design a barometer to measure atmospheric pressure in an environment that is always hotter than 30°C. To avoid using mercury, you decide to use gallium, which melts at 29.76°C; the density of liquid gallium at 25°C is 6.114 g/cm^3. How tall a column of gallium do you need if P = 1.00 atm?

Answer: 1.68 m

The answer to Example 4 also tells us the maximum depth of a farmer's well if a simple suction pump will be used to get the water out. If a column of water 2.06 m high corresponds to 0.200 atm, then 1.00 atm corresponds to a column height of

$$\frac{h}{2.06\ m} = \frac{1.00\ \cancel{atm}}{0.200\ \cancel{atm}}$$

$$h = 10.3\ m$$

A suction pump is just a more sophisticated version of a straw: it creates a vacuum above a liquid and relies on atmospheric pressure to force the liquid up a tube. If 1 atm pressure corresponds to a 10.3 m (33.8 ft) column of water, then it is physically impossible for atmospheric pressure to raise the water in a well higher than this. Until electric pumps were invented to push water mechanically from greater depths, this factor greatly limited where people could live because obtaining water from wells deeper than about 33 ft was difficult.

Summary

Four quantities must be known for a complete physical description of a sample of a gas: *temperature*, *volume*, *amount*, and *pressure*. **Pressure** is force per unit area of surface; the SI unit for pressure is the **pascal (Pa)**, defined as 1 newton per square meter (N/m^2). The pressure exerted by an object is proportional to the force it exerts and inversely proportional to the area on which the force is exerted. The pressure exerted by Earth's atmosphere, called *atmospheric pressure*, is about 101 kPa or 14.7 $lb/in.^2$ at sea level. Atmospheric pressure can be measured with a **barometer**, a closed, inverted tube filled with mercury. The height of the mercury column is proportional to atmospheric pressure, which is often reported in units of **millimeters of mercury (mmHg)**, also called **torr**. **Standard atmospheric pressure**, the pressure required to support a column of mercury 760 mm tall, is yet another unit of pressure: 1 **atmosphere (atm)**. A **manometer** is an apparatus used to measure the pressure of a sample of a gas.

Key Takeaways

- Pressure is defined as the force exerted per unit area; it can be measured using a barometer or manometer.

Key Equation

Definition of pressure

Equation 10.2.1: $P = F/A$

Contributors and Attributions

- Anonymous

Modified by Joshua Halpern

This page titled 3.6: Gas Pressure is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

3.7: The Ideal Gas Law

Learning Objectives

- To use the ideal gas law to describe the behavior of a gas.

Motivating the Ideal Gas Law

In a gas, molecules freely move, filling any volume that they occupy. The kinetic energy of the molecules greatly exceeds any potential energy of attraction or repulsion between molecules and the size of the molecules are miniscule compared to the average space between them. Contrast this with solids, where the molecules are held in place by the attractive forces and the comparatively small kinetic energy only results in the molecules jiggling in place when thermally excited. Again, in a solid, the molecules are packed so closely together that the volume of the solid is essentially that of the sum of the molecular volumes of all of the molecules in it. Liquids represent a situation where molecular attraction and kinetic energy are balanced and the spacing between molecules is higher than in solids but much less than in gases.

At high temperatures and low pressures, where the kinetic energy and the spacing between molecules are both large, one may neglect both the miniscule attractive forces and molecular volume. Under such conditions the properties of the gas, the pressure, P, volume, V, number of moles, n, and the temperature, T are independent of the mixture of molecules in the gas. In that limit the behavior of the gas is called ideal, and governed by the ideal gas law

No gases are truly ideal, but while no model is perfect, some are useful, and under most commonly encountered conditions, the ideal gas law is very useful indeed to describe the behavior of gases. It is also easy to predict that the conditions where the ideal gas law would have trouble describing the behavior of a gas would be low temperature (small molecular kinetic energy) and high pressure (little space between molecules). The behavior of gases under such conditions becomes increasingly like that of liquids and will be discussed in the next chapter.

The Ideal Gas Law

The ideal gas law

$$PV = nRT \tag{10.3.1}$$

relates the pressure, volume, temperature and number of moles in a gas to each other. R is a constant called the gas constant. The ideal gas law is what is called an equation of state because it is a complete description of the gas's thermodynamic state. No other information is needed to calculate any other thermodynamic variable, and, since the equation relates four variables, a knowledge of any three of them is sufficient.

Pressure, volume and number of moles, the latter sometime called extent, share an important property, they can never be negative. What would a negative volume be, or an absolute negative pressure or extent? The concepts do not even exist. This means that temperature in the ideal gas law is similarly limited. **It can never be negative.**

We can determine what zero temperature on the ideal gas scale is by holding the number of moles and the pressure constant and extrapolate the temperature measured in Celcius to what its value would be at zero volume

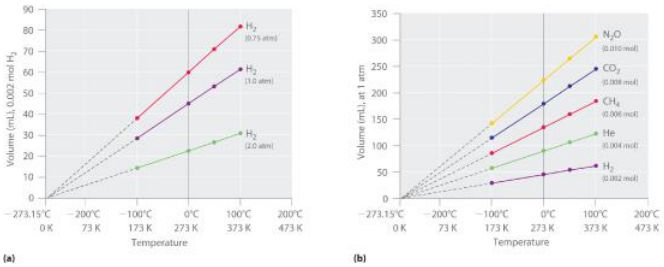


Figure 10.3.1 *The Relationship between Volume and Temperature (a) In these plots of volume versus temperature for equal-sized samples of H_2 at three different pressures, the solid lines show the experimentally measured data down to −100°C, and the broken lines show the extrapolation of the data to V = 0. The temperature scale is given in both degrees Celsius and Kelvin. Although the slopes of the lines decrease with increasing pressure, all of the lines extrapolate to the same temperature at V = 0 (−273.15°C = 0 K). (b) In these plots of volume versus temperature for different amounts of selected gases at 1 atm pressure, all the plots extrapolate to a value of V = 0 at −273.15°C, regardless of the identity or the amount of the gas.*

The extrapolated temperature corresponding to zero volume at constant pressure and amount is -273.15 °C, which is called absolute zero because no lower temperature is possible (unless, of course you can come up with a negative volumes, but you cannot). For convenience we set the degrees on the Kelvin scale to the size of the degree on the Celcius scale. In other words

$$1\ K = 1^oC \tag{10.3.2}$$

Note the Pattern

Before we can use the ideal gas law, however, we need to know the value of the gas constant *R*. Its form depends on the units used for the other quantities in the expression. If *V* is expressed in liters (L), *P* in atmospheres (atm), *T* in kelvins (K), and *n* in moles (mol), then

$$R = 0.08206\ L \cdot atm/\left(K \cdot \cdot mol\right) \tag{10.3.3}$$

Because the product *PV* has the units of energy, as described in Section 8.1 and Essential Skills 4 (Section 9.9), *R* can also have units of J/(K·mol) or cal/(K·mol):

$$R = 8.3145\ J/\left(K \cdot mol\right) = 1.9872 cal/\left(K \cdot mol\right) \tag{10.3.4}$$

Scientists have chosen a particular set of conditions to use as a reference: 0°C (273.15 K) and 1 atm pressure, referred to as standard temperature and pressure (STP) The conditions 0°C (273.15 K) and 1 atm pressure for a gas.

This can be confusing because as discussed in the previous chapter,the standard state for enthalpies of reaction and formation is 298K. Be sure to use the appropriate standard state for enthalpies (298 K) and gas problems (273.15 K)

We can calculate the volume of 1.000 mol of an ideal gas under standard conditions using the variant of the ideal gas law given in Equation 10.3.1:

$$V = \frac{nRT}{P} = \frac{\left(1.000\ \cancel{mol}\right)\left(0.082057\ L \cdot \cancel{atm}/\ \cancel{K} \cdot \cancel{mol}\right)\left(273.15\ \cancel{K}\right)}{1.000\ \cancel{atm}} = 22.31\ L \tag{10.3.5}$$

Thus the volume of 1 mol of an ideal gas at 0°C and 1 atm pressure is 22.41 L, approximately equivalent to the volume of three basketballs. The quantity 22.41 L is called the standard molar volumeThe volume of 1 mol of an ideal gas at STP (0°C and 1 atm pressure), which is 22.41 L. of an ideal gas. The molar volumes of several real gases at STP are given in Table 10.3.1, which shows that the deviations from ideal gas behavior are quite small. Thus the ideal gas law does a good job of approximating the behavior of real gases at STP.

Table 10.3.1 *Molar Volumes of Selected Gases at Standard Temperature (0°C) and Pressure (1 atm)*

Gas	Molar Volume (L)
He	22.434
Ar	22.397
H_2	22.433
N_2	22.402
O_2	22.397
CO_2	22.260
NH_3	22.079

Applying the Ideal Gas Law

The ideal gas law allows us to calculate the value of the fourth variable for a gaseous sample if we know the values of any three of the four variables (*P*, *V*, *T*, and *n*). It also allows us to predict the *final state* of a sample of a gas (i.e., its final temperature, pressure, volume, and amount) following any changes in conditions if the parameters (*P*, *V*, *T*, and *n*) are specified for an *initial state*. Some applications are illustrated in the following examples. The approach used throughout is always to start with the same equation—the ideal gas law—and then determine which quantities are given and which need to be calculated. Let's begin with simple cases in which we are given three of the four parameters needed for a complete physical description of a gaseous sample.

Example 10.3.1

The balloon that Charles used for hisflight in 1783 was destroyed, but we can estimate that its volume was 31,150 L (1100 ft^3), given the dimensions recorded at the time. If the temperature at ground level was 86°F (30°C) and the atmospheric pressure was 745 mmHg, how many moles of hydrogen gas were needed to fill the balloon?

Given: volume, temperature, and pressure

Asked for: amount of gas

Strategy:

A Solve the ideal gas law for the unknown quantity, in this case *n*.

B Make sure that all quantities are given in units that are compatible with the units of the gas constant. If necessary, convert them to the appropriate units, insert them into the equation you have derived, and then calculate the number of moles of hydrogen gas needed.

Solution:

A We are given values for *P*, *T*, and *V* and asked to calculate *n*. If we solve the ideal gas law (Equation 10.3.1) for *n*, we obtain

$$n = \frac{PV}{RT}$$

B *P* and *T* are given in units that are not compatible with the units of the gas constant [*R* = 0.082057 (L·atm)/(K·mol)]. We must therefore convert the temperature to kelvins and the pressure to atmospheres:

$$745 \ \cancel{\text{mmHg}} \times \frac{1 \text{ atm}}{760 \ \cancel{\text{mmHg}}} = 0.980 \text{ atm} \tag{3.7.1}$$

$$T = 273 + 30 = 303\text{K} \tag{3.7.2}$$

Substituting these values into the expression we derived for *n*, we obtain

$$n = \frac{PV}{RT} = \frac{0.980 \ \cancel{\text{atm}} \times 31150 \ \cancel{\text{L}}}{0.08206 \dfrac{\cancel{\text{atm}} \cdot \cancel{\text{L}}}{\text{mol} \cdot \cancel{\text{K}}} \times 303 \ \cancel{\text{K}}} = 1.23 \times 10^3 \text{ mol} \tag{3.7.3}$$

Exercise

Suppose that an “empty” aerosol spray-paint can has a volume of 0.406 L and contains 0.025 mol of a propellant gas such as CO_2. What is the pressure of the gas at 25°C?

Answer: 1.5 atm

In Example 5, we were given three of the four parameters needed to describe a gas under a particular set of conditions, and we were asked to calculate the fourth. We can also use the ideal gas law to calculate the effect of *changes* in any of the specified conditions on any of the other parameters, as shown in Example 6.

Using the Ideal Gas Law to Calculate Gas Densities and Molar Masses

The ideal gas law can also be used to calculate molar masses of gases from experimentally measured gas densities. To see how this is possible, we first rearrange the ideal gas law to obtain

$$\frac{n}{V} = \frac{P}{RT} \tag{10.3.6}$$

The left side has the units of moles per unit volume (mol/L). The number of moles of a substance equals its mass (*m*, in grams) divided by its molar mass (*M*, in grams per mole):

$$n = \frac{m}{M} \tag{10.3.7}$$

Substituting this expression for *n* into Equation 10.4.12 gives

$$\frac{m}{MV} = \frac{P}{RT} \tag{10.3.8}$$

Because m/V is the density d of a substance, we can replace m/V by d and rearrange to give

$$d = \frac{m}{V} = \frac{MP}{RT} \tag{10.3.9}$$

The distance between particles in gases is large compared to the size of the particles, so their densities are much lower than the densities of liquids and solids. Consequently, gas density is usually measured in grams per liter (g/L) rather than grams per milliliter (g/mL).

Example 10.3.2

Calculate the density of butane at 25°C and a pressure of 750 mmHg.

Given: compound, temperature, and pressure

Asked for: density

Strategy:

A Calculate the molar mass of butane and convert all quantities to appropriate units for the value of the gas constant.

B Substitute these values into Equation 10.3.9 to obtain the density.

Solution:

A The molar mass of butane (C_4H_{10}) is

\((4)(12.011) + (10)(1.0079) = 58.123 \; g/mol \notag \)

Using 0.082057 (L·atm)/(K·mol) for R means that we need to convert the temperature from degrees Celsius to kelvins (T = 25 + 273 = 298 K) and the pressure from millimeters of mercury to atmospheres:

$$P = 750 \text{ mmHg} \times \frac{1 \text{ atm}}{760 \text{ mmHg}} = 0.987 \text{ atm}$$

B Substituting these values into Equation 10.3.9 gives

$$d = \frac{58.123 \text{ g/mol} \times 0.987 \text{ atm}}{0.08206 \frac{\text{L} \cdot \text{atm}}{\text{K} \cdot \text{mol}} \times 298 \text{ K}} = 2.35 \text{ g/L}$$

Exercise

Radon (Rn) is a radioactive gas formed by the decay of naturally occurring uranium in rocks such as granite. It tends to collect in the basements of houses and poses a significant health risk if present in indoor air. Many states now require that houses be tested for radon before they are sold. Calculate the density of radon at 1.00 atm pressure and 20°C and compare it with the density of nitrogen gas, which constitutes 80% of the atmosphere, under the same conditions to see why radon is found in basements rather than in attics.

Answer: radon, 9.23 g/L; N_2, 1.17 g/L

A common use of Equation 10.3.9 is to determine the molar mass of an unknown gas by measuring its density at a known temperature and pressure. This method is particularly useful in identifying a gas that has been produced in a reaction, and it is not difficult to carry out. A flask or glass bulb of known volume is carefully dried, evacuated, sealed, and weighed empty. It is then filled with a sample of a gas at a known temperature and pressure and re-weighed. The difference in mass between the two readings is the mass of the gas. The volume of the flask is usually determined by weighing the flask when empty and when filled with a liquid of known density such as water. The use of density measurements to calculate molar masses is illustrated in Example 10.

Example 10.3.3

The reaction of a copper penny with nitric acid results in the formation of a red-brown gaseous compound containing nitrogen and oxygen. A sample of the gas at a pressure of 727 mmHg and a temperature of 18°C weighs 0.289 g in a flask with a volume of 157.0 mL. Calculate the molar mass of the gas and suggest a reasonable chemical formula for the compound.

Given: pressure, temperature, mass, and volume

Asked for: molar mass and chemical formula

Strategy:

A Solve Equation 10.3.8 for the molar mass of the gas and then calculate the density of the gas from the information given.

B Convert all known quantities to the appropriate units for the gas constant being used. Substitute the known values into your equation and solve for the molar mass.

C Propose a reasonable empirical formula using the atomic masses of nitrogen and oxygen and the calculated molar mass of the gas.

Solution:

A Solving Equation 10.3.8 for the molar mass gives

$$M = \frac{mRT}{PV} = \frac{dRT}{P}$$

Density is the mass of the gas divided by its volume:

$$d = \frac{m}{V} = \frac{0.289\text{g}}{0.17\text{L}} = 1.84\text{g/L}$$

B We must convert the other quantities to the appropriate units before inserting them into the equation:

$$T = 18 + 273 = 291K$$

$$P = 727\text{mmHg} \times \frac{1\text{atm}}{760\text{mmHg}} = 0.957\text{atm}$$

The molar mass of the unknown gas is thus

$$d = \frac{1.84\text{ g/L} \times 0.08206 \frac{\text{L} \cdot \text{atm}}{\text{K} \cdot \text{mol}} \times 291\text{ K}}{0.957\text{ atm}} = 45.9\text{g/mol}$$

C The atomic masses of N and O are approximately 14 and 16, respectively, so we can construct a list showing the masses of possible combinations:

$$M(\text{NO}) = 14 + 16 = 30\text{ g/mol}$$

$$M(\text{N}_2\text{O}) = (2)(14) + 16 = 44\text{ g/mol}$$

$$M(\text{NO}_2) = 14 + (2)(16) = 46\text{ g/mol}$$

The most likely choice is NO_2 which is in agreement with the data. The red-brown color of smog also results from the presence of NO_2 gas.

Exercise

You are in charge of interpreting the data from an unmanned space probe that has just landed on Venus and sent back a report on its atmosphere. The data are as follows: pressure, 90 atm; temperature, 557°C; density, 58 g/L. The major constituent of the atmosphere (>95%) is carbon. Calculate the molar mass of the major gas present and identify it.

Answer: 44 g/mol; CO_2

Summary

The empirical relationships among the volume, the temperature, the pressure, and the amount of a gas can be combined into the **ideal gas law**, $PV = nRT$. The proportionality constant, R, is called the **gas constant** and has the value 0.08206 (L·atm)/(K·mol), 8.3145 J/(K·mol), or 1.9872 cal/(K·mol), depending on the units used. The ideal gas law describes the behavior of an **ideal gas**, a hypothetical substance whose behavior can be explained quantitatively by the ideal gas law and the kinetic molecular theory of gases. **Standard temperature and pressure (STP)** is 0°C and 1 atm. The volume of 1 mol of an ideal gas at STP is 22.41 L, the **standard molar volume**. All of the empirical gas relationships are special cases of the ideal gas law in which two of the four parameters are held constant. The ideal gas law allows us to calculate the value of the fourth quantity (P, V, T, or n) needed to describe a gaseous sample when the others are known and also predict the value of these quantities following a change in conditions if the original conditions (values of P, V, T, and n) are known. The ideal gas law can also be used to calculate the density of a gas if its molar mass is known or, conversely, the molar mass of an unknown gas sample if its density is measured.

Key Takeaways

- The ideal gas law is derived from empirical relationships among the pressure, the volume, the temperature, and the number of moles of a gas; it can be used to calculate any of the four properties if the other three are known.

Key Equations

Ideal gas law

Equation 10.3.1: $PV = nRT$

where $R = 0.08206 \dfrac{\text{L} \cdot \text{atm}}{\text{K} \cdot \text{mol}} = 8.3145 \dfrac{\text{J}}{\text{K} \cdot \text{mol}}$

Density of a gas

Equation 10.3.9: $d = \dfrac{MP}{RT}$

Contributors and Attributions

- Anonymous

Modified by Joshua Halpern

This page titled 3.7: The Ideal Gas Law is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

3.8: Gas Mixtures

Learning Objectives

- To determine the contribution of each component gas to the total pressure of a mixture of gases.

In our use of the ideal gas law thus far, we have focused entirely on the properties of pure gases with only a single chemical species. But what happens when two or more gases are mixed? In this section, we describe how to determine the contribution of each gas present to the total pressure of the mixture.

Partial Pressures

The ideal gas law *assumes* that all gases behave identically and that their behavior is independent of attractive and repulsive forces. If volume and temperature are held constant, the ideal gas equation can be rearranged to show that the pressure of a sample of gas is directly proportional to the number of moles of gas present:

$$P = n\left(\frac{RT}{V}\right) = n \times \text{const.} \tag{10.5.1}$$

Nothing in the equation depends on the *nature* of the gas—only the amount.

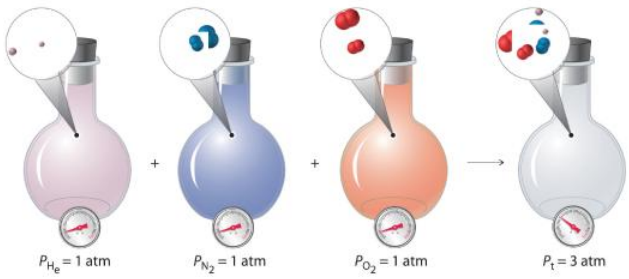
With this assumption, let's suppose we have a mixture of two ideal gases that are present in equal amounts. What is the total pressure of the mixture? Because the pressure depends on only the total number of particles of gas present, the total pressure of the mixture will simply be twice the pressure of either component. More generally, the total pressure exerted by a mixture of gases at a given temperature and volume is the sum of the pressures exerted by each gas alone. Furthermore, if we know the volume, the temperature, and the number of moles of each gas in a mixture, then we can calculate the pressure exerted by each gas individually, which is its partial pressureThe pressure a gas in a mixture would exert if it were the only one present (at the same temperature and volume)., the pressure the gas would exert if it were the only one present (at the same temperature and volume).

To summarize, *the total pressure exerted by a mixture of gases is the sum of the partial pressures of component gases*. This law was first discovered by John Dalton, the father of the atomic theory of matter. It is now known as Dalton's law of partial pressuresA law that states that the total pressure exerted by a mixture of gases is the sum of the partial pressures of component gases.. We can write it mathematically as

$$P_{tot} = P_1 + P_2 + P_3 + P_4 \ldots = \sum_{i=1}^{n} P_i \tag{10.5.2}$$

where P_t is the total pressure and the other terms are the partial pressures of the individual gases (Figure 10.5.1).

Figure 10.5.1 Dalton's Law. The total pressure of a mixture of gases is the sum of the partial pressures of the individual gases.



For a mixture of two ideal gases, A and B, we can write an expression for the total pressure:

$$P_{tot} = P_A + P_B = n_A\left(\frac{RT}{V}\right) + n_B\left(\frac{RT}{V}\right) = (n_A + n_B)\left(\frac{RT}{V}\right) \tag{10.5.3}$$

More generally, for a mixture of *i* components, the total pressure is given by

$$P_{tot} = (P_1 + P_2 + P_3 + \cdots + P_n)\left(\frac{RT}{V}\right) \tag{10.5.4a}$$

$$P_{tot} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} n_i \left(\frac{RT}{V} \right) \tag{10.5.4b}$$

Equation 10.5.4. restates Equation 10.5.3 in a more general form and makes it explicitly clear that, at constant temperature and volume, the pressure exerted by a gas depends on *only* the total number of moles of gas present, whether the gas is a single chemical species or a mixture of dozens or even hundreds of gaseous species. For Equation 10.27 to be valid, the identity of the particles present cannot have an effect. Thus an ideal gas must be one whose properties are not affected by either the size of the particles or their intermolecular interactions because both will vary from one gas to another. The calculation of total and partial pressures for mixtures of gases is illustrated in Example 11.

Example 10.5.1

For reasons that we will examine in Chapter 15, deep-sea divers must use special gas mixtures in their tanks, rather than compressed air, to avoid serious problems, most notably a condition called “the bends.” At depths of about 350 ft, divers are subject to a pressure of approximately 10 atm. A typical gas cylinder used for such depths contains 51.2 g of O_2 and 326.4 g of He and has a volume of 10.0 L. What is the partial pressure of each gas at 20.00°C, and what is the total pressure in the cylinder at this temperature?

Given: masses of components, total volume, and temperature

Asked for: partial pressures and total pressure

Strategy:

A Calculate the number of moles of He and O_2 present.

B Use the ideal gas law to calculate the partial pressure of each gas. Then add together the partial pressures to obtain the total pressure of the gaseous mixture.

Solution:

A The number of moles of He is

$$n_{\text{He}} = \frac{326.4 \text{ g}}{4.003 \text{ g/mol}} = 81.54 \text{ mol}$$

The number of moles of O_2 is

$$n_{\text{O}_2} = \frac{51.2 \text{ g}}{32.00 \text{ g/mol}} = 1.60 \text{ mol}$$

B We can now use the ideal gas law to calculate the partial pressure of each:

$$P_{\text{He}} = \frac{n_{\text{He}}\,RT}{V} = \frac{81.54 \text{ mol} \times 0.08206 \dfrac{\text{atm} \cdot \text{L}}{\text{mol} \cdot \text{K}} \times 293.15 \text{ K}}{10.0 \text{ L}} = 196.2 \text{ atm}$$

$$P_{\text{O}_2} = \frac{n_{\text{O}_2}\,RT}{V} = \frac{1.60 \text{ mol} \times 0.08206 \dfrac{\text{atm} \cdot \text{L}}{\text{mol} \cdot \text{K}} \times 293.15 \text{ K}}{10.0 \text{ L}} = 3.85 \text{ atm}$$

The total pressure is the sum of the two partial pressures:

$$P_{\text{tot}} = P_{\text{He}} + P_{\text{O}_2} = (196.2 + 3.85) \text{ atm} = 200.1 \text{ atm}$$

Exercise

A cylinder of compressed natural gas has a volume of 20.0 L and contains 1813 g of methane and 336 g of ethane. Calculate the partial pressure of each gas at 22.0°C and the total pressure in the cylinder.

Answer: $P(CH_4)$ = 137 atm; $P(C_2H_6)$ = 13.4 atm; P_t = 151 atm.

Mole Fractions of Gas Mixtures

The composition of a gas mixture can be described by the mole fractions of the gases present. The mole fraction (X)The ratio of the number of moles of any component of a mixture to the total number of moles of all species present in the mixture. of any component of a mixture is the ratio of the number of moles of that component to the total number of moles of all the species present in the mixture (n_t):

$$x_A = \frac{\text{moles of A}}{\text{total moles}} = \frac{n_A}{n_{tot}} = \frac{n_A}{n_A + n_B + \cdots} \tag{10.5.6}$$

The mole fraction is a dimensionless quantity between 0 and 1. If X_A = 1.0, then the sample is pure A, not a mixture. If X_A = 0, then no A is present in the mixture. The sum of the mole fractions of all the components present must equal 1.

To see how mole fractions can help us understand the properties of gas mixtures, let's evaluate the ratio of the pressure of a gas A to the total pressure of a gas mixture that contains A. We can use the ideal gas law to describe the pressures of both gas A and the mixture: $P_A = n_A RT/V$ and $P_t = n_t RT/V$. The ratio of the two is thus

$$\frac{P_A}{P_{tot}} = \frac{n_A RT/V}{n_{tot} RT/V} = \frac{n_A}{n_{tot}} = x_A \tag{10.5.7}$$

Rearranging this equation gives

$$P_A = x_A P_{tot} \tag{10.5.8}$$

That is, the partial pressure of any gas in a mixture is the total pressure multiplied by the mole fraction of that gas. This conclusion is a direct result of the ideal gas law, which assumes that all gas particles behave ideally. Consequently, the pressure of a gas in a mixture depends on only the percentage of particles in the mixture that are of that type, not their specific physical or chemical properties. Recall from Chapter 7 (Table 7.6.1) that by volume, Earth's atmosphere is about 78% N_2, 21% O_2, and 0.9% Ar, with trace amounts of gases such as CO_2, H_2O, and others. This means that 78% of the particles present in the atmosphere are N_2; hence the mole fraction of N_2 is 78%/100% = 0.78. Similarly, the mole fractions of O_2 and Ar are 0.21 and 0.009, respectively. Using Equation 10.5.4, we therefore know that the partial pressure of N_2 is 0.78 atm (assuming an atmospheric pressure of exactly 760 mmHg) and, similarly, the partial pressures of O_2 and Ar are 0.21 and 0.009 atm, respectively.

Example 10.5.2

We have just calculated the partial pressures of the major gases in the air we inhale. Experiments that measure the composition of the air we *exhale* yield different results, however. The following table gives the measured pressures of the major gases in both inhaled and exhaled air. Calculate the mole fractions of the gases in exhaled air.

	Inhaled Air (mmHg)	Exhaled Air (mmHg)
P_{N_2}	597	568
P_{O_2}	158	116
P_{H_2O}	0.3	28
P_{CO_2}	5	48
P_{Ar}	8	8
P_t	767	767

Given: pressures of gases in inhaled and exhaled air

Asked for: mole fractions of gases in exhaled air

Strategy:

Calculate the mole fraction of each gas using Equation 10.5.8.

Solution:

The mole fraction of any gas A is given by

$$x_A = \frac{P_A}{P_{tot}}$$

where P_A is the partial pressure of A and P_t is the total pressure. In this case,

$$x_{CO_2} = \frac{48 \text{ mmHg}}{767 \text{ mmHg}} = 0.063$$

The following table gives the values of P_A and X_A for exhaled air.

P_A		X_A
N_2	$\left(568 \ \cancel{mmHg}\right) \frac{1 \ atm}{760 \ \cancel{mmHg}} = 0.747 \ atm$	$\frac{0.747 \ \cancel{atm}}{1.01 \ \cancel{atm}} = 0.740$
O_2	$\left(116 \ \cancel{mmHg}\right) \frac{1 \ atm}{760 \ \cancel{mmHg}} = 0.153 \ atm$	$\frac{0.153 \ \cancel{atm}}{1.01 \ \cancel{atm}} = 0.151$
H_2O	$\left(28 \ \cancel{mmHg}\right) \frac{1 \ atm}{760 \ \cancel{mmHg}} = 0.037 \ atm$	$\frac{0.031 \ \cancel{atm}}{1.01 \ \cancel{atm}} = 0.031$
CO_2	$\left(48 \ \cancel{mmHg}\right) \frac{1 \ atm}{760 \ \cancel{mmHg}} = 0.063 \ atm$	$\frac{0.063 \ \cancel{atm}}{1.01 \ \cancel{atm}} = 0.061$
Ar	$\left(8 \ \cancel{mmHg}\right) \frac{1 \ atm}{760 \ \cancel{mmHg}} = 0.011 \ atm$	$\frac{0.011 \ \cancel{atm}}{1.01 \ \cancel{atm}} = 0.011$

Exercise

We saw in Example 10 that Venus is an inhospitable place, with a surface temperature of 560°C and a surface pressure of 90 atm. The atmosphere consists of about 96% CO_2 and 3% N_2, with trace amounts of other gases, including water, sulfur dioxide, and sulfuric acid. Calculate the partial pressures of CO_2 and N_2.

Answer: $P_{CO_2} = 86$ atm, $P_{N_2} = 2.7$ atm

Summary

The pressure exerted by each gas in a gas mixture (its **partial pressure**) is independent of the pressure exerted by all other gases present. Consequently, the total pressure exerted by a mixture of gases is the sum of the partial pressures of the components (**Dalton's law of partial pressures**). The amount of gas present in a mixture may be described by its partial pressure or its mole fraction. The **mole fraction** of any component of a mixture is the ratio of the number of moles of that substance to the total number of moles of all substances present. In a mixture of gases, the partial pressure of each gas is the product of the total pressure and the mole fraction of that gas.

Key Takeaways

- The partial pressure of each gas in a mixture is proportional to its mole fraction.

Key Equations

Mole fraction

Equation 10.5.7: $X_A = \frac{molesA}{totalmoles} = \frac{n_A}{n_t}$

Relationship between partial pressure and mole fraction

Equation 10.5.8: $P_A = X_A P_t$

Contributors and Attributions

- Anonymous

Modified by Joshua Halpern

Thumbnail from Wikimedia

This page titled 3.8: Gas Mixtures is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

3.9: Kinetic Theory of Gases

Learning Objectives

- State the major concepts behind the kinetic theory of gases.
- Relate the general properties of gases to the kinetic theory.

Gases were among the first substances studied in terms of the modern scientific method, which was developed in the 1600s. It did not take long to recognize that gases all shared certain physical behaviors, suggesting that all gases could be described by one all-encompassing theory. Today, that theory is the **kinetic theory of gases**. The kinetic theory of gases is based on the following statements:

1. Gases consist of tiny particles of matter that are in constant motion.
2. Gas particles are constantly colliding with each other and the walls of a container. These collisions are elastic—that is, there is no net loss of energy from the collisions.
3. Gas particles are separated by large distances, with the size of a gas particle tiny compared to the distances that separate them.
4. There are no interactive forces (i.e., attraction or repulsion) between the particles of a gas.
5. The average speed of gas particles is dependent on the temperature of the gas.

Figure 3.9.1 shows a representation of how we mentally picture the gas phase.

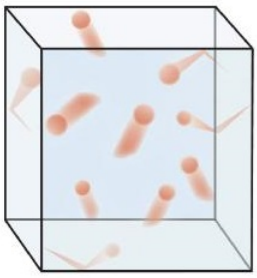


Figure 3.9.1: The Kinetic Theory of Gases. The kinetic theory of gases describes this state of matter as composed of tiny particles in constant motion, with a lot of distance between the particles.

This model of gases explains some of the physical properties of gases. Because most of a gas is empty space, a gas has a low density and can expand or contract under the appropriate influence. The fact that gas particles are in constant motion means that two or more gases will always mix, as the particles from the individual gases move and collide with each other.

An **ideal gas** is a gas that exactly follows the statements of the kinetic theory. Unfortunately, *real gases* are not ideal. Many gases deviate slightly from agreeing perfectly with the kinetic theory of gases. However, most gases adhere to the statements, and the kinetic theory of gases is well accepted by the scientific community.

- The physical behavior of gases is explained by the kinetic theory of gases.
- An ideal gas adheres exactly to the kinetic theory of gases.

This page titled 3.9: Kinetic Theory of Gases is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

- **6.2: Kinetic Theory of Gases** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

3.10: Real Gases

Learning Objectives

- To recognize the differences between the behavior of an ideal gas and a real gas.

The postulates of the kinetic molecular theory of gases ignore both the volume occupied by the molecules of a gas and all interactions between molecules, whether attractive or repulsive. In reality, however, all gases have nonzero molecular volumes. Furthermore, the molecules of real gases interact with one another in ways that depend on the structure of the molecules and therefore differ for each gaseous substance. In this section, we consider the properties of real gases and how and why they differ from the predictions of the ideal gas law. We also examine liquefaction, a key property of real gases that is not predicted by the kinetic molecular theory of gases.

Pressure, Volume, and Temperature Relationships in Real Gases

For an ideal gas, a plot of *PV*/*nRT* versus *P* gives a horizontal line with an intercept of 1 on the *PV*/*nRT* axis. Real gases, however, show significant deviations from the behavior expected for an ideal gas, particularly at high pressures (part (a) in Figure 11.1.1). Only at relatively low pressures (less than 1 atm) do real gases approximate ideal gas behavior (part (b) in Figure 11.1.1). Real gases also approach ideal gas behavior more closely at higher temperatures, as shown in Figure 11.1.2 for N_2. Why do real gases behave so differently from ideal gases at high pressures and low temperatures? Under these conditions, the two basic assumptions behind the ideal gas law—namely, that gas molecules have negligible volume and that intermolecular interactions are negligible—are no longer valid.

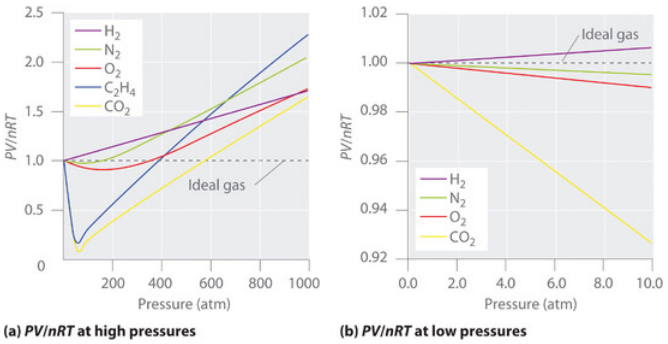


Figure 11.1.1 Real Gases Do Not Obey the Ideal Gas Law, Especially at High Pressures (a) In these plots of *PV*/*nRT* versus *P* at 273 K for several common gases, there are large negative deviations observed for C_2H_4 and CO_2 because they liquefy at relatively low pressures. (b) These plots illustrate the relatively good agreement between experimental data for real gases and the ideal gas law at low pressures.

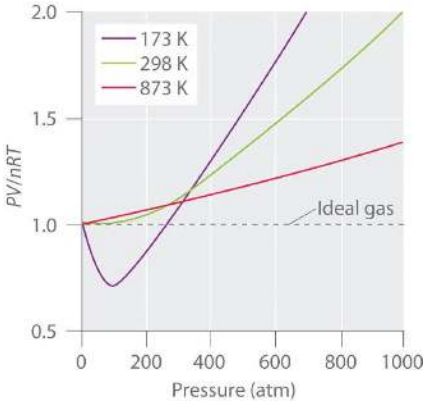


Figure 11.1.2 The Effect of Temperature on the Behavior of Real Gases A plot of *PV*/*nRT* versus *P* for nitrogen gas at three temperatures shows that the approximation to ideal gas behavior becomes better as the temperature increases.

Because the molecules of an ideal gas are assumed to have zero volume, the volume available to them for motion is always the same as the volume of the container. In contrast, the molecules of a real gas have small but measurable volumes. At low pressures,

the gaseous molecules are relatively far apart, but as the pressure of the gas increases, the intermolecular distances become smaller and smaller (Figure 11.1.3). As a result, the volume occupied by the molecules becomes significant compared with the volume of the container. Consequently, the total volume occupied by the gas is greater than the volume predicted by the ideal gas law. Thus at very high pressures, the experimentally measured value of *PV*/*nRT* is greater than the value predicted by the ideal gas law.

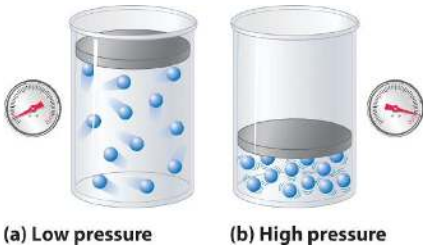


Figure 11.1.3 The Effect of Nonzero Volume of Gas Particles on the Behavior of Gases at Low and High Pressures (a) At low pressures, the volume occupied by the molecules themselves is small compared with the volume of the container. (b) At high pressures, the molecules occupy a large portion of the volume of the container, resulting in significantly decreased space in which the molecules can move.

Moreover, all molecules are attracted to one another by a combination of forces. These forces become particularly important for gases at low temperatures and high pressures, where intermolecular distances are shorter. Attractions between molecules reduce the number of collisions with the container wall, an effect that becomes more pronounced as the number of attractive interactions increases. Because the average distance between molecules decreases, the pressure exerted by the gas on the container wall decreases, and the observed pressure is *less* than expected (Figure 11.1.3). Thus as shown in Figure 11.1.2, at low temperatures, the ratio of *PV*/*nRT* is lower than predicted for an ideal gas, an effect that becomes particularly evident for complex gases and for simple gases at low temperatures. At very high pressures, the effect of nonzero molecular volume predominates. The competition between these effects is responsible for the minimum observed in the *PV*/*nRT* versus *P* plot for many gases.

Note the Pattern

Nonzero molecular volume makes the actual volume *greater* than predicted at high pressures; intermolecular attractions make the pressure *less* than predicted.

At high temperatures, the molecules have sufficient kinetic energy to overcome intermolecular attractive forces, and the effects of nonzero molecular volume predominate. Conversely, as the temperature is lowered, the kinetic energy of the gas molecules decreases. Eventually, a point is reached where the molecules can no longer overcome the intermolecular attractive forces, and the gas liquefies (condenses to a liquid).

The van der Waals Equation

The Dutch physicist Johannes van der Waals (1837–1923; Nobel Prize in Physics, 1910) modified the ideal gas law to describe the behavior of real gases by explicitly including the effects of molecular size and intermolecular forces. In his description of gas behavior, the so-called van der Waals equationA modification of the ideal gas law designed to describe the behavior of real gases by explicitly including the effects of molecular volume and intermolecular forces.,

$$\left(P+\frac{an^2}{V^2}\right)(V-nb)=nRT \tag{11.1.1}$$

a and *b* are empirical constants that are different for each gas. The values of *a* and *b* are listed in Table 11.1.5 for several common gases. The pressure term $P + (an^2/V^2)$ corrects for intermolecular attractive forces that tend to reduce the pressure from that predicted by the ideal gas law. Here, n^2/V^2 represents the concentration of the gas (n/V) squared because it takes two particles to engage in the pairwise intermolecular interactions of the type shown in Figure 10.1.4 . The volume term $V − nb$ corrects for the volume occupied by the gaseous molecules.

Table 11.1.1 van der Waals Constants for Some Common Gases

Gas	*a* (L^2·atm)/mol^2)	*b* (L/mol)
He	0.03410	0.0238

Gas	a ($L^2 \cdot atm/mol^2$)	b (L/mol)
Ne	0.205	0.0167
Ar	1.337	0.032
H_2	0.2420	0.0265
N_2	1.352	0.0387
O_2	1.364	0.0319
Cl_2	6.260	0.0542
NH_3	4.170	0.0371
CH_4	2.273	0.0430
CO_2	3.610	0.0429

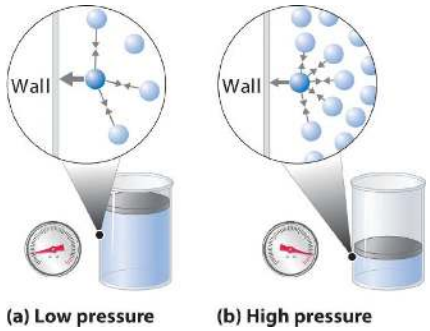


Figure 11.1.4 The Effect of Intermolecular Attractive Forces on the Pressure a Gas Exerts on the Container Walls (a) At low pressures, there are relatively few attractive intermolecular interactions to lessen the impact of the molecule striking the wall of the container, and the pressure is close to that predicted by the ideal gas law. (b) At high pressures, with the average intermolecular distance relatively small, the effect of intermolecular interactions is to lessen the impact of a given molecule striking the container wall, resulting in a lower pressure than predicted by the ideal gas law.

The correction for volume is negative, but the correction for pressure is positive to reflect the effect of each factor on V and P, respectively. Because nonzero molecular volumes produce a measured volume that is *larger* than that predicted by the ideal gas law, we must subtract the molecular volumes to obtain the actual volume available. Conversely, attractive intermolecular forces produce a pressure that is *less* than that expected based on the ideal gas law, so the an^2/V^2 term must be added to the measured pressure to correct for these effects.

Example 11.1.1

You are in charge of the manufacture of cylinders of compressed gas at a small company. Your company president would like to offer a 4.0 L cylinder containing 500 g of chlorine in the new catalog. The cylinders you have on hand have a rupture pressure of 40 atm. Use both the ideal gas law and the van der Waals equation to calculate the pressure in a cylinder at 25°C. Is this cylinder likely to be safe against sudden rupture (which would be disastrous and certainly result in lawsuits because chlorine gas is highly toxic)?

Given: volume of cylinder, mass of compound, pressure, and temperature

Asked for: safety

Strategy:

A Use the molar mass of chlorine to calculate the amount of chlorine in the cylinder. Then calculate the pressure of the gas using the ideal gas law.

B Obtain a and b values for Cl_2 from Table 11.1.1 . Use the van der Waals equation to solve for the pressure of the gas. Based on the value obtained, predict whether the cylinder is likely to be safe against sudden rupture.

Solution:

A We begin by calculating the amount of chlorine in the cylinder using the molar mass of chlorine (70.906 g/mol):

$$\left(500\ \cancel{g}\right)\left(\frac{1\ mol}{70.906\ \cancel{g}} = 7.05 mol\ Cl_2\right)$$

Using the ideal gas law and the temperature in kelvins (298 K), we calculate the pressure:

$$P = \frac{nRT}{V} = \frac{\left(7.05\ \cancel{mol}\right)\left[0.08206\left(\cancel{L}\cdot atm\right)/\left(\cancel{K}\cdot\ \cancel{mol}\right)\right]\left(298\ \cancel{K}\right)}{4.0\ \cancel{L}} = 43\ atm$$

If chlorine behaves like an ideal gas, you have a real problem!

B Now let's use the van der Waals equation with the *a* and *b* values for Cl_2 from Table 11.1.1 . Solving for *P* gives

$$P = \frac{nRT}{V-nb} - \frac{an^2}{V^2}$$

$$= \frac{\left(7.05\ \cancel{mol}\right)\left[0.08206\left(\cancel{L}\cdot atm\right)/\left(\cancel{K}\cdot\ \cancel{mol}\right)\right]\left(298\ \cancel{K}\right)}{4.0\ \cancel{L} - 7.05\ \cancel{mol}\left(0.0542\ \cancel{L}/\ \cancel{mol}\right)} - \frac{6.260^2\ \cancel{L^2}\cdot atm/\ \cancel{mol^2}\left(7.05\ \cancel{mol^2}\right)}{4.0\ \cancel{L^2}}$$

$$= 47.7\ atm - 19.4\ atm = 28\ atm\ (2\ significant\ figures)$$

This pressure is well within the safety limits of the cylinder. The ideal gas law predicts a pressure 15 atm higher than that of the van der Waals equation.

Exercise

A 10.0 L cylinder contains 500 g of methane. Calculate its pressure to two significant figures at 27°C using the

1. ideal gas law.
2. van der Waals equation.

Answer: a. 77 atm; b. 67 atm

Liquefaction of Gases

LiquefactionThe condensation of gases into a liquid form. of gases is the condensation of gases into a liquid form, which is neither anticipated nor explained by the kinetic molecular theory of gases. Both the theory and the ideal gas law predict that gases compressed to very high pressures and cooled to very low temperatures should still behave like gases, albeit cold, dense ones. As gases are compressed and cooled, however, they invariably condense to form liquids, although very low temperatures are needed to liquefy light elements such as helium (for He, 4.2 K at 1 atm pressure).

Liquefaction can be viewed as an extreme deviation from ideal gas behavior. It occurs when the molecules of a gas are cooled to the point where they no longer possess sufficient kinetic energy to overcome intermolecular attractive forces. The precise combination of temperature and pressure needed to liquefy a gas depends strongly on its molar mass and structure, with heavier and more complex molecules usually liquefying at higher temperatures. In general, substances with large van der Waals *a* coefficients are relatively easy to liquefy because large *a* coefficients indicate relatively strong intermolecular attractive interactions. Conversely, small molecules with only light elements have small *a* coefficients, indicating weak intermolecular interactions, and they are relatively difficult to liquefy. Gas liquefaction is used on a massive scale to separate O_2, N_2, Ar, Ne, Kr, and Xe. After a sample of air is liquefied, the mixture is warmed, and the gases are separated according to their boiling points. In Chapter 11.2 , we will consider in more detail the nature of the intermolecular forces that allow gases to liquefy.

Note the Pattern

A large value of *a* indicates the presence of relatively strong intermolecular attractive interactions.

The ultracold liquids formed from the liquefaction of gases are called cryogenic liquids (an ultracold liquid formed from the liquefaction of gases., from the Greek *kryo*, meaning "cold," and *genes*, meaning "producing"). They have applications as refrigerants in both industry and biology. For example, under carefully controlled conditions, the very cold temperatures afforded by liquefied gases such as nitrogen (boiling point = 77 K at 1 atm) can preserve biological materials, such as semen for the artificial

insemination of cows and other farm animals. These liquids can also be used in a specialized type of surgery called *cryosurgery*, which selectively destroys tissues with a minimal loss of blood by the use of extreme cold.



Figure 11.1.5 A Liquid Natural Gas Transport Ship

Moreover, the liquefaction of gases is tremendously important in the storage and shipment of fossil fuels (Figure 11.1.5). Liquefied natural gas (LNG) and liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) are liquefied forms of hydrocarbons produced from natural gas or petroleum reserves. LNG consists mostly of methane, with small amounts of heavier hydrocarbons; it is prepared by cooling natural gas to below about −162°C. It can be stored in double-walled, vacuum-insulated containers at or slightly above atmospheric pressure. Because LNG occupies only about 1/600 the volume of natural gas, it is easier and more economical to transport. LPG is typically a mixture of propane, propene, butane, and butenes and is primarily used as a fuel for home heating. It is also used as a feedstock for chemical plants and as an inexpensive and relatively nonpolluting fuel for some automobiles.

Summary

No real gas exhibits ideal gas behavior, although many real gases approximate it over a range of conditions. Deviations from ideal gas behavior can be seen in plots of *PV*/*nRT* versus *P* at a given temperature; for an ideal gas, *PV*/*nRT* versus *P* = 1 under all conditions. At high pressures, most real gases exhibit larger *PV*/*nRT* values than predicted by the ideal gas law, whereas at low pressures, most real gases exhibit *PV*/*nRT* values close to those predicted by the ideal gas law. Gases most closely approximate ideal gas behavior at high temperatures and low pressures. Deviations from ideal gas law behavior can be described by the **van der Waals equation**, which includes empirical constants to correct for the actual volume of the gaseous molecules and quantify the reduction in pressure due to intermolecular attractive forces. If the temperature of a gas is decreased sufficiently, **liquefaction** occurs, in which the gas condenses into a liquid form. Liquefied gases have many commercial applications, including the transport of large amounts of gases in small volumes and the uses of ultracold **cryogenic liquids**.

Key Takeaways

- Molecular volumes and intermolecular attractions cause the properties of real gases to deviate from those predicted by the ideal gas law.

Key Equation

van der Waals equation

Equation 11.1.1: $\left(p+\frac{an^2}{V^2}\right)(V-b)=nRT$ <mi/>

This page titled 3.10: Real Gases is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

3.11: Unique Properties of Liquids

Learning Objectives

- To describe the unique properties of liquids.

Although you have been introduced to some of the interactions that hold molecules together in a liquid, we have not yet discussed the consequences of those interactions for the bulk properties of liquids. We now turn our attention to three unique properties of liquids that intimately depend on the nature of intermolecular interactions: surface tension, capillary action, and viscosity.

Surface Tension

We stated in Section 11.0 that liquids tend to adopt the shapes of their containers. Why, then, do small amounts of water on a freshly waxed car form raised droplets instead of a thin, continuous film? The answer lies in a property called *surface tension*, which depends on intermolecular forces.

Figure 11.3.1 presents a microscopic view of a liquid droplet. A typical molecule in the *interior* of the droplet is surrounded by other molecules that exert attractive forces from all directions. Consequently, there is no *net* force on the molecule that would cause it to move in a particular direction. In contrast, a molecule on the *surface* experiences a net attraction toward the drop because there are no molecules on the outside to balance the forces exerted by adjacent molecules in the interior. Because a sphere has the smallest possible surface area for a given volume, intermolecular attractive interactions between water molecules cause the droplet to adopt a spherical shape. This maximizes the number of attractive interactions and minimizes the number of water molecules at the surface. Hence raindrops are almost spherical, and drops of water on a waxed (nonpolar) surface, which does not interact strongly with water, form round beads (see the chapter opener photo). A dirty car is covered with a mixture of substances, some of which are polar. Attractive interactions between the polar substances and water cause the water to spread out into a thin film instead of forming beads.

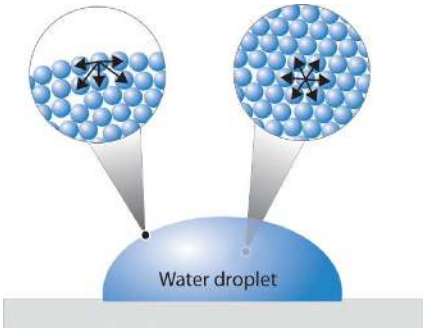


Figure 11.3.1 A Representation of Surface Tension in a Liquid Molecules at the surface of water experience a net attraction to other molecules in the liquid, which holds the surface of the bulk sample together. In contrast, those in the interior experience uniform attractive forces..

The same phenomenon holds molecules together at the surface of a bulk sample of water, almost as if they formed a skin. When filling a glass with water, the glass can be overfilled so that the level of the liquid actually extends *above* the rim. Similarly, a sewing needle or a paper clip can be placed on the surface of a glass of water where it “floats,” even though steel is much denser than water (part (a) in Figure 11.3.2). Many insects take advantage of this property to walk on the surface of puddles or ponds without sinking (part (b) in Figure 11.3.2).

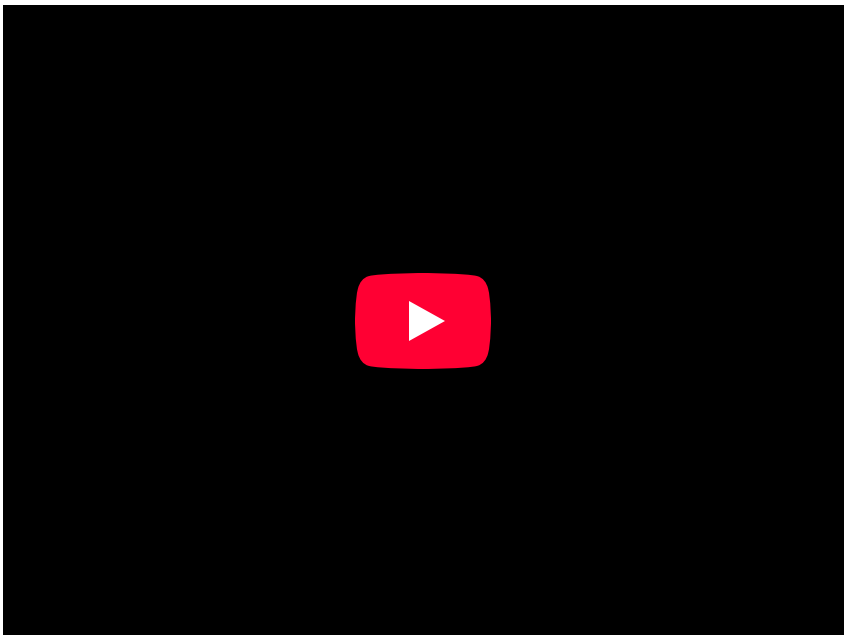
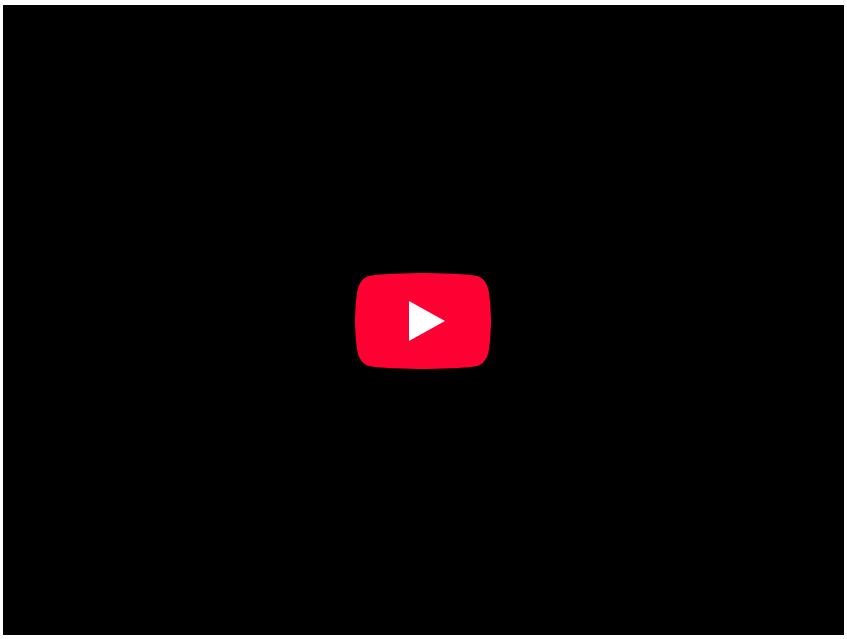




Figure 11.3.2 The Effects of the High Surface Tension of Liquid Water (a) A paper clip can “float” on water because of surface tension (from Christopher Rozitis.





(b) Surface tension also allows insects such as this water strider to “walk on water.”

Such phenomena are manifestations of surface tensionThe energy required to increase the surface area of a liquid by a certain amount. Surface tension is measured in units of energy per area (e.g., J/m^2)., which is defined as the energy required to increase the surface area of a liquid by a specific amount. Surface tension is therefore measured as energy per unit area, such as joules per square meter (J/m^2) or dyne per centimeter (dyn/cm), where 1 dyn = 1×10^{-5} N. The values of the surface tension of some representative liquids are listed in Table 11.3.1. Note the correlation between the surface tension of a liquid and the strength of the intermolecular forces: the stronger the intermolecular forces, the higher the surface tension. For example, water, with its strong intermolecular hydrogen bonding, has one of the highest surface tension values of any liquid, whereas low-boiling-point organic molecules, which have relatively weak intermolecular forces, have much lower surface tensions. Mercury is an apparent anomaly, but its very high surface tension is due to the presence of strong metallic bonding, which we will discuss in more detail in Chapter 12.

Table 11.3.1 Surface Tension, Viscosity, Vapor Pressure (at 25°C Unless Otherwise Indicated), and Normal Boiling Points of Common Liquids

Substance	Surface Tension ($\times 10^{-3}$ J/m^2)	Viscosity (mPa·s)	Vapor Pressure (mmHg)	Normal Boiling Point (°C)
Organic Compounds				
diethyl ether	17	0.22	531	34.6

Substance	Surface Tension ($\times 10^{-3}$ J/m^2)	Viscosity (mPa·s)	Vapor Pressure (mmHg)	Normal Boiling Point (°C)
n-hexane	18	0.30	149	68.7
acetone	23	0.31	227	56.5
ethanol	22	1.07	59	78.3
ethylene glycol	48	16.1	~0.08	198.9
Liquid Elements				
bromine	41	0.94	218	58.8
mercury	486	1.53	0.0020	357
Water				
0°C	75.6	1.79	4.6	—
20°C	72.8	1.00	17.5	—
60°C	66.2	0.47	149	—
100°C	58.9	0.28	760	—

Adding soaps and detergents that disrupt the intermolecular attractions between adjacent water molecules can reduce the surface tension of water. Because they affect the surface properties of a liquid, soaps and detergents are called surface-active agents, or surfactants (Substances [surface-active agents], such as soaps and detergents, that disrupt the attractive intermolecular interactions between molecules of a polar liquid, thereby reducing the surface tension of the liquid). In the 1960s, US Navy researchers developed a method of fighting fires aboard aircraft carriers using “foams,” which are aqueous solutions of fluorinated surfactants. The surfactants reduce the surface tension of water below that of fuel, so the fluorinated solution is able to spread across the burning surface and extinguish the fire. Such foams are now used universally to fight large-scale fires of organic liquids.

Capillary Action

Intermolecular forces also cause a phenomenon called capillary actionThe tendency of a polar liquid to rise against gravity into a small-diameter glass tube., which is the tendency of a polar liquid to rise against gravity into a small-diameter tube (a *capillary*), as shown in Figure 11.3.3 . When a glass capillary is put into a dish of water, water is drawn up into the tube. The height to which the water rises depends on the diameter of the tube and the temperature of the water but *not* on the angle at which the tube enters the water. The smaller the diameter, the higher the liquid rises.





Figure 11.3.3 The Phenomenon of Capillary Action When a capillary is placed in liquid ink the ink rises up into the capillary. The smaller the diameter of the capillary, the higher the water rises. The height of the water does *not* depend on the angle at which the capillary is tilted.

Of course, you can see the same phenomina in anything with narrow channels, like bricks





Figure 11.3.4 The Phenomenon of Capillary Action: Water rises through a brick in a time lapse video

Capillary action is the net result of two opposing sets of forces: cohesive forces (the intermolecular forces that hold a liquid together., which are the intermolecular forces that hold a liquid together), and adhesive forces (the attractive intermolecular forces between a liquid and the substance comprising the surface of a capillary), which are the attractive forces between a liquid and the substance that composes the capillary. Water has both strong adhesion to glass, which contains polar SiOH groups, and strong intermolecular cohesion. When a glass capillary is put into water, the surface tension due to cohesive forces constricts the surface area of water within the tube, while adhesion between the water and the glass creates an upward force that maximizes the amount of glass surface in contact with the water. If the adhesive forces are stronger than the cohesive forces, as is the case for water, then the liquid in the capillary rises to the level where the downward force of gravity exactly balances this upward force. If, however, the cohesive forces are stronger than the adhesive forces, as is the case for mercury and glass, the liquid pulls itself down into the capillary below the surface of the bulk liquid to minimize contact with the glass (part (a) in Figure 11.3.5). The upper surface of a liquid in a tube is called the meniscusThe upper surface of the liquid in a tube., and the shape of the meniscus depends on the relative strengths of the cohesive and adhesive forces. In liquids such as water, the meniscus is concave; in liquids such as mercury, however, which have very strong cohesive forces and weak adhesion to glass, the meniscus is convex (part (b) in Figure 11.3.5).

Note the Pattern

Polar substances are drawn up a glass capillary and generally have a concave meniscus.

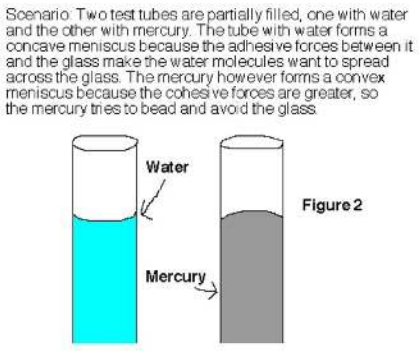
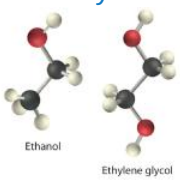


Figure 11.3.5 The Effects of Capillary Action This drawing illustrates the shape of the meniscus and the relative height of a mercury column when a glass capillary is put into liquid mercury. The meniscus is convex and the surface of the liquid inside the tube is *lower* than the level of the liquid outside the tube. Because water adheres strongly to the polar surface of glass, it has a concave meniscus, whereas mercury, which does not adhere to the glass, has a convex meniscus.

Fluids and nutrients are transported up the stems of plants or the trunks of trees by capillary action. Plants contain tiny rigid tubes composed of cellulose, to which water has strong adhesion. Because of the strong adhesive forces, nutrients can be transported from the roots to the tops of trees that are more than 50 m tall. Cotton towels are also made of cellulose; they absorb water because the tiny tubes act like capillaries and “wick” the water away from your skin. The moisture is absorbed by the entire fabric, not just the layer in contact with your body.

Viscosity



Viscosity (η)The resistance of a liquid to flow. is the resistance of a liquid to flow. Some liquids, such as gasoline, ethanol, and water, flow very readily and hence have a *low viscosity*. Others, such as motor oil, molasses, and maple syrup, flow very slowly and have a *high viscosity*. The two most common methods for evaluating the viscosity of a liquid are (1) to measure the time it takes for a quantity of liquid to flow through a narrow vertical tube and (2) to measure the time it takes steel balls to fall through a given volume of the liquid. The higher the viscosity, the slower the liquid flows through the tube and the steel balls fall. Viscosity is expressed in units of the poise (mPa·s); the higher the number, the higher the viscosity. The viscosities of some representative liquids are listed in Table 10.3.1 and show a correlation between viscosity and intermolecular forces. Because a liquid can flow only if the molecules can move past one another with minimal resistance, strong intermolecular attractive forces make it more difficult for molecules to move with respect to one another. The addition of a second hydroxyl group to ethanol, for example, which produces ethylene glycol ($HOCH_2CH_2OH$), increases the viscosity 15-fold. This effect is due to the increased number of hydrogen bonds that can form between hydroxyl groups in adjacent molecules, resulting in dramatically stronger intermolecular attractive forces.

There is also a correlation between viscosity and molecular shape. Liquids consisting of long, flexible molecules tend to have higher viscosities than those composed of more spherical or shorter-chain molecules. The longer the molecules, the easier it is for them to become “tangled” with one another, making it more difficult for them to move past one another. London dispersion forces also increase with chain length. Due to a combination of these two effects, long-chain hydrocarbons (such as motor oils) are highly viscous.

Note the Pattern

Viscosity increases as intermolecular interactions or molecular size increases.

Motor oils and other lubricants demonstrate the practical importance of controlling viscosity. The oil in an automobile engine must effectively lubricate under a wide range of conditions, from subzero starting temperatures to the 200°C that oil can reach in an engine in the heat of the Mojave Desert in August. Viscosity decreases rapidly with increasing temperatures because the kinetic energy of the molecules increases, and higher kinetic energy enables the molecules to overcome the attractive forces that prevent

the liquid from flowing. As a result, an oil that is thin enough to be a good lubricant in a cold engine will become too "thin" (have too low a viscosity) to be effective at high temperatures. The viscosity of motor oils is described by an SAE (Society of Automotive Engineers) rating ranging from SAE 5 to SAE 50 for engine oils: the lower the number, the lower the viscosity. So-called *single-grade oils* can cause major problems. If they are viscous enough to work at high operating temperatures (SAE 50, for example), then at low temperatures, they can be so viscous that a car is difficult to start or an engine is not properly lubricated. Consequently, most modern oils are *multigrade*, with designations such as SAE 20W/50 (a grade used in high-performance sports cars), in which case the oil has the viscosity of an SAE 20 oil at subzero temperatures (hence the W for winter) and the viscosity of an SAE 50 oil at high temperatures. These properties are achieved by a careful blend of additives that modulate the intermolecular interactions in the oil, thereby controlling the temperature dependence of the viscosity. Many of the commercially available oil additives "for improved engine performance" are highly viscous materials that increase the viscosity and effective SAE rating of the oil, but overusing these additives can cause the same problems experienced with highly viscous single-grade oils.

Example 11.3.1

Based on the nature and strength of the intermolecular cohesive forces and the probable nature of the liquid–glass adhesive forces, predict what will happen when a glass capillary is put into a beaker of SAE 20 motor oil. Will the oil be pulled up into the tube by capillary action or pushed down below the surface of the liquid in the beaker? What will be the shape of the meniscus (convex or concave)? (Hint: the surface of glass is lined with Si–OH groups.)

Given: substance and composition of the glass surface

Asked for: behavior of oil and the shape of meniscus

Strategy:

A Identify the cohesive forces in the motor oil.

B Determine whether the forces interact with the surface of glass. From the strength of this interaction, predict the behavior of the oil and the shape of the meniscus.

Solution:

A Motor oil is a nonpolar liquid consisting largely of hydrocarbon chains. The cohesive forces responsible for its high boiling point are almost solely London dispersion forces between the hydrocarbon chains. **B** Such a liquid cannot form strong interactions with the polar Si–OH groups of glass, so the surface of the oil inside the capillary will be lower than the level of the liquid in the beaker. The oil will have a convex meniscus similar to that of mercury.

Exercise

Predict what will happen when a glass capillary is put into a beaker of ethylene glycol. Will the ethylene glycol be pulled up into the tube by capillary action or pushed down below the surface of the liquid in the beaker? What will be the shape of the meniscus (convex or concave)?

Answer: Capillary action will pull the ethylene glycol up into the capillary. The meniscus will be concave.

Summary

Surface tension is the energy required to increase the surface area of a liquid by a given amount. The stronger the intermolecular interactions, the greater the surface tension. **Surfactants** are molecules, such as soaps and detergents, that reduce the surface tension of polar liquids like water. **Capillary action** is the phenomenon in which liquids rise up into a narrow tube called a capillary. It results when **cohesive forces**, the intermolecular forces in the liquid, are weaker than **adhesive forces**, the attraction between a liquid and the surface of the capillary. The shape of the **meniscus**, the upper surface of a liquid in a tube, also reflects the balance between adhesive and cohesive forces. The **viscosity** of a liquid is its resistance to flow. Liquids that have strong intermolecular forces tend to have high viscosities.

Key Takeaways

- Surface tension, capillary action, and viscosity are unique properties of liquids that depend on the nature of intermolecular interactions.

Contributors and Attributions

- Anonymous

Video at 11.3.2a by Christopher Rozitis @ YouTube

Video at 11.3.2b by Cambridge University @ YouTube

Video at 11.3.3 by Fink Feed Systems @ YouTube

Video at 11.3.4 by Safeguard Europe @ YouTube

Thumbnail from Wikimedia

This page titled 3.11: Unique Properties of Liquids is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

3.12: Solubility

Learning Objectives

- Describe the effects of temperature and pressure on solubility
- State Henry's law and use it in calculations involving the solubility of a gas in a liquid
- Explain the degrees of solubility possible for liquid-liquid solutions

Imagine adding a small amount of salt to a glass of water, stirring until all the salt has dissolved, and then adding a bit more. You can repeat this process until the salt concentration of the solution reaches its natural limit, a limit determined primarily by the relative strengths of the solute-solute, solute-solvent, and solvent-solvent attractive forces discussed in the previous two modules of this chapter. You can be certain that you have reached this limit because, no matter how long you stir the solution, undissolved salt remains. The concentration of salt in the solution at this point is known as its solubility.

The solubility of a solute in a particular solvent is the maximum concentration that may be achieved under given conditions when the dissolution process is at equilibrium. Referring to the example of salt in water:

$$\mathrm{NaCl}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Na^+}(aq) + \mathrm{Cl^-}(aq) \tag{3.12.1}$$

When a solute's concentration is equal to its solubility, the solution is said to be saturated with that solute. If the solute's concentration is less than its solubility, the solution is said to be unsaturated. A solution that contains a relatively low concentration of solute is called dilute, and one with a relatively high concentration is called concentrated.

If we add more salt to a saturated solution of salt, we see it fall to the bottom and no more seems to dissolve. In fact, the added salt does dissolve, as represented by the forward direction of the dissolution equation. Accompanying this process, dissolved salt will precipitate, as depicted by the reverse direction of the equation. The system is said to be at equilibrium when these two reciprocal processes are occurring at equal rates, and so the amount of undissolved and dissolved salt remains constant. Support for the simultaneous occurrence of the dissolution and precipitation processes is provided by noting that the number and sizes of the undissolved salt crystals will change over time, though their combined mass will remain the same.



Video 3.12.1: Watch this impressive video showing the precipitation of sodium acetate from a supersaturated solution.

Solutions may be prepared in which a solute concentration exceeds its solubility. Such solutions are said to be supersaturated, and they are interesting examples of nonequilibrium states. For example, the carbonated beverage in an open container that has not yet "gone flat" is supersaturated with carbon dioxide gas; given time, the CO_2 concentration will decrease until it reaches its equilibrium value.

Solutions of Gases in Liquids

In an earlier module of this chapter, the effect of intermolecular attractive forces on solution formation was discussed. The chemical structures of the solute and solvent dictate the types of forces possible and, consequently, are important factors in determining solubility. For example, under similar conditions, the water solubility of oxygen is approximately three times greater than that of helium, but 100 times less than the solubility of chloromethane, $CHCl_3$. Considering the role of the solvent's chemical

structure, note that the solubility of oxygen in the liquid hydrocarbon hexane, C_6H_{14}, is approximately 20 times greater than it is in water.

Other factors also affect the solubility of a given substance in a given solvent. Temperature is one such factor, with gas solubility typically decreasing as temperature increases (Figure 3.12.1). This is one of the major impacts resulting from the thermal pollution of natural bodies of water.

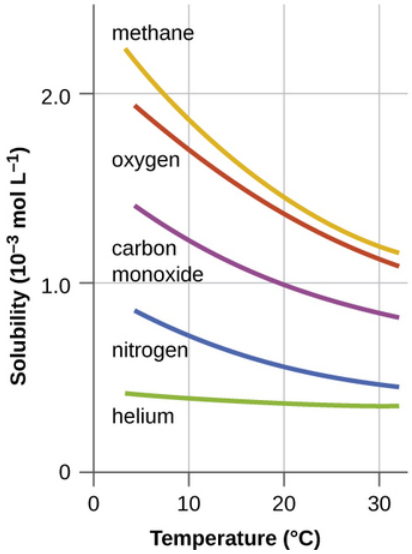


Figure 3.12.1: The solubilities of these gases in water decrease as the temperature increases. All solubilities were measured with a constant pressure of 101.3 kPa (1 atm) of gas above the solutions.

When the temperature of a river, lake, or stream is raised abnormally high, usually due to the discharge of hot water from some industrial process, the solubility of oxygen in the water is decreased. Decreased levels of dissolved oxygen may have serious consequences for the health of the water's ecosystems and, in severe cases, can result in large-scale fish kills (Figure 3.12.2).



(a) (b)

Figure 3.12.2: (a) The small bubbles of air in this glass of chilled water formed when the water warmed to room temperature and the solubility of its dissolved air decreased. (b) The decreased solubility of oxygen in natural waters subjected to thermal pollution can result in large-scale fish kills. (credit a: modification of work by Liz West; credit b: modification of work by U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service)

The solubility of a gaseous solute is also affected by the partial pressure of solute in the gas to which the solution is exposed. Gas solubility increases as the pressure of the gas increases. Carbonated beverages provide a nice illustration of this relationship. The carbonation process involves exposing the beverage to a relatively high pressure of carbon dioxide gas and then sealing the beverage container, thus saturating the beverage with CO_2 at this pressure. When the beverage container is opened, a familiar hiss is heard as the carbon dioxide gas pressure is released, and some of the dissolved carbon dioxide is typically seen leaving solution in the form of small bubbles (Figure 3.12.3). At this point, the beverage is supersaturated with carbon dioxide and, with time, the dissolved carbon dioxide concentration will decrease to its equilibrium value and the beverage will become "flat."

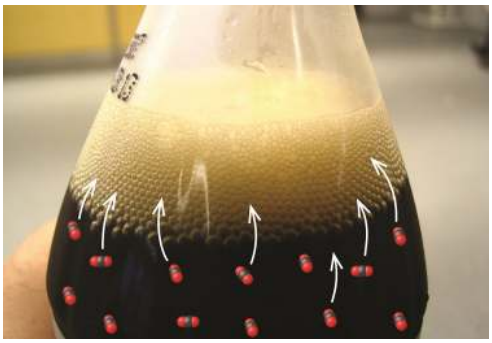


Figure 3.12.3: Opening the bottle of carbonated beverage reduces the pressure of the gaseous carbon dioxide above the beverage. The solubility of CO_2 is thus lowered, and some dissolved carbon dioxide may be seen leaving the solution as small gas bubbles. (credit: modification of work by Derrick Coetzee)

A dark brown liquid is shown in a clear, colorless container. A thick layer of beige bubbles appear at the surface of the liquid. In the liquid, thirteen small clusters of single black spheres with two red spheres attached to the left and right are shown. Red spheres represent oxygen atoms and black represent carbon atoms. Seven white arrows point upward in the container from these clusters to the bubble layer at the top of the liquid.

For many gaseous solutes, the relation between solubility, C_g, and partial pressure, P_g, is a proportional one:

$$C_\text{g} = kP_\text{g}$$

where k is a proportionality constant that depends on the identities of the gaseous solute and solvent, and on the solution temperature. This is a mathematical statement of Henry's law: The quantity of an ideal gas that dissolves in a definite volume of liquid is directly proportional to the pressure of the gas.

Example 3.12.1: Application of Henry's Law

At 20 °C, the concentration of dissolved oxygen in water exposed to gaseous oxygen at a partial pressure of 101.3 kPa (760 torr) is 1.38×10^{-3} mol L^{-1}. Use Henry's law to determine the solubility of oxygen when its partial pressure is 20.7 kPa (155 torr), the approximate pressure of oxygen in earth's atmosphere.

Solution

According to Henry's law, for an ideal solution the solubility, C_g, of a gas (1.38×10^{-3} mol L^{-1}, in this case) is directly proportional to the pressure, P_g, of the undissolved gas above the solution (101.3 kPa, or 760 torr, in this case). Because we know both C_g and P_g, we can rearrange this expression to solve for k.

$$\begin{aligned} C_\text{g} &= kP_\text{g} \\ k &= \frac{C_\text{g}}{P_\text{g}} \\ &= \frac{1.38 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mol L}^{-1}}{101.3\ \text{kPa}} \\ &= 1.36 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{mol L}^{-1}\ \text{kPa}^{-1} \\ &\quad (1.82 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{mol L}^{-1}\ \text{torr}^{-1}) \end{aligned}$$

Now we can use k to find the solubility at the lower pressure.

$$\begin{aligned} C_\text{g} &= kP_\text{g} \\ &1.36 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{mol L}^{-1}\ \text{kPa}^{-1} \times 20.7\ \text{kPa} \\ &(\text{or } 1.82 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{mol L}^{-1}\ \text{torr}^{-1} \times 155\ \text{torr}) \\ &= 2.82 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{mol L}^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

Note that various units may be used to express the quantities involved in these sorts of computations. Any combination of units that yield to the constraints of dimensional analysis are acceptable.

Exercise 3.12.1

Exposing a 100.0 mL sample of water at 0 °C to an atmosphere containing a gaseous solute at 20.26 kPa (152 torr) resulted in the dissolution of 1.45×10^{-3} g of the solute. Use Henry's law to determine the solubility of this gaseous solute when its pressure is 101.3 kPa (760 torr).

Answer

7.25×10^{-3} g in 100.0 mL or 0.0725 g/L

Case Study: Decompression Sickness ("The Bends")

Decompression sickness (DCS), or "the bends," is an effect of the increased pressure of the air inhaled by scuba divers when swimming underwater at considerable depths. In addition to the pressure exerted by the atmosphere, divers are subjected to additional pressure due to the water above them, experiencing an increase of approximately 1 atm for each 10 m of depth. Therefore, the air inhaled by a diver while submerged contains gases at the corresponding higher ambient pressure, and the concentrations of the gases dissolved in the diver's blood are proportionally higher per Henry's law.

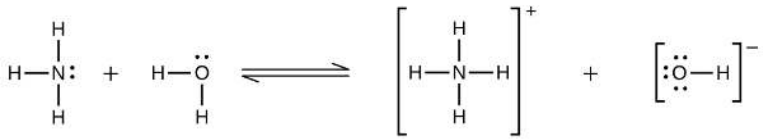


Figure 3.12.4: (a) US Navy divers undergo training in a recompression chamber. (b) Divers receive hyperbaric oxygen therapy.

Two photos are shown. The first shows two people seated in a steel chamber on benches that run length of the chamber on each side. The chamber has a couple of small circular windows and an open hatch-type door. One of the two people is giving a thumbs up gesture. The second image provides a view through a small, circular window. Inside the two people can be seen with masks over their mouths and noses. The people appear to be reading.

As the diver ascends to the surface of the water, the ambient pressure decreases and the dissolved gases becomes less soluble. If the ascent is too rapid, the gases escaping from the diver's blood may form bubbles that can cause a variety of symptoms ranging from rashes and joint pain to paralysis and death. To avoid DCS, divers must ascend from depths at relatively slow speeds (10 or 20 m/min) or otherwise make several decompression stops, pausing for several minutes at given depths during the ascent. When these preventive measures are unsuccessful, divers with DCS are often provided hyperbaric oxygen therapy in pressurized vessels called decompression (or recompression) chambers (Figure 3.12.4).

Deviations from Henry's law are observed when a chemical reaction takes place between the gaseous solute and the solvent. Thus, for example, the solubility of ammonia in water does not increase as rapidly with increasing pressure as predicted by the law because ammonia, being a base, reacts to some extent with water to form ammonium ions and hydroxide ions.



Gases can form **supersaturated solutions**. If a solution of a gas in a liquid is prepared either at low temperature or under pressure (or both), then as the solution warms or as the gas pressure is reduced, the solution may become supersaturated. In 1986, more than 1700 people in Cameroon were killed when a cloud of gas, almost certainly carbon dioxide, bubbled from Lake Nyos (Figure 3.12.5), a deep lake in a volcanic crater. The water at the bottom of Lake Nyos is saturated with carbon dioxide by volcanic activity beneath the lake. It is believed that the lake underwent a turnover due to gradual heating from below the lake, and the warmer, less-

dense water saturated with carbon dioxide reached the surface. Consequently, tremendous quantities of dissolved CO_2 were released, and the colorless gas, which is denser than air, flowed down the valley below the lake and suffocated humans and animals living in the valley.



(a) (b)

Figure 3.12.5: (a) It is believed that the 1986 disaster that killed more than 1700 people near Lake Nyos in Cameroon resulted when a large volume of carbon dioxide gas was released from the lake. (b) A CO_2 vent has since been installed to help outgas the lake in a slow, controlled fashion and prevent a similar catastrophe from happening in the future. (credit a: modification of work by Jack Lockwood; credit b: modification of work by Bill Evans)

Two photos are shown. The first is an aerial view of a lake surrounded by green hills. The second shows a large body of water with a fountain sending liquid up into the air several yards or meters above the surface of the water.

Solutions of Liquids in Liquids

We know that some liquids mix with each other in all proportions; in other words, they have infinite mutual solubility and are said to be miscible. Ethanol, sulfuric acid, and ethylene glycol (popular for use as antifreeze, pictured in Figure 3.12.6) are examples of liquids that are completely miscible with water. Two-cycle motor oil is miscible with gasoline.



Figure 3.12.6: Water and antifreeze are miscible; mixtures of the two are homogeneous in all proportions. (credit: “dno1967”/Wikimedia commons)

Liquids that mix with water in all proportions are usually polar substances or substances that form hydrogen bonds. For such liquids, the dipole-dipole attractions (or hydrogen bonding) of the solute molecules with the solvent molecules are at least as strong as those between molecules in the pure solute or in the pure solvent. Hence, the two kinds of molecules mix easily. Likewise, nonpolar liquids are miscible with each other because there is no appreciable difference in the strengths of solute-solute, solvent-solvent, and solute-solvent intermolecular attractions. The solubility of polar molecules in polar solvents and of nonpolar molecules in nonpolar solvents is, again, an illustration of the chemical axiom “like dissolves like.”

Two liquids that do not mix to an appreciable extent are called immiscible. Layers are formed when we pour immiscible liquids into the same container. Gasoline, oil (Figure 3.12.7), benzene, carbon tetrachloride, some paints, and many other nonpolar liquids are immiscible with water. The attraction between the molecules of such nonpolar liquids and polar water molecules is ineffectively weak. The only strong attractions in such a mixture are between the water molecules, so they effectively squeeze out the molecules of the nonpolar liquid. The distinction between immiscibility and miscibility is really one of degrees, so that miscible liquids are of infinite mutual solubility, while liquids said to be immiscible are of very low (though not zero) mutual solubility.



Figure 3.12.7: Water and oil are immiscible. Mixtures of these two substances will form two separate layers with the less dense oil floating on top of the water. (credit: “Yortw”/Flickr)

This is a photo of a clear, colorless martini glass containing a golden colored liquid layer resting on top of a clear, colorless liquid.

Two liquids, such as bromine and water, that are of moderate mutual solubility are said to be partially miscible. Two partially miscible liquids usually form two layers when mixed. In the case of the bromine and water mixture, the upper layer is water, saturated with bromine, and the lower layer is bromine saturated with water. Since bromine is nonpolar, and, thus, not very soluble in water, the water layer is only slightly discolored by the bright orange bromine dissolved in it. Since the solubility of water in bromine is very low, there is no noticeable effect on the dark color of the bromine layer (Figure 3.12.8).



Figure 3.12.8: Bromine (the deep orange liquid on the left) and water (the clear liquid in the middle) are partially miscible. The top layer in the mixture on the right is a saturated solution of bromine in water; the bottom layer is a saturated solution of water in bromine. (credit: Paul Flowers)

This figure shows three test tubes. The first test tube holds a dark orange-brown substance. The second test tube holds a clear substance. The amount of substance in both test tubes is the same. The third test tube holds a dark orange-brown substance on the bottom with a lighter orange substance on top. The amount of substance in the third test tube is almost double of the first two.

Solutions of Solids in Liquids

The dependence of solubility on temperature for a number of inorganic solids in water is shown by the solubility curves in Figure 3.12.9. Reviewing these data indicate a general trend of increasing solubility with temperature, although there are exceptions, as illustrated by the ionic compound cerium sulfate.

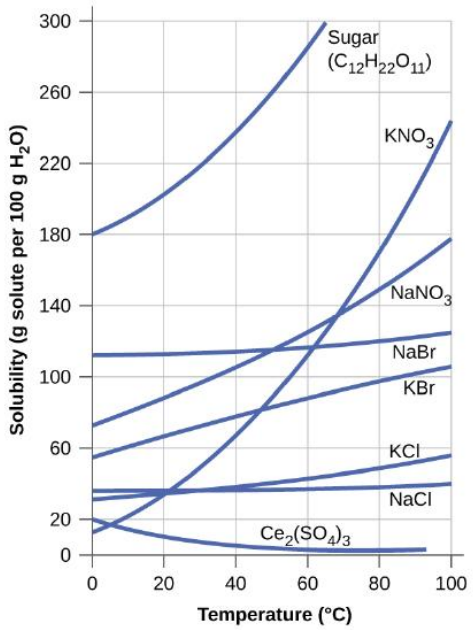


Figure 3.12.9: This graph shows how the solubility of several solids changes with temperature.

This shows a graph of the solubility of sugar C subscript 12 H subscript 22 O subscript 11, K N O subscript 3, N a N O subscript 3, N a B r, K B r, N a subscript 2 S O subscript 4, K C l, and C e subscript 2 left parenthesis S O subscript 4 right parenthesis subscript 3 in g solute per 100 g H subscript 2 O at temperatures ranging from 0 degrees Celsius to 100 degrees Celsius. At 0 degrees Celsius, solubilities are approximately 180 for sugar C subscript 12 H subscript 22 O subscript 11, 115 for K N O subscript 3, 75 for N a N O subscript 3, 115 for N a B r, 55 for K B r, 7 for N a subscript 2 S O subscript 4, 25 for K C l, and 20 for C e subscript 2 left parenthesis S O subscript 4 right parenthesis subscript 3. At 0 degrees Celsius, solubilities are approximately 180 for sugar C subscript 12 H subscript 22 O subscript 11, 115 for K N O subscript 3, 75 for N a N O subscript 3, 115 for N a B r, 55 for K B r, 7 for N a subscript 2 S O subscript 4, 25 for K C l, and 20 for C e subscript 2 left parenthesis S O subscript 4 right parenthesis subscript 3. At 100 degrees Celsius, sugar C subscript 12 H subscript 22 O subscript 11 has exceeded the upper limit of solubility indicated on the graph, 240 for K N O subscript 3, 178 for N a N O subscript 3, 123 for N a B r, 105 for K B r, 52 for N a subscript 2 S O subscript 4, 58 for K C l, and the graph for C e subscript 2 left parenthesis S O subscript 4 right parenthesis subscript 3 stops at about 92 degrees Celsius where the solubility is nearly zero. The graph for N a subscript 2 S O subscript 4 is shown in red. All others substances are shown in blue. The solubility of this substance increases until about 30 degrees Celsius and declines beyond that point with increasing temperature.

The temperature dependence of solubility can be exploited to prepare supersaturated solutions of certain compounds. A solution may be saturated with the compound at an elevated temperature (where the solute is more soluble) and subsequently cooled to a lower temperature without precipitating the solute. The resultant solution contains solute at a concentration greater than its equilibrium solubility at the lower temperature (i.e., it is supersaturated) and is relatively stable. Precipitation of the excess solute can be initiated by adding a seed crystal (see the video in the Link to Learning earlier in this module) or by mechanically agitating the solution. Some hand warmers, such as the one pictured in Figure 3.12.10, take advantage of this behavior.



Figure 3.12.10: This hand warmer produces heat when the sodium acetate in a supersaturated solution precipitates. Precipitation of the solute is initiated by a mechanical shockwave generated when the flexible metal disk within the solution is “clicked.” (credit: modification of work by “Velela”/Wikimedia Commons)

Three photos of hand warmers are shown side by side with an arrow pointing from the first photo to the second, and another arrow pointing from the second photo to the third. The first packet contains a clear colorless liquid and a small metal disc can be seen. In the second packet, the disc can’t be seen and a dispersion of white liquid is beginning. In the third packet, all of the liquid is white.



Video 3.12.2 This video shows the crystallization process occurring in a hand warmer.

Summary

The extent to which one substance will dissolve in another is determined by several factors, including the types and relative strengths of intermolecular attractive forces that may exist between the substances' atoms, ions, or molecules. This tendency to dissolve is quantified as substance's solubility, its maximum concentration in a solution at equilibrium under specified conditions. A saturated solution contains solute at a concentration equal to its solubility. A supersaturated solution is one in which a solute's concentration exceeds its solubility—a nonequilibrium (unstable) condition that will result in solute precipitation when the solution is appropriately perturbed. Miscible liquids are soluble in all proportions, and immiscible liquids exhibit very low mutual solubility. Solubilities for gaseous solutes decrease with increasing temperature, while those for most, but not all, solid solutes increase with temperature. The concentration of a gaseous solute in a solution is proportional to the partial pressure of the gas to which the solution is exposed, a relation known as Henry's law.

Key Equations

- $C_{\mathrm{g}} = kP_{\mathrm{g}}$

Glossary

Henry's law
law stating the proportional relationship between the concentration of dissolved gas in a solution and the partial pressure of the gas in contact with the solution

immiscible
of negligible mutual solubility; typically refers to liquid substances

miscible
mutually soluble in all proportions; typically refers to liquid substances

partially miscible
of moderate mutual solubility; typically refers to liquid substances

saturated
of concentration equal to solubility; containing the maximum concentration of solute possible for a given temperature and pressure

solubility
extent to which a solute may be dissolved in water, or any solvent

supersaturated
of concentration that exceeds solubility; a nonequilibrium state

unsaturated

of concentration less than solubility

This page titled 3.12: Solubility is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **11.4: Solubility** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

3.13: Vapor Pressure

Learning Objectives

- To know how and why the vapor pressure of a liquid varies with temperature.

Nearly all of us have heated a pan of water with the lid in place and shortly thereafter heard the sounds of the lid rattling and hot water spilling onto the stovetop. When a liquid is heated, its molecules obtain sufficient kinetic energy to overcome the forces holding them in the liquid and they escape into the gaseous phase. By doing so, they generate a population of molecules in the vapor phase above the liquid that produces a pressure—the vapor pressureThe pressure created over a liquid by the molecules of a liquid substance that have enough kinetic energy to escape to the vapor phase. of the liquid. In the situation we described, enough pressure was generated to move the lid, which allowed the vapor to escape. If the vapor is contained in a sealed vessel, however, such as an unvented flask, and the vapor pressure becomes too high, the flask will explode (as many students have unfortunately discovered). In this section, we describe vapor pressure in more detail and explain how to quantitatively determine the vapor pressure of a liquid.

Evaporation and Condensation

Because the molecules of a liquid are in constant motion, we can plot the fraction of molecules with a given kinetic energy (*KE*) against their kinetic energy to obtain the kinetic energy distribution of the molecules in the liquid (Figure 11.4.1), just as we did for a gas. As for gases, increasing the temperature increases both the average kinetic energy of the particles in a liquid and the range of kinetic energy of the individual molecules. If we assume that a minimum amount of energy (E_0) is needed to overcome the intermolecular attractive forces that hold a liquid together, then some fraction of molecules in the liquid always has a kinetic energy greater than E_0. The fraction of molecules with a kinetic energy greater than this minimum value increases with increasing temperature. Any molecule with a kinetic energy greater than E_0 has enough energy to overcome the forces holding it in the liquid and escape into the vapor phase. Before it can do so, however, a molecule must also be at the surface of the liquid, where it is physically possible for it to leave the liquid surface; that is, only molecules at the surface can undergo evaporation (or vaporization)The physical process by which atoms or molecules in the liquid phase enter the gas or vapor phase., where molecules gain sufficient energy to enter a gaseous state above a liquid's surface, thereby creating a vapor pressure.

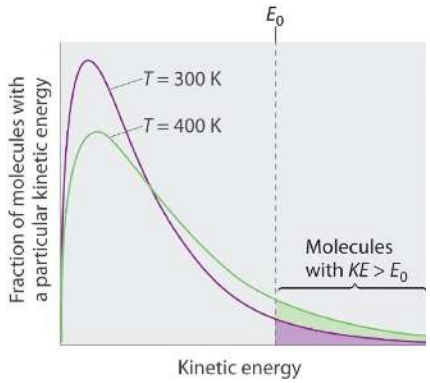


Figure 11.4.1 The Distribution of the Kinetic Energies of the Molecules of a Liquid at Two Temperatures Just as with gases, increasing the temperature shifts the peak to a higher energy and broadens the curve. Only molecules with a kinetic energy greater than E_0 can escape from the liquid to enter the vapor phase, and the proportion of molecules with $KE > E_0$ is greater at the higher temperature.

To understand the causes of vapor pressure, consider the apparatus shown in Figure 11.4.2 . When a liquid is introduced into an evacuated chamber (part (a) in Figure 11.4.2), the initial pressure above the liquid is approximately zero because there are as yet no molecules in the vapor phase. Some molecules at the surface, however, will have sufficient kinetic energy to escape from the liquid and form a vapor, thus increasing the pressure inside the container. As long as the temperature of the liquid is held constant, the fraction of molecules with $KE > E_0$ will not change, and the rate at which molecules escape from the liquid into the vapor phase will depend only on the surface area of the liquid phase.

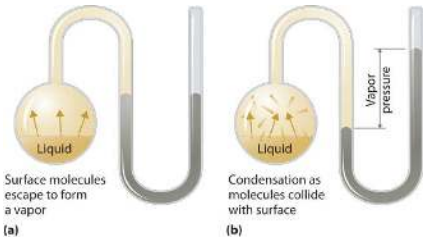


Figure 11.4.2 Vapor Pressure (a) When a liquid is introduced into an evacuated chamber, molecules with sufficient kinetic energy escape from the surface and enter the vapor phase, causing the pressure in the chamber to increase. (b) When sufficient molecules are in the vapor phase for a given temperature, the rate of condensation equals the rate of evaporation (a steady state is reached), and the pressure in the container becomes constant.

As soon as some vapor has formed, a fraction of the molecules in the vapor phase will collide with the surface of the liquid and reenter the liquid phase in a process known as condensationThe physical process by which atoms or molecules in the vapor phase enter the liquid phase. (part (b) in Figure 11.4.2). As the number of molecules in the vapor phase increases, the number of collisions between vapor-phase molecules and the surface will also increase. Eventually, a *steady state* will be reached in which exactly as many molecules per unit time leave the surface of the liquid (vaporize) as collide with it (condense). At this point, the pressure over the liquid stops increasing and remains constant at a particular value that is characteristic of the liquid at a given temperature. The rates of evaporation and condensation over time for a system such as this are shown graphically in Figure 11.4.3 .

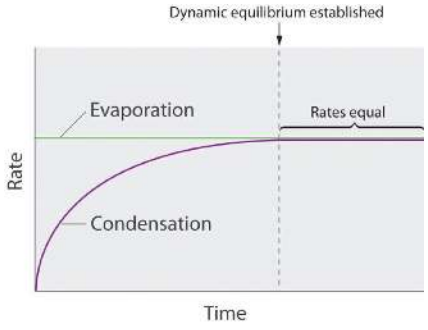


Figure 11.4.3 The Relative Rates of Evaporation and Condensation as a Function of Time after a Liquid Is Introduced into a Sealed Chamber The rate of evaporation depends only on the surface area of the liquid and is essentially constant. The rate of condensation depends on the number of molecules in the vapor phase and increases steadily until it equals the rate of evaporation.

Equilibrium Vapor Pressure

Two opposing processes (such as evaporation and condensation) that occur at the same rate and thus produce no *net* change in a system, constitute a dynamic equilibriumA state in which two opposing processes occur at the same rate, thus producing no net change in the system.. In the case of a liquid enclosed in a chamber, the molecules continuously evaporate and condense, but the amounts of liquid and vapor do not change with time. The pressure exerted by a vapor in dynamic equilibrium with a liquid is the equilibrium vapor pressureThe pressure exerted by a vapor in dynamic equilibrium with its liquid. of the liquid.

If a liquid is in an *open* container, however, most of the molecules that escape into the vapor phase will *not* collide with the surface of the liquid and return to the liquid phase. Instead, they will diffuse through the gas phase away from the container, and an equilibrium will never be established. Under these conditions, the liquid will continue to evaporate until it has “disappeared.” The speed with which this occurs depends on the vapor pressure of the liquid and the temperature. Volatile liquidsA liquid with a relatively high vapor pressure. have relatively high vapor pressures and tend to evaporate readily; nonvolatile liquidsA liquid with a relatively low vapor pressure. have low vapor pressures and evaporate more slowly. Although the dividing line between volatile and nonvolatile liquids is not clear-cut, as a general guideline, we can say that substances with vapor pressures greater than that of water (Table 11.3.1) are relatively volatile, whereas those with vapor pressures less than that of water are relatively nonvolatile. Thus diethyl ether (ethyl ether), acetone, and gasoline are volatile, but mercury, ethylene glycol, and motor oil are nonvolatile.

The equilibrium vapor pressure of a substance at a particular temperature is a characteristic of the material, like its molecular mass, melting point, and boiling point (Table 11.3.1). It does *not* depend on the amount of liquid as long as at least a tiny amount of liquid is present in equilibrium with the vapor. The equilibrium vapor pressure does, however, depend very strongly on the temperature

and the intermolecular forces present, as shown for several substances in Figure 10.4.4 . Molecules that can hydrogen bond, such as ethylene glycol, have a much lower equilibrium vapor pressure than those that cannot, such as octane. The nonlinear increase in vapor pressure with increasing temperature is *much* steeper than the increase in pressure expected for an ideal gas over the corresponding temperature range. The temperature dependence is so strong because the vapor pressure depends on the fraction of molecules that have a kinetic energy greater than that needed to escape from the liquid, and this fraction increases exponentially with temperature. As a result, sealed containers of volatile liquids are potential bombs if subjected to large increases in temperature. The gas tanks on automobiles are vented, for example, so that a car won't explode when parked in the sun. Similarly, the small cans (1–5 gallons) used to transport gasoline are required by law to have a pop-off pressure release.

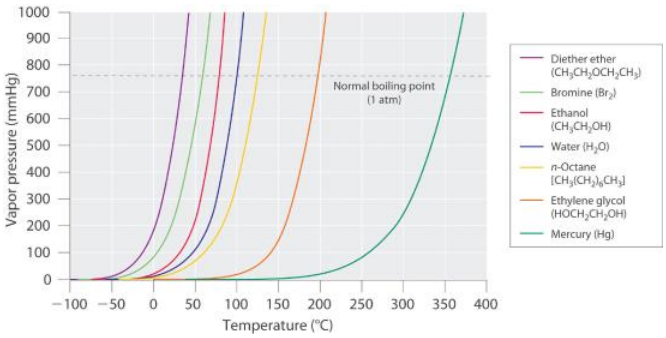


Figure 11.4.4 The Vapor Pressures of Several Liquids as a Function of Temperature The point at which the vapor pressure curve crosses the P = 1 atm line (dashed) is the normal boiling point of the liquid.

Note the Pattern

Volatile substances have low boiling points and relatively weak intermolecular interactions; nonvolatile substances have high boiling points and relatively strong intermolecular interactions.

The exponential rise in vapor pressure with increasing temperature in Figure 11.4.4 allows us to use natural logarithms to express the nonlinear relationship as a linear one.For a review of natural logarithms, refer to Essential Skills 6 in Section 11.9 .

$$ln\,(P) = \frac{-\Delta H_{vap}}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T}\right) + C \tag{11.4.1}$$

where ln P is the natural logarithm of the vapor pressure, $\Delta H_{\textbf{vap}}$ is the **enthalpy of vaporization**, R is the universal gas constant [8.314 J/(mol·K)], T is the temperature in Kelvin, and C is the y-intercept, which is a constant for any given liquid. A plot of ln P versus the inverse of the absolute temperature ($1/T$) is a straight line with a slope of $-\Delta H_{vap}/R$. Equation 11.4.1, called the Clausius–Clapeyron equationA linear relationship that expresses the nonlinear relationship between the vapor pressure of a liquid and temperature: P is the pressure, $\Delta H_{\textbf{vap}}$, R is the gas constant, T is the absolute temperature, and C is a constant. The Clausius–Clapeyron equation can be used to calculate the heat of vaporization of a liquid from its measured vapor pressure at two or more temperatures., can be used to calculate the ΔH_{vap} of a liquid from its measured vapor pressure at two or more temperatures. The simplest way to determine ΔH_{vap} is to measure the vapor pressure of a liquid at two temperatures and insert the values of P and T for these points into Equation 11.4.2, which is derived from the Clausius–Clapeyron equation:

$$ln\left(\frac{P_2}{P_1}\right) = \frac{-\Delta H_{vap}}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_2} - \frac{1}{T_1}\right) \tag{11.4.2}$$

Conversely, if we know ΔH_{vap} and the vapor pressure P_1 at any temperature T_1, we can use Equation 10.4.2 to calculate the vapor pressure P_2 at any other temperature T_2, as shown in Example 6.

Example 11.4.1

The experimentally measured vapor pressures of liquid Hg at four temperatures are listed in the following table:

T (°C)	80.0	100	120	140
P (torr)	0.0888	0.2729	0.7457	1.845

From these data, calculate the enthalpy of vaporization (ΔH_{vap}) of mercury and predict the vapor pressure of the liquid at 160°C. (Safety note: mercury is highly toxic; when it is spilled, its vapor pressure generates hazardous levels of mercury vapor.)

Given: vapor pressures at four temperatures

Asked for: ΔH_{vap} of mercury and vapor pressure at 160°C

Strategy:

A. Use Equation 11.4.2 to obtain ΔH_{vap} directly from two pairs of values in the table, making sure to convert all values to the appropriate units.
B. Substitute the calculated value of ΔH_{vap} into Equation 11.4.2 to obtain the unknown pressure (P_2).

Solution:

A The table gives the measured vapor pressures of liquid Hg for four temperatures. Although one way to proceed would be to plot the data using Equation 11.4.1 and find the value of ΔH_{vap} from the slope of the line, an alternative approach is to use Equation 11.4.2 to obtain ΔH_{vap} directly from two pairs of values listed in the table, assuming no errors in our measurement. We therefore select two sets of values from the table and convert the temperatures from degrees Celsius to kelvins because the equation requires absolute temperatures. Substituting the values measured at 80.0°C (T_1) and 120.0°C (T_2) into Equation 11.4.2 gives

$$ln\left(\frac{0.7457\ \cancel{Torr}}{0.0888\ \cancel{Torr}}\right) = \frac{-\Delta H_{vap}}{8.314\ J/mol \cdot K}\left(\frac{1}{(120+273)\,K} - \frac{1}{(80.0+273)\,K}\right) \tag{3.13.1}$$

$$ln\,(8.398) = \frac{-\Delta H_{vap}}{8.314\ J/mol \cdot\ \cancel{K}}\left(-2.88 \times 10^{-4}\ \ \cancel{K^{-1}}\right) \tag{3.13.2}$$

$$2.13 = -\Delta H_{vap}\left(-3.46 \times 10^{-4}\right) J^{-1} \cdot mol \tag{3.13.3}$$

$$\Delta H_{vap} = 61,400\ J/mol = 61.4\ kJ/mol \tag{3.13.4}$$

B We can now use this value of ΔH_{vap} to calculate the vapor pressure of the liquid (P_2) at 160.0°C (T_2):

$$ln\left(\frac{P_2}{0.0888\ torr}\right) = \frac{-61,400\ \ \cancel{J/mol}}{8.314\ \ \cancel{J/mol}\ K^{-1}}\left(\frac{1}{(160+273)\,K} - \frac{1}{(80.0+273)\,K}\right) \tag{3.13.5}$$

Using the relationship $e^{\ln x} = x$, we have

$$ln\left(\frac{P_2}{0.0888\ Torr}\right) = 3.86 \tag{3.13.6}$$

$$\frac{P_2}{0.0888\ Torr} = e^{3.86} = 47.5 \tag{3.13.7}$$

$$P_2 = 4.21 Torr \tag{3.13.8}$$

At 160°C, liquid Hg has a vapor pressure of 4.21 torr, substantially greater than the pressure at 80.0°C, as we would expect.

Exercise

The vapor pressure of liquid nickel at 1606°C is 0.100 torr, whereas at 1805°C, its vapor pressure is 1.000 torr. At what temperature does the liquid have a vapor pressure of 2.500 torr?

Answer: 1896°C

Boiling Points

As the temperature of a liquid increases, the vapor pressure of the liquid increases until it equals the external pressure, or the atmospheric pressure in the case of an open container. Bubbles of vapor begin to form throughout the liquid, and the liquid begins to boil. The temperature at which a liquid boils at exactly 1 atm pressure is the normal boiling point. For water, the normal boiling point is exactly 100°C. The normal boiling points of the other liquids in Figure 11.4.4 are represented by the points at which the vapor pressure curves cross the line corresponding to a pressure of 1 atm. Although we usually cite the normal boiling point of a liquid, the *actual* boiling point depends on the pressure. At a pressure greater than 1 atm, water boils at a temperature greater than

100°C because the increased pressure forces vapor molecules above the surface to condense. Hence the molecules must have greater kinetic energy to escape from the surface. Conversely, at pressures less than 1 atm, water boils below 100°C.

Typical variations in atmospheric pressure at sea level are relatively small, causing only minor changes in the boiling point of water. For example, the highest recorded atmospheric pressure at sea level is 813 mmHg, recorded during a Siberian winter; the lowest sea-level pressure ever measured was 658 mmHg in a Pacific typhoon. At these pressures, the boiling point of water changes minimally, to 102°C and 96°C, respectively. At high altitudes, on the other hand, the dependence of the boiling point of water on pressure becomes significant. Table 11.4.1 lists the boiling points of water at several locations with different altitudes. At an elevation of only 5000 ft, for example, the boiling point of water is already lower than the lowest ever recorded at sea level. The lower boiling point of water has major consequences for cooking everything from soft-boiled eggs (a “three-minute egg” may well take four or more minutes in the Rockies and even longer in the Himalayas) to cakes (cake mixes are often sold with separate high-altitude instructions). Conversely, pressure cookers, which have a seal that allows the pressure inside them to exceed 1 atm, are used to cook food more rapidly by raising the boiling point of water and thus the temperature at which the food is being cooked.

Note the Pattern

As pressure increases, the boiling point of a liquid increases and vice versa.

Table 11.4.1 The Boiling Points of Water at Various Locations on Earth

Place	Altitude above Sea Level (ft)	Atmospheric Pressure (mmHg)	Boiling Point of Water (°C)
Mt. Everest, Nepal/Tibet	29,028	240	70
Bogota, Colombia	11,490	495	88
Denver, Colorado	5280	633	95
Washington, DC	25	759	100
Dead Sea, Israel/Jordan	−1312	799	101.4

Example 11.4.2

Use Figure 11.4.4 to estimate the following.

1. the boiling point of water in a pressure cooker operating at 1000 mmHg
2. the pressure required for mercury to boil at 250°C

Given: data in Figure 11.4.4 , pressure, and boiling point

Asked for: corresponding boiling point and pressure

Strategy:

A. To estimate the boiling point of water at 1000 mmHg, refer to Figure 10.4.4 and find the point where the vapor pressure curve of water intersects the line corresponding to a pressure of 1000 mmHg.
B. To estimate the pressure required for mercury to boil at 250°C, find the point where the vapor pressure curve of mercury intersects the line corresponding to a temperature of 250°C.

Solution:

1. **A** The vapor pressure curve of water intersects the P = 1000 mmHg line at about 110°C; this is therefore the boiling point of water at 1000 mmHg.
2. **B** The vertical line corresponding to 250°C intersects the vapor pressure curve of mercury at $P \approx 75$ mmHg. Hence this is the pressure required for mercury to boil at 250°C.

Exercise

Use the data in Figure 10.4.4 to estimate the following.

1. the normal boiling point of ethylene glycol
2. the pressure required for diethyl ether to boil at 20°C.

Answer

1. 200°C
2. 450 mmHg

Summary

Because the molecules of a liquid are in constant motion and possess a wide range of kinetic energies, at any moment some fraction of them has enough energy to escape from the surface of the liquid to enter the gas or vapor phase. This process, called **vaporization** or **evaporation**, generates a **vapor pressure** above the liquid. Molecules in the gas phase can collide with the liquid surface and reenter the liquid via **condensation**. Eventually, a *steady state* is reached in which the number of molecules evaporating and condensing per unit time is the same, and the system is in a state of **dynamic equilibrium**. Under these conditions, a liquid exhibits a characteristic **equilibrium vapor pressure** that depends only on the temperature. We can express the nonlinear relationship between vapor pressure and temperature as a linear relationship using the **Clausius–Clapeyron equation**. This equation can be used to calculate the enthalpy of vaporization of a liquid from its measured vapor pressure at two or more temperatures. **Volatile liquids** are liquids with high vapor pressures, which tend to evaporate readily from an open container; **nonvolatile liquids** have low vapor pressures. When the vapor pressure equals the external pressure, bubbles of vapor form within the liquid, and it boils. The temperature at which a substance boils at a pressure of 1 atm is its **normal boiling point**.

Key Takeaways

- The equilibrium vapor pressure of a liquid depends on the temperature and the intermolecular forces present.
- The relationship between pressure, enthalpy of vaporization, and temperature is given by the Clausius-Clapeyron equation.

Key Equations

Clausius–Clapeyron equation

$$ln\left(P\right)=\frac{-\Delta H_{vap}}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T}\right)+C \tag{11.4.1}$$

Using vapor pressure at two temperatures to calculate ΔH_{vap}

$$ln\left(\frac{P_2}{P_1}\right)=\frac{-\Delta H_{vap}}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_2}-\frac{1}{T_1}\right) \tag{11.4.2}$$

Contributors and Attributions

- Anonymous

This page titled 3.13: Vapor Pressure is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

4: Equilibrium

4.1: Prelude to Equilibrium
4.2: Chemical Equilibria
4.3: Equilibrium Constants
4.4: Shifting Equilibria - Le Chatelier’s Principle
4.5: Equilibrium Calculations
4.6: Precipitation and Dissolution

4: Equilibrium is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

4.1: Prelude to Equilibrium

Imagine a beach populated with sunbathers and swimmers. As those basking in the sun get too hot and want to cool off, they head into the surf to swim. As the swimmers tire, they head to the beach to rest. If these two rates of transfer (sunbathers entering the water, swimmers leaving the water) are equal, the number of sunbathers and swimmers would be constant, or at equilibrium, although the identities of the people are constantly changing from sunbather to swimmer and back. An analogous situation occurs in chemical reactions. Reactions can occur in both directions simultaneously (reactants to products and products to reactants) and eventually reach a state of balance.

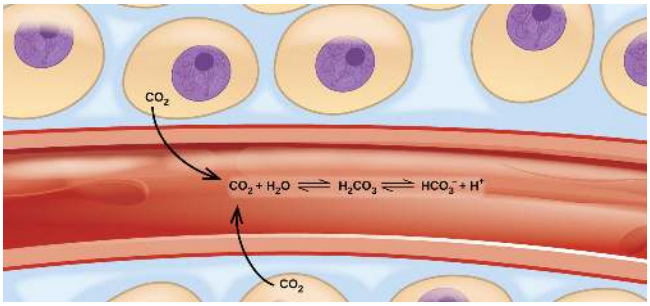


Figure 4.1.1: Movement of carbon dioxide through tissues and blood cells involves several equilibrium reactions.

An image depicts three tan squares, lying side-by-side along the upper left corner. Two of the same squares also lie side-by-side in the lower right corner. Each square has a black dot in the center. One of the squares is labeled, “C O subscript 2,” and has a double-headed arrow pointing from it to a red tube-like structure that runs between the squares across the image from the upper right to the lower left. This arrow is labeled, “C O subscript 2 dissolved in plasma.” The red tube has two round red shapes in it, and the upper one is labeled, “C O subscript 2 carried in red blood cells.” The gaps between the squares and the red tube are colored light blue. One of the squares along the top of the image is labeled, “C O subscript 2,” and is connected by a double-headed arrow to an equation in the red tube that is labeled, “C O subscript 2, a plus sign, H subscript 2 O, right-facing arrow, H subscript 2 C O subscript 3, right-facing arrow, H C O subscript 3 superscript negative sign, plus sign, H superscript positive sign.” The compound “H C O subscript 3 superscript negative sign” is then connected by a double-headed arrow to the space in the red tube and is labeled, “H C O subscript 3 superscript negative sign dissolved in plasma as carbonic acid.”

These balanced two-way reactions occur all around and even in us. For example, they occur in our blood, where the reaction between carbon dioxide and water forms carbonic acid (HCO_3^-) (Figure 4.1.1). Human physiology is adapted to the amount of ionized products produced by this reaction (HCO_3^- and H^+). In this chapter, you will learn how to predict the position of the balance and the yield of a product of a reaction under specific conditions, how to change a reaction's conditions to increase or reduce yield, and how to evaluate an equilibrium system's reaction to disturbances.

This page titled 4.1: Prelude to Equilibrium is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **13.1: Prelude to Equilibrium** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

4.2: Chemical Equilibria

Learning Objectives

- Describe the nature of equilibrium systems
- Explain the dynamic nature of a chemical equilibrium

A chemical reaction is usually written in a way that suggests it proceeds in one direction, the direction in which we read, but all chemical reactions are reversible, and both the forward and reverse reaction occur to one degree or another depending on conditions. In a chemical equilibrium, the forward and reverse reactions occur at equal rates, and the concentrations of products and reactants remain constant. If we run a reaction in a closed system so that the products cannot escape, we often find the reaction does not give a 100% yield of products. Instead, some reactants remain after the concentrations stop changing. At this point, when there is no further change in concentrations of reactants and products, we say the reaction is at equilibrium. A mixture of reactants and products is found at equilibrium.

For example, when we place a sample of dinitrogen tetroxide (N_2O_4, a colorless gas) in a glass tube, it forms nitrogen dioxide (NO_2, a brown gas) by the reaction

$$\mathrm{N_2O_4(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO_2(g)} \tag{4.2.1}$$

The color becomes darker as $\mathrm{N_2O_4}$ is converted to $\mathrm{NO_2}$. When the system reaches equilibrium, both $\mathrm{N_2O_4}$ and $\mathrm{NO_2}$ are present (Figure 4.2.1).

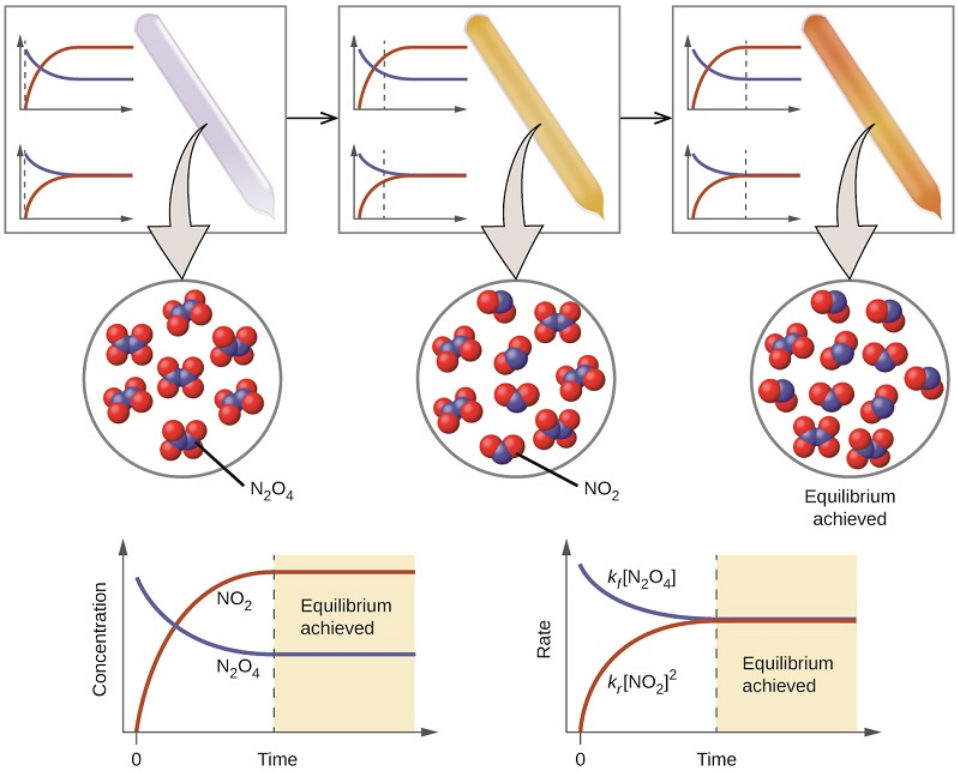


Figure 4.2.1: A mixture of NO_2 and N_2O_4 moves toward equilibrium. Colorless N_2O_4 reacts to form brown NO_2. As the reaction proceeds toward equilibrium, the color of the mixture darkens due to the increasing concentration of NO_2.

A three-part diagram is shown. At the top of the diagram, three beakers are shown, and each one contains a sealed tube. The tube in the left beaker is full of a colorless gas which is connected to a zoom-in view of the particles in the tube by a downward-facing arrow. This particle view shows seven particles, each composed of two connected blue spheres. Each blue sphere is connected to two red spheres. The tube in the middle beaker is full of a light brown gas which is connected to a zoom-in view of the particles in the tube by a downward-facing arrow. This particle view shows nine particles, five of which are composed of two connected blue spheres. Each blue sphere is connected to two red spheres. The remaining four are composed of two red spheres connected to a blue sphere. The tube in the right beaker is full of a brown gas which is connected to a zoom-in view of the particles in the tube by a downward-facing arrow. This particle view shows eleven particles, three of which are composed of two connected blue spheres. Each blue sphere is connected to two red spheres. The remaining eight are composed of two red spheres connected to a blue sphere. At the bottom of the image are two graphs. The left graph has a y-axis labeled, “Concentration,” and an x-axis labeled, “Time.” A red line labeled, “N O subscript 2,” begins in the bottom left corner of the graph at a point labeled, “0,” and rises near the highest point on the y-axis before it levels off and becomes horizontal. A blue line labeled, “N subscript 2 O subscript 4,” begins near the highest point on the y-axis and drops below the midpoint of the y-axis before leveling off. The right graph has a y-axis labeled, “Rate,” and an x-axis labeled, “Time.” A red line labeled, “k subscript f, [N subscript 2 O subscript 4],” begins in the bottom left corner of the graph at a point labeled, “0,” and rises near the middle of the y-axis before it levels off and becomes horizontal. A blue line labeled, “k subscript f, [N O subscript 2] superscript 2,” begins near the highest point on the y-axis and drops to the same point on the y-axis as the red line before leveling off. The point where both lines become horizontal is labeled, “Equilibrium achieved.”

The formation of NO_2 from N_2O_4 is a reversible reaction, which is identified by the equilibrium arrow ($\rightleftharpoons$). All reactions are reversible, but many reactions, for all practical purposes, proceed in one direction until the reactants are exhausted and will reverse only under certain conditions. Such reactions are often depicted with a one-way arrow from reactants to products. Many other reactions, such as the formation of NO_2 from N_2O_4, are reversible under more easily obtainable conditions and, therefore, are named as such. In a reversible reaction, the reactants can combine to form products and the products can react to form the reactants. Thus, not only can N_2O_4 decompose to form NO_2, but the NO_2 produced can react to form N_2O_4. As soon as the forward reaction produces any NO_2, the reverse reaction begins and NO_2 starts to react to form N_2O_4. At equilibrium, the concentrations of N_2O_4 and NO_2 no longer change because the rate of formation of NO_2 is exactly equal to the rate of consumption of NO_2, and the rate of formation of N_2O_4 is exactly equal to the rate of consumption of N_2O_4. *Chemical equilibrium is a dynamic process*: As with the swimmers and the sunbathers, the numbers of each remain constant, yet there is a flux back and forth between them (Figure 4.2.2).



Figure 4.2.2: These jugglers provide an illustration of dynamic equilibrium. Each throws clubs to the other at the same rate at which he receives clubs from that person. Because clubs are thrown continuously in both directions, the number of clubs moving in each direction is constant, and the number of clubs each juggler has at a given time remains (roughly) constant.

In a chemical equilibrium, the forward and reverse reactions do not stop, rather they continue to occur at the same rate, leading to constant concentrations of the reactants and the products. Plots showing how the reaction rates and concentrations change with respect to time are shown in Figure 4.2.1.

We can detect a state of equilibrium because the concentrations of reactants and products do not appear to change. However, it is important that we verify that the absence of change is due to equilibrium and not to a reaction rate that is so slow that changes in concentration are difficult to detect.

We use a double arrow when writing an equation for a reversible reaction. Such a reaction may or may not be at equilibrium. For example, Figure 4.2.1 shows the reaction:

$$\mathrm{N_2O_4(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO_2(g)} \tag{4.2.2}$$

When we wish to speak about one particular component of a reversible reaction, we use a single arrow. For example, in the equilibrium shown in Figure 4.2.1, the rate of the forward reaction

$$\mathrm{2\,NO_2(g) \rightarrow N_2O_4(g)} \tag{4.2.3}$$

is equal to the rate of the backward reaction

$$\mathrm{N_2O_4(g) \rightarrow 2\,NO_2(g)} \tag{4.2.4}$$

Equilibrium and Soft Drinks

The connection between chemistry and carbonated soft drinks goes back to 1767, when Joseph Priestley (1733–1804; mostly known today for his role in the discovery and identification of oxygen) discovered a method of infusing water with carbon dioxide to make carbonated water. In 1772, Priestly published a paper entitled “Impregnating Water with Fixed Air.” The paper describes dripping oil of vitriol (today we call this sulfuric acid, but what a great way to describe sulfuric acid: “oil of vitriol” literally means “liquid nastiness”) onto chalk (calcium carbonate). The resulting CO_2 falls into the container of water beneath the vessel in which the initial reaction takes place; agitation helps the gaseous CO_2 mix into the liquid water.

$$\mathrm{H_2SO_4(l) + CaCO_3(s) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + H_2O(l) + CaSO_4(aq)}$$

Carbon dioxide is slightly soluble in water. There is an equilibrium reaction that occurs as the carbon dioxide reacts with the water to form carbonic acid (H_2CO_3). Since carbonic acid is a weak acid, it can dissociate into protons (H^+) and hydrogen carbonate ions (HCO_3^-).

$$\mathrm{CO_2(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_3(aq) \rightleftharpoons HCO_3^-(aq) + H^+(aq)}$$

Today, $\mathrm{CO_2}$ can be pressurized into soft drinks, establishing the equilibrium shown above. Once you open the beverage container, however, a cascade of equilibrium shifts occurs. First, the $\mathrm{CO_2}$ gas in the air space on top of the bottle escapes, causing the equilibrium between gas-phase $\mathrm{CO_2}$ and dissolved or aqueous $\mathrm{CO_2}$ to shift, lowering the concentration of $\mathrm{CO_2}$ in the soft drink. Less $\mathrm{CO_2}$ dissolved in the liquid leads to carbonic acid decomposing to dissolved $\mathrm{CO_2}$ and $\mathrm{H_2O}$. The lowered carbonic acid concentration causes a shift of the final equilibrium. As long as the soft drink is in an open container, the $\mathrm{CO_2}$

bubbles up out of the beverage, releasing the gas into the air (Figure 4.2.3). With the lid off the bottle, the CO_2 reactions are no longer at equilibrium and will continue until no more of the reactants remain. This results in a soft drink with a much lowered CO_2 concentration, often referred to as “flat.”



Figure 4.2.3: When a soft drink is opened, several equilibrium shifts occur. (credit: modification of work by “D Coetzee”/Flickr)

A bottle of soda sitting on the ground is shown with a large amount of fizz-filled liquid spewing out of the top.

Sublimation of Bromine

Let us consider the evaporation of bromine as a second example of a system at equilibrium.

$$Br_2(l) \rightleftharpoons Br_2(g)$$

An equilibrium can be established for a physical change—like this liquid to gas transition—as well as for a chemical reaction. Figure 4.2.4 shows a sample of liquid bromine at equilibrium with bromine vapor in a closed container. When we pour liquid bromine into an empty bottle in which there is no bromine vapor, some liquid evaporates, the amount of liquid decreases, and the amount of vapor increases. If we cap the bottle so no vapor escapes, the amount of liquid and vapor will eventually stop changing and an equilibrium between the liquid and the vapor will be established. If the bottle were not capped, the bromine vapor would escape and no equilibrium would be reached.



Figure 4.2.4: An equilibrium is pictured between liquid bromine, $Br_2(l)$, the dark liquid, and bromine vapor, $Br_2(g)$, the orange gas. Because the container is sealed, bromine vapor cannot escape and equilibrium is maintained. (credit: Bromine [images-of-elements.com]).

A glass container is shown that is filled with an orange-brown gas and a small amount of dark orange liquid.

Summary

A reaction is at equilibrium when the amounts of reactants or products no longer change. Chemical equilibrium is a dynamic process, meaning the rate of formation of products by the forward reaction is equal to the rate at which the products re-form reactants by the reverse reaction.

Glossary

equilibrium

in chemical reactions, the state in which the conversion of reactants into products and the conversion of products back into reactants occur simultaneously at the same rate; state of balance

reversible reaction

chemical reaction that can proceed in both the forward and reverse directions under given conditions

---

This page titled 4.2: Chemical Equilibria is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **13.2: Chemical Equilibria** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

4.3: Equilibrium Constants

Learning Objectives

- Derive reaction quotients from chemical equations representing homogeneous and heterogeneous reactions
- Calculate values of reaction quotients and equilibrium constants, using concentrations and pressures
- Relate the magnitude of an equilibrium constant to properties of the chemical system

Now that we have a symbol ($\rightleftharpoons$) to designate reversible reactions, we will need a way to express mathematically how the amounts of reactants and products affect the equilibrium of the system. A general equation for a reversible reaction may be written as follows:

$$m\mathrm{A} + n\mathrm{B} + \rightleftharpoons x\mathrm{C} + y\mathrm{D} \tag{4.3.1}$$

We can write the reaction quotient (Q) for this equation. When evaluated using concentrations, it is called Q_c. We use brackets to indicate molar concentrations of reactants and products.

$$Q_c = \frac{[\mathrm{C}]^x[\mathrm{D}]^y}{[\mathrm{A}]^m[\mathrm{B}]^n} \tag{4.3.2}$$

The reaction quotient is equal to the molar concentrations of the products of the chemical equation (multiplied together) over the reactants (also multiplied together), with each concentration raised to the power of the coefficient of that substance in the balanced chemical equation. For example, the reaction quotient for the reversible reaction

$$2\,\mathrm{NO}_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{N_2O}_{4(g)} \tag{4.3.3}$$

is given by this expression:

$$Q_c = \frac{[\mathrm{N_2O_4}]}{[\mathrm{NO_2}]^2} \tag{4.3.4}$$

Example 4.3.1: Writing Reaction Quotient Expressions

Write the expression for the reaction quotient for each of the following reactions:

a. $3\,\mathrm{O}_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{O}_{3(g)}$
b. $\mathrm{N}_{2(g)} + 3\,\mathrm{H}_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NH}_{3(g)}$
c. $4\,\mathrm{NH}_{3(g)} + 7\,\mathrm{O}_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 4\,\mathrm{NO}_{2(g)} + 6\,\mathrm{H_2O}_{(g)}$

Solution

a. $Q_c = \dfrac{[\mathrm{O_3}]^2}{[\mathrm{O_2}]^3}$
b. $Q_c = \dfrac{[\mathrm{NH_3}]^2}{[\mathrm{N_2}][\mathrm{H_2}]^3}$
c. $Q_c = \dfrac{[\mathrm{NO_2}]^4[\mathrm{H_2O}]^6}{[\mathrm{NH_3}]^4[\mathrm{O_2}]^7}$

Exercise 4.3.1

Write the expression for the reaction quotient for each of the following reactions:

a. $2\,\mathrm{SO}_2(g) + \mathrm{O}_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{SO}_3(g)$
b. $\mathrm{C_4H_8}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{C_2H_4}(g)$
c. $2\,\mathrm{C_4H_{10}}(g) + 13\,\mathrm{O}_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 8\,\mathrm{CO}_2(g) + 10\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g)$

Answer a

$$Q_c = \frac{[SO_3]^2}{[SO_2]^2[O_2]}$$

Answer b

$$Q_c = \frac{[C_2H_4]^2}{[C_4H_8]}$$

Answer c

$$Q_c = \frac{[CO_2]^8[H_2O]^{10}}{[C_4H_{10}]^2[O_2]^{13}}$$

The numeric value of Q_c for a given reaction varies; it depends on the concentrations of products and reactants present at the time when Q_c is determined. When pure reactants are mixed, Q_c is initially zero because there are no products present at that point. As the reaction proceeds, the value of Q_c increases as the concentrations of the products increase and the concentrations of the reactants simultaneously decrease (Figure 4.3.1). When the reaction reaches equilibrium, the value of the reaction quotient no longer changes because the concentrations no longer change.

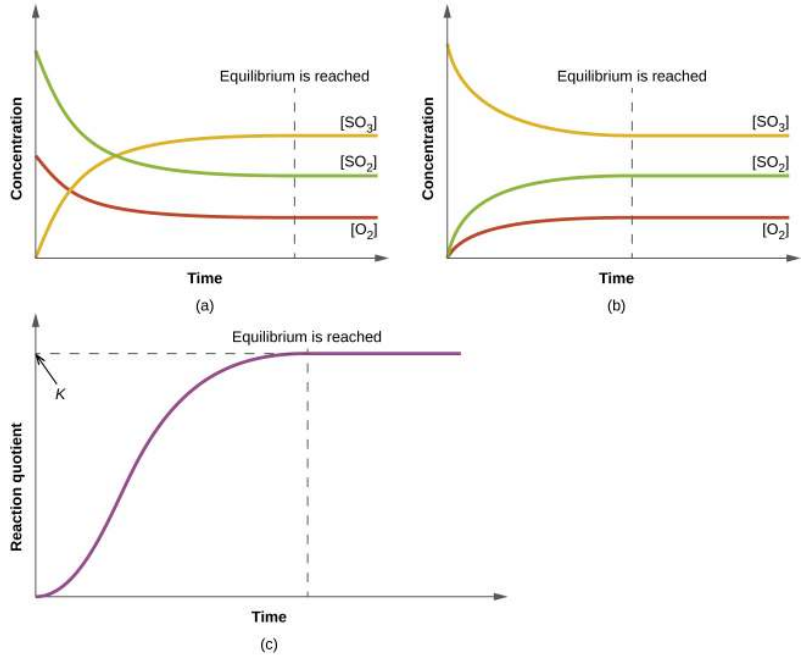


Figure 4.3.1: (a) The change in the concentrations of reactants and products is depicted as the $2\,SO_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,SO_3(g)$ reaction approaches equilibrium. (b) The change in concentrations of reactants and products is depicted as the reaction $2\,SO_3(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,SO_2(g) + O_2(g)$ approaches equilibrium. (c) The graph shows the change in the value of the reaction quotient as the reaction approaches equilibrium.

Three graphs are shown and labeled, “a,” “b,” and “c.” All three graphs have a vertical dotted line running through the middle labeled, “Equilibrium is reached.” The y-axis on graph a is labeled, “Concentration,” and the x-axis is labeled, “Time.” Three curves are plotted on graph a. The first is labeled, “[S O subscript 2];” this line starts high on the y-axis, ends midway down the y-axis, has a steep initial slope and a more gradual slope as it approaches the far right on the x-axis. The second curve on this graph is labeled, “[O subscript 2];” this line mimics the first except that it starts and ends about fifty percent lower on the y-axis. The third curve is the inverse of the first in shape and is labeled, “[S O subscript 3].” The y-axis on graph b is labeled, “Concentration,” and the x-axis is labeled, “Time.” Three curves are plotted on graph b. The first is labeled, “[S O subscript 2];” this line starts low on the y-axis, ends midway up the y-axis, has a steep initial slope and a more gradual slope as it approaches the far right on the x-axis. The second curve on this graph is labeled, “[O subscript 2];” this line mimics the first except that it ends about fifty percent lower on the y-axis. The third curve is the inverse of the first in shape and is labeled, “[S O subscript 3].” The y-axis on graph c is labeled, “Reaction Quotient,” and the x-axis is labeled, “Time.” A single curve is plotted on graph c. This curve begins at the bottom of the y-axis and rises steeply up near the top of the y-axis, then levels off into a horizontal line. The top point of this line is labeled, “k.”

When a mixture of reactants and products of a reaction reaches equilibrium at a given temperature, its reaction quotient always has the same value. This value is called the equilibrium constant (K) of the reaction at that temperature. As for the reaction quotient,

when evaluated in terms of concentrations, it is noted as K_c.

That a reaction quotient always assumes the same value at equilibrium can be expressed as:

$$Q_c \text{ at equilibrium} = K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{C}]^x[\mathrm{D}]^y\ldots}{[\mathrm{A}]^m[\mathrm{B}]^n\ldots} \tag{4.3.5}$$

This equation is a mathematical statement of the law of mass action: When a reaction has attained equilibrium at a given temperature, the reaction quotient for the reaction always has the same value.

Example 4.3.2: Evaluating a Reaction Quotient

Gaseous nitrogen dioxide forms dinitrogen tetroxide according to this equation:

$$2\,\mathrm{NO}_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{N_2O}_{4(g)}$$

When 0.10 mol $\mathrm{NO_2}$ is added to a 1.0-L flask at 25 °C, the concentration changes so that at equilibrium, [NO_2] = 0.016 M and [N_2O_4] = 0.042 M.

a. What is the value of the reaction quotient before any reaction occurs?
b. What is the value of the equilibrium constant for the reaction?

Solution

a. Before any product is formed, $[\mathrm{NO_2}] = \dfrac{0.10\text{ mol}}{1.0\text{ L}} = 0.10\ M$, and [$N_2O_4$] = 0 *M*. Thus,

$$Q_c = \frac{[\mathrm{N_2O_4}]}{[\mathrm{NO_2}]^2} = \frac{0}{0.10^2} = 0$$

b. At equilibrium, the value of the equilibrium constant is equal to the value of the reaction quotient. At equilibrium,

$$K_c = Q_c = \frac{[\mathrm{N_2O_4}]}{[\mathrm{NO_2}]^2} = \frac{0.042}{0.016^2} = 1.6 \times 10^2.$$

The equilibrium constant is 1.6×10^2.

Note that dimensional analysis would suggest the unit for this K_c value should be M^{-1}. However, it is common practice to omit units for K_c values computed as described here, since it is the magnitude of an equilibrium constant that relays useful information. As will be discussed later in this module, the rigorous approach to computing equilibrium constants uses dimensionless quantities derived from activities instead of molar concentrations, and so K_c values are truly unitless.

Exercise 4.3.2

For the reaction

$$2\,\mathrm{SO_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{SO_3}(g)$$

the concentrations at equilibrium are [SO_2] = 0.90 *M*, [O_2] = 0.35 *M*, and [SO_3] = 1.1 *M*. What is the value of the equilibrium constant, K_c?

Answer

K_c = 4.3

The magnitude of an equilibrium constant is a measure of the yield of a reaction when it reaches equilibrium. A large value for K_c indicates that equilibrium is attained only after the reactants have been largely converted into products. A small value of K_c—much less than 1—indicates that equilibrium is attained when only a small proportion of the reactants have been converted into products.

Once a value of K_c is known for a reaction, it can be used to predict directional shifts when compared to the value of Q_c. A system that is not at equilibrium will proceed in the direction that establishes equilibrium. The data in Figure 4.3.2 illustrate this. When

heated to a consistent temperature, 800 °C, different starting mixtures of CO, H_2O, CO_2, and H_2 react to reach compositions adhering to the same equilibrium (the value of Q_c changes until it equals the value of K_c). This value is 0.640, the equilibrium constant for the reaction under these conditions.

$$CO(g) + H_2O(g) \rightleftharpoons CO_2(g) + H_2(g) \quad K_c = 0.640 \quad T = 800^\circ C \tag{4.3.6}$$

It is important to recognize that an equilibrium can be established starting either from reactants or from products, or from a mixture of both. For example, equilibrium was established from Mixture 2 in Figure 4.3.2 when the products of the reaction were heated in a closed container. In fact, one technique used to determine whether a reaction is truly at equilibrium is to approach equilibrium starting with reactants in one experiment and starting with products in another. If the same value of the reaction quotient is observed when the concentrations stop changing in both experiments, then we may be certain that the system has reached equilibrium.

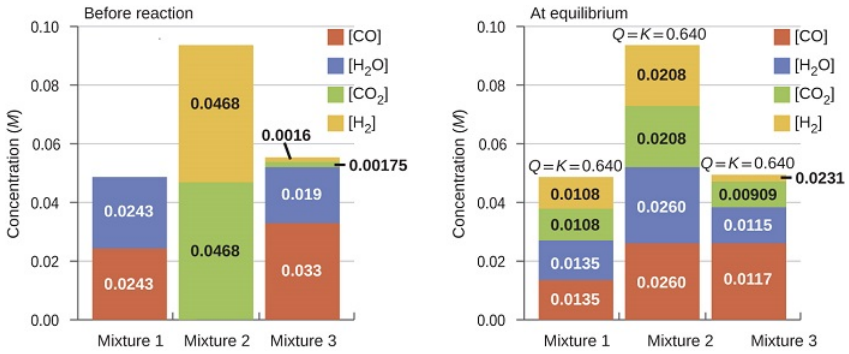


Figure 4.3.2: Concentrations of three mixtures are shown before and after reaching equilibrium at 800 °C for the so-called water gas shift reaction (Equation 4.3.6).

Two sets of bar graphs are shown. The left is labeled, “Before reaction,” and the right is labeled, “At equilibrium.” Both graphs have y-axes labeled, “Concentration (M),” and three bars on the x-axes labeled, “Mixture 1,” “Mixture 2,” and “Mixture 3.” The y-axis has a scale beginning at 0.00 and ending at 0.10, with measurement increments of 0.02. The bars on the graphs are color coded and a key is provided with a legend. Red is labeled, “C O;” blue is labeled, “H subscript 2 O;” green is labeled, “C O subscript 2,” and yellow is labeled, “H subscript 2.” The graph on the left shows the red bar for mixture one just above 0.02 and the blue bar near 0.05. For mixture two, the green bar is near 0.05, and the yellow bar is near 0.09. For mixture 3, the red bar is near 0.01, the blue bar is slightly above that with green and yellow topping it off at 0.02. On the right graph, the bar for mixture one shows the red bar slightly above 0.01, the blue bar stacked on it rising slightly above 0.02, the green rising near 0.04, and the yellow bar reaching near 0.05. A label above this bar reads, “Q equals 0.640.” The bar for mixture two shows the red bar slightly above 0.02, the blue bar stacked on it rising near 0.05, the green rising near 0.07, and the yellow bar reaching near 0.10. A label above this bar reads “Q equals 0.640.” The bar for mixture three shows the red bar near 0.01, the blue bar stacked on it rising slightly above 0.01, the green rising near 0.02, and the yellow bar reaching 0.02. A label above this bar reads “Q equals 0.640”.

Example 4.3.3: Predicting the Direction of Reaction

Given here are the starting concentrations of reactants and products for three experiments involving this reaction:

$$CO(g) + H_2O(g) \rightleftharpoons CO_2(g) + H_2(g)$$

with $K_c = 0.64$. Determine in which direction the reaction proceeds as it goes to equilibrium in each of the three experiments shown.

Reactant/Products for Three Experiments

Reactants/Products	Experiment 1	Experiment 2	Experiment 3
$[CO]_i$	0.0203 *M*	0.011 *M*	0.0094 *M*
$[H_2O]_i$	0.0203 *M*	0.0011 *M*	0.0025 *M*
$[CO_2]_i$	0.0040 *M*	0.037 *M*	0.0015 *M*
$[H_2]_i$	0.0040 *M*	0.046 *M*	0.0076 *M*

Solution

Experiment 1:

$$Q_c = \frac{[CO_2][H_2]}{[CO][H_2O]} = \frac{(0.0040)(0.0040)}{(0.0203)(0.0203)} = 0.039.$$

$Q_c < K_c$ (0.039 < 0.64)

The reaction will shift to the right.

Experiment 2:

$$Q_c = \frac{[CO_2][H_2]}{[CO][H_2O]} = \frac{(0.037)(0.046)}{(0.011)(0.0011)} = 1.4 \times 10^2$$

$Q_c > K_c$ (140 > 0.64)

The reaction will shift to the left.

Experiment 3:

$$Q_c = \frac{[CO_2][H_2]}{[CO][H_2O]} = \frac{(0.0015)(0.0076)}{(0.0094)(0.0025)} = 0.48$$

$Q_c < K_c$ (0.48 < 0.64)

The reaction will shift to the right.

Exercise 4.3.3

Calculate the reaction quotient and determine the direction in which each of the following reactions will proceed to reach equilibrium.

(a) A 1.00-L flask containing 0.0500 mol of NO(g), 0.0155 mol of Cl_2(g), and 0.500 mol of NOCl:

$$2\,NO(g) + Cl_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NOCl(g) \quad K_c = 4.6 \times 10^4$$

(b) A 5.0-L flask containing 17 g of NH_3, 14 g of N_2, and 12 g of H_2:

$$N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3(g) \quad K_c = 0.060$$

(c) A 2.00-L flask containing 230 g of SO_3(g):

$$2\,SO_3(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,SO_2(g) + O_2(g) \quad K_c = 0.230$$

Answer a

Q_c = 6.45 × 10^3, shifts right.

Answer b

Q_c = 0.12, shifts left.

Answer c

Q_c = 0, shifts right

In Example 4.3.2, it was mentioned that the common practice is to omit units when evaluating reaction quotients and equilibrium constants. It should be pointed out that using concentrations in these computations is a convenient but simplified approach that sometimes leads to results that seemingly conflict with the law of mass action. For example, equilibria involving aqueous ions often exhibit equilibrium constants that vary quite significantly (are *not* constant) at high solution concentrations. This may be avoided by computing K_c values using the *activities* of the reactants and products in the equilibrium system instead of their concentrations. The activity of a substance is a measure of its effective concentration under specified conditions. While a detailed discussion of this important quantity is beyond the scope of an introductory text, it is necessary to be aware of a few important aspects:

- Activities are dimensionless (**unitless**) quantities and are in essence “adjusted” concentrations.
- For relatively dilute solutions, a solute's activity and its molar concentration are roughly equal.

- Activities for pure condensed phases (solids and liquids) are equal to 1.
- Activities for solvents in dilute solutions are equal to 1.

As a consequence of this last two aspects, Q_c and K_c expressions do not contain terms for solids or liquids or solvents in dilute solutions (being numerically equal to 1, these terms have no effect on the expression's value). Several examples of equilibria yielding such expressions will be encountered in this section.

Homogeneous Equilibria

A homogeneous equilibrium is one in which all of the reactants and products are present in a single solution (by definition, a homogeneous mixture). In this chapter, we will concentrate on the two most common types of homogeneous equilibria: those occurring in liquid-phase solutions and those involving exclusively gaseous species. Reactions between solutes in liquid solutions belong to one type of homogeneous equilibria. The chemical species involved can be molecules, ions, or a mixture of both. Several examples are provided here:

Example 1

$$\mathrm{C_2H_2}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{Br_2}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{C_2H_2Br_4}(aq) \tag{4.3.7}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{C_2H_2Br_4}]}{[\mathrm{C_2H_2}][\mathrm{Br_2}]^2} \tag{4.3.8}$$

Example 2

$$\mathrm{I_2}(aq) + \mathrm{I^-}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{I_3^-}(aq) \tag{4.3.9}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{I_3^-}]}{[\mathrm{I_2}][\mathrm{I^-}]} \tag{4.3.10}$$

Example 3

$$\mathrm{Hg_2^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{NO_3^-}(aq) + 3\,\mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{Hg^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{HNO_2}(aq) + 4\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \tag{4.3.11}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{Hg^{2+}}]^2[\mathrm{HNO_2}]}{[\mathrm{Hg_2^{2+}}][\mathrm{NO_3^-}][\mathrm{H_3O^+}]^3} \tag{4.3.12}$$

Example 4

$$\mathrm{HF}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{F^-}(aq) \tag{4.3.13}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{F^-}]}{[\mathrm{HF}]} \tag{4.3.14}$$

Example 5

$$\mathrm{NH_3}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{NH_4^+}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \tag{4.3.15}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{NH_4^+}][\mathrm{OH^-}]}{[\mathrm{NH_3}]} \tag{4.3.16}$$

In each of these examples, the equilibrium system is an aqueous solution, as denoted by the *aq* annotations on the solute formulas. Since $H_2O(l)$ is the solvent for these solutions, it is assigned an activity of 1, and thus **does not** appear explicitly as a term in the K_c expression, as discussed earlier, even though it may also appear as a reactant or product in the chemical equation.

Reactions in which all reactants and products are gases represent a second class of homogeneous equilibria. We use molar concentrations in the following examples, but we will see shortly that partial pressures of the gases may be used as well:

Example 1

$$\mathrm{C_2H_6}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{C_2H_4}(g) + \mathrm{H_2}(g) \tag{4.3.17}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{C_2H_4}][\mathrm{H_2}]}{[\mathrm{C_2H_6}]} \tag{4.3.18}$$

Example 2

$$3\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{O_3}(g) \tag{4.3.19}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{O_3}]^2}{[\mathrm{O_2}]^3} \tag{4.3.20}$$

Example 3

$$\mathrm{N_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g) \tag{4.3.21}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{NH_3}]^2}{[\mathrm{N_2}][\mathrm{H_2}]^3} \tag{4.3.22}$$

Example 4

$$\mathrm{C_3H_8}(g) + 5\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 3\,\mathrm{CO_2}(g) + 4\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g) \tag{4.3.23}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{CO_2}]^3[\mathrm{H_2O}]^4}{[\mathrm{C_3H_8}][\mathrm{O_2}]^5} \tag{4.3.24}$$

Note that the concentration of $\mathrm{H_2O}_{(g)}$ has been included in the last example because water is not the solvent in this gas-phase reaction and its concentration (and activity) changes.

Whenever gases are involved in a reaction, the partial pressure of each gas can be used instead of its concentration in the equation for the reaction quotient because the partial pressure of a gas is directly proportional to its concentration at constant temperature. This relationship can be derived from the ideal gas equation, where *M* is the molar concentration of gas, $\frac{n}{V}$.

$$PV = nRT \tag{4.3.25}$$

$$P = \left(\frac{n}{V}\right)RT \tag{4.3.26}$$

$$= MRT \tag{4.3.27}$$

Thus, at constant temperature, the pressure of a gas is **directly proportional** to its concentration. Using the partial pressures of the gases, we can write the reaction quotient for the system

$$\mathrm{C_2H_6}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{C_2H_4}(g) + \mathrm{H_2}(g) \tag{4.3.28}$$

by following the same guidelines for deriving concentration-based expressions:

$$Q_P = \frac{P_{\mathrm{C_2H_4}} P_{\mathrm{H_2}}}{P_{\mathrm{C_2H_6}}} \tag{4.3.29}$$

In this equation we use Q_P to indicate a reaction quotient written with partial pressures: $P_{C_2H_6}$ is the partial pressure of C_2H_6; P_{H_2}, the partial pressure of H_2; and $P_{C_2H_6}$, the partial pressure of C_2H_4. At equilibrium:

$$K_P = Q_P = \frac{P_{C_2H_4} P_{H_2}}{P_{C_2H_6}} \tag{4.3.30}$$

The subscript P in the symbol K_P designates an equilibrium constant derived using partial pressures instead of concentrations. The equilibrium constant, K_P, is still a constant, but its numeric value may differ from the equilibrium constant found for the same reaction by using concentrations.

Conversion between a value for K_c, an equilibrium constant expressed in terms of concentrations, and a value for K_P, an equilibrium constant expressed in terms of pressures, is straightforward (a K or Q without a subscript could be either concentration or pressure).

The equation relating K_c and K_P is derived as follows. For the gas-phase reaction:

$$m\mathrm{A} + n\mathrm{B} \rightleftharpoons x\mathrm{C} + y\mathrm{D} \tag{4.3.31}$$

with

$$K_P = \frac{(P_C)^x (P_D)^y}{(P_A)^m (P_B)^n} \tag{4.3.32}$$

$$= \frac{([\mathrm{C}] \times RT)^x ([\mathrm{D}] \times RT)^y}{([\mathrm{A}] \times RT)^m ([\mathrm{B}] \times RT)^n} \tag{4.3.33}$$

$$= \frac{[\mathrm{C}]^x [\mathrm{D}]^y}{[\mathrm{A}]^m [\mathrm{B}]^n} \times \frac{(RT)^{x+y}}{(RT)^{m+n}} \tag{4.3.34}$$

$$= K_c (RT)^{(x+y)-(m+n)} \tag{4.3.35}$$

$$= K_c (RT)^{\Delta n} \tag{4.3.36}$$

The relationship between K_c and K_P is

$$K_P = K_c (RT)^{\Delta n} \tag{4.3.37}$$

In this equation, Δn is the difference between the sum of the coefficients of the *gaseous* products and the sum of the coefficients of the *gaseous* reactants in the reaction (the change in moles of gas between the reactants and the products). For the gas-phase reaction $m\mathrm{A} + n\mathrm{B} \rightleftharpoons x\mathrm{C} + y\mathrm{D}$, we have

$$\Delta n = (x + y) - (m + n) \tag{4.3.38}$$

Example 4.3.4: Calculation of K_P

Write the equations for the conversion of K_c to K_P for each of the following reactions:

a. $\mathrm{C_2H_6}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{C_2H_4}(g) + \mathrm{H_2}(g)$
b. $\mathrm{CO}(g) + \mathrm{H_2O}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CO_2}(g) + \mathrm{H_2}(g)$
c. $\mathrm{N_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g)$
d. K_c is equal to 0.28 for the following reaction at 900 °C:

$$\mathrm{CS_2}(g) + 4\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CH_4}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2S}(g)$$

What is K_P at this temperature?

Solution

(a) $\Delta n = (2) - (1) = 1$

$$K_P = K_c\,(RT)^{\Delta n} = K_c\,(RT)^1 = K_c\,(RT)$$

(b) $\Delta n = (2) - (2) = 0$

$$K_P = K_c\,(RT)^{\Delta n} = K_c\,(RT)^0 = K_c$$

(c) $\Delta n = (2) - (1 + 3) = -2$

$$K_P = K_c\,(RT)^{\Delta n} = K_c\,(RT)^{-2} = \frac{K_c}{(RT)^2}$$

d) $K_P = K_c\,(\mathrm{RT})^{\Delta n} = (0.28)[(0.0821)(1173)]^{-2} = 3.0 \times 10^{-5}$

Exercise 4.3.4

Write the equations for the conversion of K_c to K_P for each of the following reactions, which occur in the gas phase:

a. $2\,\mathrm{SO_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{SO_3}(g)$
b. $\mathrm{N_2O_4}(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NO_2}(g)$
c. $\mathrm{C_3H_8}(g) + 5\,\mathrm{O_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons 3\,\mathrm{CO_2}(g) + 4\,\mathrm{H_2O}(g)$
d. At 227 °C, the following reaction has $K_c = 0.0952$:

$$\mathrm{CH_3OH}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CO}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2}(g)$$

What would be the value of K_P at this temperature?

Answer a

$K_P = K_c\,(RT)^{-1}$

Answer b

$K_P = K_c\,(RT)$

Answer c

$K_P = K_c\,(RT)$;

Answer d

160 or 1.6×10^2

Heterogeneous Equilibria

A heterogeneous equilibrium is a system in which reactants and products are found in two or more phases. The phases may be any combination of solid, liquid, or gas phases, and solutions. When dealing with these equilibria, remember that solids and pure liquids do not appear in equilibrium constant expressions (the activities of pure solids, pure liquids, and solvents are 1).

Some heterogeneous equilibria involve chemical changes:

Example 1

$$\mathrm{PbCl_2}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Pb^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{Cl^-}(aq) \tag{4.3.39}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = [\mathrm{Pb^{2+}}][\mathrm{Cl^-}]^2 \tag{4.3.40}$$

Example 1

$$\mathrm{CaO}(s) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CaCO_3}(s) \tag{4.3.41}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{1}{[\mathrm{CO_2}]} \tag{4.3.42}$$

Example 1

$$\mathrm{C}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{S}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CS_2}(g) \tag{4.3.43}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{CS_2}]}{[\mathrm{S}]^2} \tag{4.3.44}$$

Other heterogeneous equilibria involve phase changes, for example, the evaporation of liquid bromine, as shown in the following equation:

$$\mathrm{Br_2}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Br_2}(g) \tag{4.3.45}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_c = [\mathrm{Br_2}] \tag{4.3.46}$$

We can write equations for reaction quotients of heterogeneous equilibria that involve gases, using **partial pressures** instead of concentrations. Two examples are:

$$\mathrm{CaO}(s) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CaCO_3}(s) \tag{4.3.47}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_P = \frac{1}{P_{\mathrm{CO_2}}} \tag{4.3.48}$$

$$\mathrm{C}(s) + 2\,\mathrm{S}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CS_2}(g) \tag{4.3.49}$$

with associated equilibrium constant

$$K_P = \frac{P_{\mathrm{CS_2}}}{(P_{\mathrm{S}})^2} \tag{4.3.50}$$

Summary

For any reaction that is at equilibrium, the reaction quotient *Q* is equal to the equilibrium constant *K* for the reaction. If a reactant or product is a pure solid, a pure liquid, or the solvent in a dilute solution, the concentration of this component does not appear in the expression for the equilibrium constant. At equilibrium, the values of the concentrations of the reactants and products are constant. Their particular values may vary depending on conditions, but the value of the reaction quotient will always equal *K* (K_c when using concentrations or K_P when using partial pressures).

A homogeneous equilibrium is an equilibrium in which all components are in the same phase. A heterogeneous equilibrium is an equilibrium in which components are in two or more phases. We can decide whether a reaction is at equilibrium by comparing the reaction quotient with the equilibrium constant for the reaction.

Key Equations

- $Q = \dfrac{[\mathrm{C}]^x[\mathrm{D}]^y}{[\mathrm{A}]^m[\mathrm{B}]^n}$ where $m\mathrm{A} + n\mathrm{B} \rightleftharpoons x\mathrm{C} + y\mathrm{D}$
- $Q_P = \dfrac{(P_C)^x(P_D)^y}{(P_A)^m(P_B)^n}$ where $m\mathrm{A} + n\mathrm{B} \rightleftharpoons x\mathrm{C} + y\mathrm{D}$
- $P = MRT$
- $K_P = K_c\,(RT)^{\Delta n}$

Glossary

equilibrium constant (*K*)
value of the reaction quotient for a system at equilibrium

heterogeneous equilibria
equilibria between reactants and products in different phases

homogeneous equilibria
equilibria within a single phase

K_c
: equilibrium constant for reactions based on concentrations of reactants and products

K_P
: equilibrium constant for gas-phase reactions based on partial pressures of reactants and products

law of mass action
: when a reversible reaction has attained equilibrium at a given temperature, the reaction quotient remains constant

reaction quotient (*Q*)
: ratio of the product of molar concentrations (or pressures) of the products to that of the reactants, each concentration (or pressure) being raised to the power equal to the coefficient in the equation

---

This page titled 4.3: Equilibrium Constants is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **13.3: Equilibrium Constants** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

4.4: Shifting Equilibria - Le Chatelier's Principle

Learning Objectives

- Describe the ways in which an equilibrium system can be stressed
- Predict the response of a stressed equilibrium using Le Chatelier's principle

As we saw in the previous section, reactions proceed in both directions (reactants go to products and products go to reactants). We can tell a reaction is at equilibrium if the reaction quotient (Q) is equal to the equilibrium constant (K). We next address what happens when a system at equilibrium is disturbed so that Q is no longer equal to K. If a system at equilibrium is subjected to a perturbance or stress (such as a change in concentration) the position of equilibrium changes. Since this stress affects the concentrations of the reactants and the products, the value of Q will no longer equal the value of K. To re-establish equilibrium, the system will either shift toward the products (if $Q < K$) or the reactants (if $Q > K$) until Q returns to the same value as K.

This process is described by Le Chatelier's principle: When a chemical system at equilibrium is disturbed, it returns to equilibrium by counteracting the disturbance. As described in the previous paragraph, the disturbance causes a change in Q; the reaction will shift to re-establish $Q = K$.

Predicting the Direction of a Reversible Reaction

Le Chatelier's principle can be used to predict changes in equilibrium concentrations when a system that is at equilibrium is subjected to a stress. However, if we have a mixture of reactants and products that have not yet reached equilibrium, the changes necessary to reach equilibrium may not be so obvious. In such a case, we can compare the values of *Q* and *K* for the system to predict the changes.

A chemical system at equilibrium can be **temporarily** shifted out of equilibrium by adding or removing one or more of the reactants or products. The concentrations of both reactants and products then undergo additional changes to return the system to equilibrium.

The stress on the system in Figure 4.4.1 is the reduction of the equilibrium concentration of SCN^- (lowering the concentration of one of the reactants would cause *Q* to be larger than *K*). As a consequence, Le Chatelier's principle leads us to predict that the concentration of $Fe(SCN)^{2+}$ should decrease, increasing the concentration of SCN^- part way back to its original concentration, and increasing the concentration of Fe^{3+} above its initial equilibrium concentration.



Figure 4.4.1: (a) The test tube contains 0.1 M Fe^{3+}. (b) Thiocyanate ion has been added to solution in (a), forming the red $Fe(SCN)^{2+}$ ion. $Fe^{3+}(aq) + SCN^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons Fe(SCN)^{2+}(aq)$. *(c) Silver nitrate has been added to the solution in (b), precipitating some of the SCN− as the white solid AgSCN.* $Ag^+(aq) + SCN^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons AgSCN(s)$ *The decrease in the SCN− concentration shifts the first equilibrium in the solution to the left, decreasing the concentration (and lightening color) of the* $Fe(SCN)^{2+}$. *(credit: modification of work by Mark Ott).*

Three capped test tubes held vertically in clamps are shown in pictures labeled, "a," "b," and "c." The test tube in picture a is half filled with a clear, orange liquid. The test tube in picture b is half filled with a dark, burgundy liquid. The test tube in picture c is half filled with a slightly cloudy, orange liquid.

The effect of a change in concentration on a system at equilibrium is illustrated further by the equilibrium of this chemical reaction:

$$H_{2(g)} + I_{2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,HI_{(g)} \tag{4.4.1}$$

$$K_c = 50.0 \text{ at } 400\,^\circ C \tag{4.4.2}$$

The numeric values for this example have been determined experimentally. A mixture of gases at 400 °C with $[\mathrm{H_2}] = [\mathrm{I_2}] = 0.221\ M$ and $[\mathrm{HI}] = 1.563\ M$ is at equilibrium; for this mixture, $Q_c = K_c = 50.0$. If $\mathrm{H_2}$ is introduced into the system so quickly that its concentration doubles before it begins to react (new $[\mathrm{H_2}] = 0.442\ M$), the reaction will shift so that a new equilibrium is reached, at which

- $[\mathrm{H_2}] = 0.374\ M$,
- $[\mathrm{I_2}] = 0.153\ M$, and
- $[\mathrm{HI}] = 1.692\ M$.

This gives:

$$Q_c = \frac{[\mathrm{HI}]^2}{[\mathrm{H_2}][\mathrm{I_2}]} = \frac{(1.692)^2}{(0.374)(0.153)} = 50.0 = K_c \tag{4.4.3}$$

We have stressed this system by introducing additional $\mathrm{H_2}$. The stress is relieved when the reaction shifts to the right, using up some (but not all) of the excess $\mathrm{H_2}$, reducing the amount of uncombined $\mathrm{I_2}$, and forming additional HI.

Effect of Change in Pressure on Equilibrium

Sometimes we can change the position of equilibrium by changing the pressure of a system. However, changes in pressure have a measurable effect only in systems in which gases are involved, and then only when the chemical reaction produces a change in the total number of gas molecules in the system. An easy way to recognize such a system is to look for different numbers of moles of gas on the reactant and product sides of the equilibrium. While evaluating pressure (as well as related factors like volume), it is important to remember that equilibrium constants are defined with regard to concentration (for K_c) or partial pressure (for K_P). Some changes to total pressure, like adding an inert gas that is not part of the equilibrium, will change the total pressure but not the partial pressures of the gases in the equilibrium constant expression. Thus, addition of a gas not involved in the equilibrium will not perturb the equilibrium.

As we increase the pressure of a gaseous system at equilibrium, either by decreasing the volume of the system or by adding more of one of the components of the equilibrium mixture, we introduce a stress by increasing the partial pressures of one or more of the components. In accordance with Le Chatelier's principle, a shift in the equilibrium that reduces the total number of molecules per unit of volume will be favored because this relieves the stress. The reverse reaction would be favored by a decrease in pressure.

Consider what happens when we increase the pressure on a system in which NO, $\mathrm{O_2}$, and $\mathrm{NO_2}$ are at equilibrium:

$$2\,\mathrm{NO(g)} + \mathrm{O_2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NO_2(g)} \tag{4.4.4}$$

The formation of additional amounts of $\mathrm{NO_2}$ decreases the total number of molecules in the system because each time two molecules of $\mathrm{NO_2}$ form, a total of three molecules of NO and $\mathrm{O_2}$ are consumed. This reduces the total pressure exerted by the system and reduces, but does not completely relieve, the stress of the increased pressure. On the other hand, a decrease in the pressure on the system favors decomposition of $\mathrm{NO_2}$ into NO and $\mathrm{O_2}$, which tends to restore the pressure.

Now consider this reaction:

$$\mathrm{N_2(g)} + \mathrm{O_2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{NO(g)} \tag{4.4.5}$$

Because there is no change in the total number of molecules in the system during reaction, a change in pressure does not favor either formation or decomposition of gaseous nitrogen monoxide.

Effect of Change in Temperature on Equilibrium

Changing concentration or pressure perturbs an equilibrium because the reaction quotient is shifted away from the equilibrium value. Changing the temperature of a system at equilibrium has a different effect: A change in temperature actually changes the value of the equilibrium constant. However, we can qualitatively predict the effect of the temperature change by treating it as a stress on the system and applying Le Chatelier's principle.

When hydrogen reacts with gaseous iodine, heat is evolved.

$$\mathrm{H_2(g)} + \mathrm{I_2(g)} \rightleftharpoons 2\,\mathrm{HI(g)} \quad \Delta H = -9.4\ \mathrm{kJ\ (exothermic)} \tag{4.4.6}$$

Because this reaction is exothermic, we can write it with heat as a product.

$$\mathrm{H_2(g) + I_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,HI(g) + heat} \tag{4.4.7}$$

Increasing the temperature of the reaction increases the internal energy of the system. Thus, increasing the temperature has the effect of increasing the amount of one of the products of this reaction. The reaction shifts to the left to relieve the stress, and there is an increase in the concentration of $\mathrm{H_2}$ and $\mathrm{I_2}$ and a reduction in the concentration of HI. Lowering the temperature of this system reduces the amount of energy present, favors the production of heat, and favors the formation of hydrogen iodide.

When we change the temperature of a system at equilibrium, the equilibrium constant for the reaction changes. Lowering the temperature in the HI system increases the equilibrium constant: At the new equilibrium the concentration of HI has increased and the concentrations of $\mathrm{H_2}$ and $\mathrm{I_2}$ decreased. Raising the temperature decreases the value of the equilibrium constant, from 67.5 at 357 °C to 50.0 at 400 °C.

Temperature affects the equilibrium between $\mathrm{NO_2}$ and $\mathrm{N_2O_4}$ in this reaction

$$\mathrm{N_2O_4(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO_2(g)} \quad \Delta H = 57.20\ \mathrm{kJ} \tag{4.4.8}$$

The positive ΔH value tells us that the reaction is endothermic and could be written

$$\mathrm{heat + N_2O_4(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO_2(g)} \tag{4.4.9}$$

At higher temperatures, the gas mixture has a deep brown color, indicative of a significant amount of brown $\mathrm{NO_2}$ molecules. If, however, we put a stress on the system by cooling the mixture (withdrawing energy), the equilibrium shifts to the left to supply some of the energy lost by cooling. The concentration of colorless $\mathrm{N_2O_4}$ increases, and the concentration of brown $\mathrm{NO_2}$ decreases, causing the brown color to fade.

Catalysts Do Not Affect Equilibrium

As we learned during our study of kinetics, a catalyst can speed up the rate of a reaction. Though this increase in reaction rate may cause a system to reach equilibrium more quickly (by speeding up the forward and reverse reactions), a catalyst has no effect on the value of an equilibrium constant nor on equilibrium concentrations.

The interplay of changes in concentration or pressure, temperature, and the lack of an influence of a catalyst on a chemical equilibrium is illustrated in the industrial synthesis of ammonia from nitrogen and hydrogen according to the equation

$$\mathrm{N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3(g)} \tag{4.4.10}$$

A large quantity of ammonia is manufactured by this reaction. Each year, ammonia is among the top 10 chemicals, by mass, manufactured in the world. About 2 billion pounds are manufactured in the United States each year. Ammonia plays a vital role in our global economy. It is used in the production of fertilizers and is, itself, an important fertilizer for the growth of corn, cotton, and other crops. Large quantities of ammonia are converted to nitric acid, which plays an important role in the production of fertilizers, explosives, plastics, dyes, and fibers, and is also used in the steel industry.

Fritz Haber

Haber was born in Breslau, Prussia (presently Wroclaw, Poland) in December 1868. He went on to study chemistry and, while at the University of Karlsruhe, he developed what would later be known as the Haber process: the catalytic formation of ammonia from hydrogen and atmospheric nitrogen under high temperatures and pressures.



The work of Nobel Prize recipient Fritz Haber revolutionized agricultural practices in the early 20th century. His work also affected wartime strategies, adding chemical weapons to the artillery.

For this work, Haber was awarded the 1918 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for synthesis of ammonia from its elements. The Haber process was a boon to agriculture, as it allowed the production of fertilizers to no longer be dependent on mined feed stocks

such as sodium nitrate.

$$N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3(g)$$

Currently, the annual production of synthetic nitrogen fertilizers exceeds 100 million tons and synthetic fertilizer production has increased the number of humans that arable land can support from 1.9 persons per hectare in 1908 to 4.3 in 2008. The availability of nitrogen is a strong limiting factor to the growth of plants. Despite accounting for 78% of air, diatomic nitrogen (N_2) is nutritionally unavailable due the tremendous stability of the nitrogen-nitrogen triple bond. For plants to use atmospheric nitrogen, the nitrogen must be converted to a more bioavailable form (this conversion is called nitrogen fixation).

In addition to his work in ammonia production, Haber is also remembered by history as one of the fathers of chemical warfare. During World War I, he played a major role in the development of poisonous gases used for trench warfare. Regarding his role in these developments, Haber said, “During peace time a scientist belongs to the World, but during war time he belongs to his country.”[1] Haber defended the use of gas warfare against accusations that it was inhumane, saying that death was death, by whatever means it was inflicted. He stands as an example of the ethical dilemmas that face scientists in times of war and the double-edged nature of the sword of science.

Like Haber, the products made from ammonia can be multifaceted. In addition to their value for agriculture, nitrogen compounds can also be used to achieve destructive ends. Ammonium nitrate has also been used in explosives, including improvised explosive devices. Ammonium nitrate was one of the components of the bomb used in the attack on the Alfred P. Murrah Federal Building in downtown Oklahoma City on April 19, 1995.

It has long been known that nitrogen and hydrogen react to form ammonia. However, it became possible to manufacture ammonia in useful quantities by the reaction of nitrogen and hydrogen only in the early 20th century after the factors that influence its equilibrium were understood.

To be practical, an industrial process must give a large yield of product relatively quickly. One way to increase the yield of ammonia is to increase the pressure on the system in which N_2, H_2, and NH_3 are at equilibrium or are coming to equilibrium.

$$N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NH_3(g) \tag{4.4.11}$$

The formation of additional amounts of ammonia reduces the total pressure exerted by the system and somewhat reduces the stress of the increased pressure.

Although increasing the pressure of a mixture of N_2, H_2, and NH_3 will increase the yield of ammonia, at low temperatures, the rate of formation of ammonia is slow. At room temperature, for example, the reaction is so slow that if we prepared a mixture of N_2 and H_2, no detectable amount of ammonia would form during our lifetime. The formation of ammonia from hydrogen and nitrogen is an exothermic process:

$$N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightarrow 2\,NH_3(g) \quad \Delta H = -92.2\ \text{kJ} \tag{4.4.12}$$

Thus, increasing the temperature to increase the rate lowers the yield. If we lower the temperature to shift the equilibrium to favor the formation of more ammonia, equilibrium is reached more slowly because of the large decrease of reaction rate with decreasing temperature.

Part of the rate of formation lost by operating at lower temperatures can be recovered by using a catalyst. The net effect of the catalyst on the reaction is to cause equilibrium to be reached more rapidly. In the commercial production of ammonia, conditions of about 500 °C, 150–900 atm, and the presence of a catalyst are used to give the best compromise among rate, yield, and the cost of the equipment necessary to produce and contain high-pressure gases at high temperatures (Figure 4.4.2).

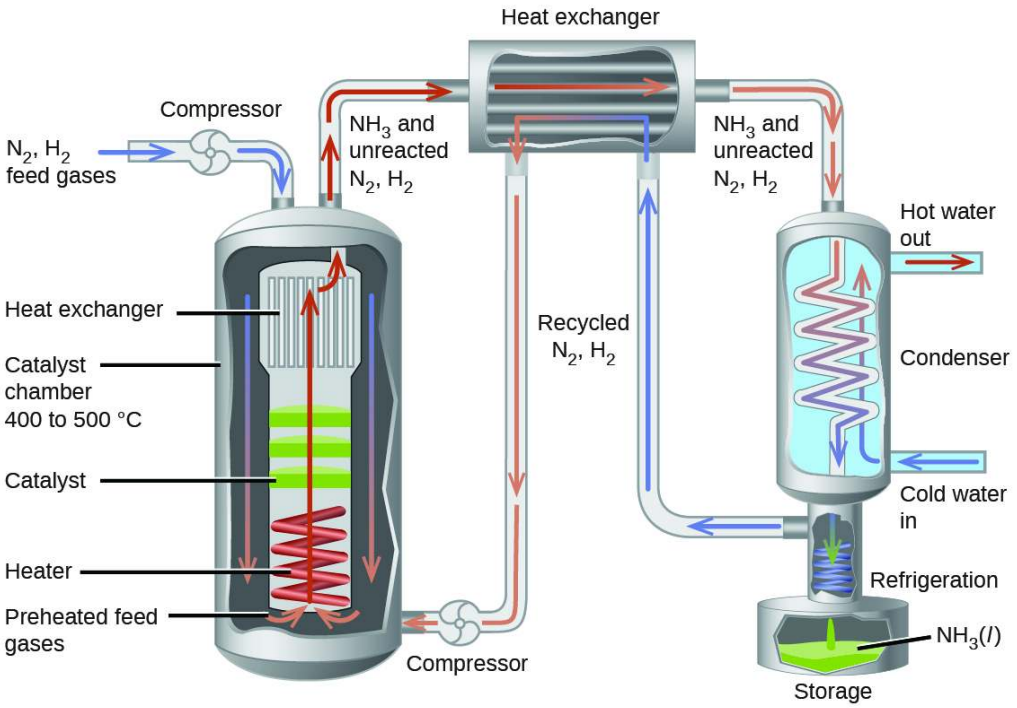


Figure 4.4.2: Commercial production of ammonia requires heavy equipment to handle the high temperatures and pressures required. This schematic outlines the design of an ammonia plant.

Summary

Systems at equilibrium can be disturbed by changes to temperature, concentration, and, in some cases, volume and pressure; volume and pressure changes will disturb equilibrium if the number of moles of gas is different on the reactant and product sides of the reaction. The system's response to these disturbances is described by Le Chatelier's principle: The system will respond in a way that counteracts the disturbance. Not all changes to the system result in a disturbance of the equilibrium. Adding a catalyst affects the rates of the reactions but does not alter the equilibrium, and changing pressure or volume will not significantly disturb systems with no gases or with equal numbers of moles of gas on the reactant and product side.

Table 4.4.1: Effects of Disturbances of Equilibrium and K

Disturbance	Observed Change as Equilibrium is Restored	Direction of Shift	Effect on K
reactant added	added reactant is partially consumed	toward products	none
product added	added product is partially consumed	toward reactants	none
decrease in volume/increase in gas pressure	pressure decreases	toward side with fewer moles of gas	none
increase in volume/decrease in gas pressure	pressure increases	toward side with more moles of gas	none
temperature increase	heat is absorbed	toward products for endothermic, toward reactants for exothermic	changes
temperature decrease	heat is given off	toward reactants for endothermic, toward products for exothermic	changes

Footnotes

1. Herrlich, P. “The Responsibility of the Scientist: What Can History Teach Us About How Scientists Should Handle Research That Has the Potential to Create Harm?” *EMBO Reports* 14 (2013): 759–764.

Glossary

Le Chatelier's principle

when a chemical system at equilibrium is disturbed, it returns to equilibrium by counteracting the disturbance

position of equilibrium

concentrations or partial pressures of components of a reaction at equilibrium (commonly used to describe conditions before a disturbance)

stress

change to a reaction's conditions that may cause a shift in the equilibrium

---

This page titled 4.4: Shifting Equilibria - Le Chatelier’s Principle is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **13.4: Shifting Equilibria - Le Chatelier’s Principle** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

4.5: Equilibrium Calculations

Learning Objectives

- Write equations representing changes in concentration and pressure for chemical species in equilibrium systems
- Use algebra to perform various types of equilibrium calculations

We know that at equilibrium, the value of the reaction quotient of any reaction is equal to its equilibrium constant. Thus, we can use the mathematical expression for *Q* to determine a number of quantities associated with a reaction at equilibrium or approaching equilibrium. While we have learned to identify in which direction a reaction will shift to reach equilibrium, we want to extend that understanding to quantitative calculations. We do so by evaluating the ways that the concentrations of products and reactants change as a reaction approaches equilibrium, keeping in mind the stoichiometric ratios of the reaction. This algebraic approach to equilibrium calculations will be explored in this section.

Changes in concentrations or pressures of reactants and products occur as a reaction system approaches equilibrium. In this section we will see that we can relate these changes to each other using the coefficients in the balanced chemical equation describing the system. We use the decomposition of ammonia as an example.

On heating, ammonia reversibly decomposes into nitrogen and hydrogen according to this equation:

$$2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{N_2}(g) + 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g)$$

If a sample of ammonia decomposes in a closed system and the concentration of N_2 increases by 0.11 *M*, the change in the N_2 concentration, $\Delta[N_2]$, the final concentration minus the initial concentration, is 0.11 *M*. The change is positive because the concentration of N_2 increases.

The change in the H_2 concentration, $\Delta[H_2]$, is also positive—the concentration of H_2 increases as ammonia decomposes. The chemical equation tells us that the change in the concentration of H_2 is three times the change in the concentration of N_2 because for each mole of N_2 produced, 3 moles of H_2 are produced.

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta[\mathrm{H_2}] &= 3 \times \Delta[\mathrm{N_2}] \\ &= 3 \times (0.11\ M) \\ &= 0.33\ M\end{aligned}$$

The change in concentration of NH_3, $\Delta[NH_3]$, is twice that of $\Delta[N_2]$; the equation indicates that 2 moles of NH_3 must decompose for each mole of N_2 formed. However, the change in the NH_3 concentration is negative because the concentration of ammonia *decreases* as it decomposes.

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta[\mathrm{NH_3}] &= -2 \times \Delta[\mathrm{N_2}] \\ &= -2 \times (0.11\ M) \\ &= -0.22\ M\end{aligned}$$

We can relate these relationships directly to the coefficients in the equation

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} 2\,\mathrm{NH_3}(g) & \rightleftharpoons & \mathrm{N_2}(g) & + & 3\,\mathrm{H_2}(g) \qquad (4.5.1) \\ \Delta[\mathrm{NH_3}] = -2 \times \Delta[\mathrm{N_2}] & & \Delta[\mathrm{N_2}] = 0.11\ M & & \Delta[\mathrm{H_2}] = 3 \times \Delta[\mathrm{N_2}] \qquad (4.5.2) \end{array}$$

Note that all the changes on one side of the arrows are of the same sign and that all the changes on the other side of the arrows are of the opposite sign.

If we did not know the magnitude of the change in the concentration of N_2, we could represent it by the symbol *x*.

$$\Delta[\mathrm{N_2}] = x$$

The changes in the other concentrations would then be represented as:

$$\Delta[\mathrm{H_2}] = 3 \times \Delta[\mathrm{N_2}] = 3x$$
$$\Delta[\mathrm{NH_3}] = -2 \times \Delta[\mathrm{N_2}] = -2x$$

The coefficients in the Δ terms are identical to those in the balanced equation for the reaction.

$$2\,NH_3(g) \rightleftharpoons N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \tag{4.5.3}$$
$$-2x \qquad x \qquad 3x \tag{4.5.4}$$

The simplest way for us to find the coefficients for the concentration changes in any reaction is to use the coefficients in the balanced chemical equation. The sign of the coefficient is positive when the concentration increases; it is negative when the concentration decreases.

Example 4.5.1: Determining Relative Changes in Concentration

Complete the changes in concentrations for each of the following reactions.

(a)

$$C_2H_2(g) + 2\,Br_2(g) \rightleftharpoons C_2H_2Br_4(g) \tag{4.5.5}$$
$$x \qquad ____ \qquad ____ \tag{4.5.6}$$

(b)

$$I_2(aq) + I^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons I_3^-(aq) \tag{4.5.7}$$
$$____ \qquad ____ \qquad x \tag{4.5.8}$$

(c)

$$C_3H_8(g) + 5\,O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 3\,CO_2(g) + 4\,H_2O(g) \tag{4.5.9}$$
$$x \qquad ____ \qquad ____ \qquad ____ \tag{4.5.10}$$

Solution

(a)

$$C_2H_2(g) + 2\,Br_2(g) \rightleftharpoons C_2H_2Br_4(g) \tag{4.5.11}$$
$$x \qquad 2x \qquad -x \tag{4.5.12}$$

(b)

$$I_2(aq) + I^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons I_3^-(aq) \tag{4.5.13}$$
$$-x \qquad -x \qquad x \tag{4.5.14}$$

(c)

$$C_3H_8(g) + 5\,O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 3\,CO_2(g) + 4\,H_2O(g) \tag{4.5.15}$$
$$x \qquad 5x \qquad -3x \qquad -4x \tag{4.5.16}$$

Exercise 4.5.1

Complete the changes in concentrations for each of the following reactions:

(a)

$$2\,SO_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,SO_3(g) \tag{4.5.17}$$
$$____ \qquad x \qquad ____ \tag{4.5.18}$$

(b)

$$C_4H_8(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,C_2H_4(g) \tag{4.5.19}$$
$$____ \qquad -2x \tag{4.5.20}$$

(c)

$$4\,NH_3(g) + 7\,H_2O(g) \rightleftharpoons 4\,NO_2(g) + 6\,H_2O(g) \tag{4.5.21}$$
$$____ \qquad ____ \qquad ____ \qquad ____ \tag{4.5.22}$$

Answer a

$2x$, x, $-2x$

Answer b

x, $-2x$

Answer c

$4x$, $7x$, $-4x$, $-6x$ or $-4x$, $-7x$, $4x$, $6x$

Calculations Involving Equilibrium Concentrations

Because the value of the reaction quotient of any reaction at equilibrium is equal to its equilibrium constant, we can use the mathematical expression for Q_c (i.e., *the law of mass action*) to determine a number of quantities associated with a reaction at equilibrium. It may help if we keep in mind that $Q_c = K_c$ (at equilibrium) in all of these situations and that there are only three basic types of calculations:

1. **Calculation of an equilibrium constant**. If concentrations of reactants and products at equilibrium are known, the value of the equilibrium constant for the reaction can be calculated.
2. **Calculation of missing equilibrium concentrations**. If the value of the equilibrium constant and all of the equilibrium concentrations, except one, are known, the remaining concentration can be calculated.
3. **Calculation of equilibrium concentrations from initial concentrations**. If the value of the equilibrium constant and a set of concentrations of reactants and products that are not at equilibrium are known, the concentrations at equilibrium can be calculated.

A similar list could be generated using Q_P, K_P, and partial pressure. We will look at solving each of these cases in sequence.

Calculation of an Equilibrium Constant

Since the law of mass action is the only equation we have to describe the relationship between K_c and the concentrations of reactants and products, any problem that requires us to solve for K_c must provide enough information to determine the reactant and product concentrations at equilibrium. Armed with the concentrations, we can solve the equation for K_c, as it will be the only unknown.

Example 4.5.1 showed us how to determine the equilibrium constant of a reaction if we know the concentrations of reactants and products at equilibrium. The following example shows how to use the stoichiometry of the reaction and a combination of initial concentrations and equilibrium concentrations to determine an equilibrium constant. This technique, commonly called an ICE table —for **I**nitial, **C**hange, and **E**quilibrium–will be helpful in solving many equilibrium problems. A chart is generated beginning with the equilibrium reaction in question. Underneath the reaction the initial concentrations of the reactants and products are listed—these conditions are usually provided in the problem and we consider no shift toward equilibrium to have happened. The next row of data is the change that occurs as the system shifts toward equilibrium—do not forget to consider the reaction stoichiometry as described in a previous section of this chapter. The last row contains the concentrations once equilibrium has been reached.

✔ Example 4.5.2: Calculation of an Equilibrium Constant

Iodine molecules react reversibly with iodide ions to produce triiodide ions.

$$\mathrm{I_2}(aq) + \mathrm{I^-}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{I_3^-}(aq)$$

If a solution with the concentrations of $\mathrm{I_2}$ and $\mathrm{I^-}$ both equal to 1.000×10^{-3} M before reaction gives an equilibrium concentration of $\mathrm{I_2}$ of 6.61×10^{-4} M, what is the equilibrium constant for the reaction?

Solution

We will begin this problem by calculating the changes in concentration as the system goes to equilibrium. Then we determine the equilibrium concentrations and, finally, the equilibrium constant. First, we set up a table with the initial concentrations, the changes in concentrations, and the equilibrium concentrations using $-x$ as the change in concentration of $\mathrm{I_2}$.

	$\mathrm{I_2}$	+	$\mathrm{I^-}$	$\rightleftharpoons$	$\mathrm{I_3^-}$
Initial concentration (M)	1.000×10^{-3}		1.000×10^{-3}		0
Change (M)	$-x$		$-x$		$+x$
Equilibrium concentration (M)	$1.000 \times 10^{-3} - x$		$1.000 \times 10^{-3} - x$		x

Since the equilibrium concentration of $\mathrm{I_2}$ is given, we can solve for x. At equilibrium the concentration of $\mathrm{I_2}$ is 6.61×10^{-4} M so that

$$1.000 \times 10^{-3} - x = 6.61 \times 10^{-4}$$

$$x = 1.000 \times 10^{-3} - 6.61 \times 10^{-4}$$
$$= 3.39 \times 10^{-4}\ M$$

Now we can fill in the table with the concentrations at equilibrium.

	I_2 + I^- $\rightleftharpoons$ I_3^-		
Initial concentration (*M*)	1.000×10^{-3}	1.000×10^{-3}	0
Change (*M*)	$-x = -3.39 \times 10^{-4}$	$-x$	$+x$
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	6.61×10^{-4}	6.61×10^{-4}	3.39×10^{-4}

We now calculate the value of the equilibrium constant.

$$K_c = Q_c = \frac{[I_3^-]}{[I_2][I^-]}$$
$$= \frac{3.39 \times 10^{-4}\ M}{(6.61 \times 10^{-4}\ M)(6.61 \times 10^{-4}\ M)} = 776$$

? Exercise 4.5.2

Ethanol and acetic acid react and form water and ethyl acetate, the solvent responsible for the odor of some nail polish removers.

$$C_2H_5OH + CH_3CO_2H \rightleftharpoons CH_3CO_2C_2H_5 + H_2O$$

When 1 mol each of C_2H_5OH and CH_3CO_2H are allowed to react in 1 L of the solvent dioxane, equilibrium is established when $\frac{1}{3}$ mol of each of the reactants remains. Calculate the equilibrium constant for the reaction. (Note: Water is not a solvent in this reaction.)

Answer

$K_c = 4$

Calculation of a Missing Equilibrium Concentration

If we know the equilibrium constant for a reaction and know the concentrations at equilibrium of all reactants and products except one, we can calculate the missing concentration.

✔ Example 4.5.3: Calculation of a Missing Equilibrium Concentration

Nitrogen oxides are air pollutants produced by the reaction of nitrogen and oxygen at high temperatures. At 2000 °C, the value of the equilibrium constant for the reaction, $N_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,NO(g)$, is 4.1×10^{-4}. Find the concentration of NO(g) in an equilibrium mixture with air at 1 atm pressure at this temperature. In air, $[N_2]$ = 0.036 mol/L and $[O_2]$ 0.0089 mol/L.

Solution

We are given all of the equilibrium concentrations except that of NO. Thus, we can solve for the missing equilibrium concentration by rearranging the equation for the equilibrium constant.

$$K_c = Q_c = \frac{[NO]^2}{[N_2][O_2]}$$
$$[NO]^2 = K_c[N_2][O_2]$$
$$[NO] = \sqrt{K_c[N_2][O_2]}$$

$$= \sqrt{(4.1 \times 10^{-4})(0.036)(0.0089)}$$

$$= \sqrt{1.31 \times 10^{-7}}$$

$$= 3.6 \times 10^{-4}$$

Thus [NO] is 3.6×10^{-4} mol/L at equilibrium under these conditions.

We can check our answer by substituting all equilibrium concentrations into the expression for the reaction quotient to see whether it is equal to the equilibrium constant.

$$Q_c = \frac{[\mathrm{NO}]^2}{[\mathrm{N_2}][\mathrm{O_2}]}$$

$$= \frac{(3.6 \times 10^{-4})^2}{(0.036)(0.0089)}$$

$$= 4.0 \times 10^{-4} = K_c$$

The answer checks; our calculated value gives the equilibrium constant within the error associated with the significant figures in the problem.

? Exercise 4.5.3

The equilibrium constant for the reaction of nitrogen and hydrogen to produce ammonia at a certain temperature is 6.00×10^{-2}. Calculate the equilibrium concentration of ammonia if the equilibrium concentrations of nitrogen and hydrogen are 4.26 *M* and 2.09 *M*, respectively.

Answer

1.53 mol/L

Calculation of Changes in Concentration

If we know the equilibrium constant for a reaction and a set of concentrations of reactants and products that are *not at equilibrium*, we can calculate the changes in concentrations as the system comes to equilibrium, as well as the new concentrations at equilibrium. The typical procedure can be summarized in four steps.

1. Determine the direction the reaction proceeds to come to equilibrium.
   - Write a balanced chemical equation for the reaction.
   - If the direction in which the reaction must proceed to reach equilibrium is not obvious, calculate Q_c from the initial concentrations and compare to K_c to determine the direction of change.
2. Determine the relative changes needed to reach equilibrium, then write the equilibrium concentrations in terms of these changes.
   - Define the changes in the initial concentrations that are needed for the reaction to reach equilibrium. Generally, we represent the smallest change with the symbol *x* and express the other changes in terms of the smallest change.
   - Define missing equilibrium concentrations in terms of the initial concentrations and the changes in concentration determined in (a).
3. Solve for the change and the equilibrium concentrations.
   - Substitute the equilibrium concentrations into the expression for the equilibrium constant, solve for *x*, and check any assumptions used to find *x*.
   - Calculate the equilibrium concentrations.
4. Check the arithmetic.
   - Check the calculated equilibrium concentrations by substituting them into the equilibrium expression and determining whether they give the equilibrium constant.

Sometimes a particular step may differ from problem to problem—it may be more complex in some problems and less complex in others. However, every calculation of equilibrium concentrations from a set of initial concentrations will involve these steps.

In solving equilibrium problems that involve changes in concentration, sometimes it is convenient to set up an ICE table, as described in the previous section.

Example 4.5.4: Calculation of Concentration as a Reaction Equilibrates

Under certain conditions, the equilibrium constant for the decomposition of $PCl_5(g)$ into $PCl_3(g)$ and $Cl_2(g)$ is 0.0211. What are the equilibrium concentrations of PCl_5, PCl_3, and Cl_2 if the initial concentration of PCl_5 was 1.00 *M*?

Solution

Use the stepwise process described earlier.

1. The balanced equation for the decomposition of PCl_5 is

$$\mathrm{PCl_5}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{PCl_3}(g) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g)$$

Because we have no products initially, $Q_c = 0$ and the reaction will proceed to the right.

- Let us represent the increase in concentration of PCl_3 by the symbol *x*. The other changes may be written in terms of *x* by considering the coefficients in the chemical equation.

$$\mathrm{PCl_5}(g) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{PCl_3}(g) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \tag{4.5.23}$$
$$-x \qquad\quad x \qquad\quad x \tag{4.5.24}$$

- The changes in concentration and the expressions for the equilibrium concentrations are:

	$PCl_5 \rightleftharpoons PCl_3 + Cl_2$		
Initial concentration (*M*)	1.00	0	0
Change (*M*)	$-x$	$+x$	$+x$
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	$1.00 - x$	$0 + x = x$	$0 + x = x$

This table has two main columns and four rows. The first row for the first column does not have a heading and then has the following in the first column: Initial concentration (M), Change (M), Equilibrium concentration (M). The second column has the header, “P C l subscript 5 equilibrium arrow P C l subscript 3 plus C l subscript 2.” Under the second column is a subgroup of three rows and three columns. The first column has the following: 1.00, negative x, 1.00 minus x. The second column has the following: 0, positive x, 0 plus x equals x. The third column has the following: 0, positive x, 0 plus x equals x.

- Substituting the equilibrium concentrations into the equilibrium constant equation gives

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{PCl_3}][\mathrm{Cl_2}]}{[\mathrm{PCl_5}]} = 0.0211$$
$$= \frac{(x)(x)}{(1.00 - x)}$$

This equation contains only one variable, *x*, the change in concentration. We can write the equation as a quadratic equation and solve for *x* using the quadratic formula.

$$0.0211 = \frac{(x)(x)}{(1.00 - x)}$$
$$0.0211(1.00 - x) = x^2$$
$$x^2 + 0.0211x - 0.0211 = 0$$

An equation of the form $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ can be rearranged to solve for *x*:

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

In this case, a = 1, b = 0.0211, and c = −0.0211. Substituting the appropriate values for a, b, and c yields:

$$x = \frac{-0.0211 \pm \sqrt{(0.0211)^2 - 4(1)(-0.0211)}}{2(1)}$$
$$= \frac{-0.0211 \pm \sqrt{(4.45 \times 10^{-4}) + (8.44 \times 10^{-2})}}{2}$$
$$= \frac{-0.0211 \pm 0.291}{2}$$

Hence

$$x = \frac{-0.0211 + 0.291}{2} = 0.135$$

or

$$x = \frac{-0.0211 - 0.291}{2} = -0.156$$

Quadratic equations often have two different solutions, one that is physically possible and one that is physically impossible (an extraneous root). In this case, the second solution (−0.156) is physically impossible because we know the change must be a positive number (otherwise we would end up with negative values for concentrations of the products). Thus, x = 0.135 M.

The equilibrium concentrations are

$[PCl_5] = 1.00 - 0.135 = 0.87\ M$
$[PCl_3] = x = 0.135\ M$
$[Cl_2] = x = 0.135\ M$

- Substitution into the expression for K_c (to check the calculation) gives

$$K_c = \frac{[PCl_3][Cl_2]}{[PCl_5]} = \frac{(0.135)(0.135)}{0.87} = 0.021$$

The equilibrium constant calculated from the equilibrium concentrations is equal to the value of K_c given in the problem (when rounded to the proper number of significant figures). Thus, the calculated equilibrium concentrations check.

Exercise 4.5.4A

Acetic acid, CH_3CO_2H, reacts with ethanol, C_2H_5OH, to form water and ethyl acetate, $CH_3CO_2C_2H_5$.

$$CH_3CO_2H + C_2H_5OH \rightleftharpoons CH_3CO_2C_2H_5 + H_2O$$

The equilibrium constant for this reaction with dioxane as a solvent is 4.0. What are the equilibrium concentrations when a mixture that is 0.15 M in CH_3CO_2H, 0.15 M in C_2H_5OH, 0.40 M in $CH_3CO_2C_2H_5$, and 0.40 M in H_2O are mixed in enough dioxane to make 1.0 L of solution?

Answer

$[CH_3CO_2H]$ = 0.36 M, $[C_2H_5OH]$ = 0.36 M, $[CH_3CO_2C_2H_5]$ = 0.17 M, $[H_2O]$ = 0.17 M

Exercise 4.5.4B

A 1.00-L flask is filled with 1.00 moles of H_2 and 2.00 moles of I_2. The value of the equilibrium constant for the reaction of hydrogen and iodine reacting to form hydrogen iodide is 50.5 under the given conditions. What are the equilibrium concentrations of H_2, I_2, and HI in moles/L?

$$H_2(g) + I_2(g) \rightleftharpoons 2\,HI(g)$$

Answer

$[H_2]$ = 0.06 M, $[I_2]$ = 1.06 M, [HI] = 1.88 M

Sometimes it is possible to use chemical insight to find solutions to equilibrium problems without actually solving a quadratic (or more complicated) equation. First, however, it is useful to verify that equilibrium can be obtained starting from two extremes: all (or mostly) reactants and all (or mostly) products.

Consider the ionization of 0.150 M HA, a weak acid.

$$\mathrm{HA}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H^+}(aq) + \mathrm{A^-}(aq) \qquad K_c = 6.80 \times 10^{-4}$$

The most obvious way to determine the equilibrium concentrations would be to start with only reactants. This could be called the "all reactant" starting point. Using *x* for the amount of acid ionized at equilibrium, this is the ICE table and solution.

	HA(*aq*) ⇌	H^+(*aq*)	+ A^-(*aq*)
Initial concentration (*M*)	0.150	0	0
Change (*M*)	−*x*	*x*	*x*
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	0.150 − *x*	*x*	*x*

This table has two main columns and four rows. The first row for the first column does not have a heading and then has the following: Initial pressure (M), Change (M), Equilibrium (M). The second column has the header, "H A (a q) equilibrium arrow H superscript plus sign (a q) plus A subscript negative sign (a q)." Under the second column is a subgroup of three columns and three rows. The first column has the following: 0.150, negative x, 0.150 minus x. The second column has the following: 0, x, x. The third column has the following: 0, x, x.

Setting up and solving the quadratic equation gives

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{H^+}][\mathrm{A^-}]}{[\mathrm{HA}]} = \frac{(x)(x)}{(0.150 - x)} = 6.80 \times 10^{-4}$$

$$x^2 + 6.80 \times 10^{-4}x - 1.02 \times 10^{-4} = 0$$

$$x = -6.80 \times 10^{-4} \pm \frac{\sqrt{(6.80 \times 10^{-4})^2 - (4)(1)(-1.02 \times 10^{-4})}}{(2)(1)}$$

$$x = 0.00977\ M \text{ or } -0.0104\ M$$

Using the positive (physical) root, the equilibrium concentrations are

$$[\mathrm{HA}] = 0.150 - x = 0.140\ M$$
$$[\mathrm{H^+}] = [\mathrm{A^-}] = x = 0.00977\ M$$

A less obvious way to solve the problem would be to assume all the HA ionizes first, then the system comes to equilibrium. This could be called the "all product" starting point. Assuming all of the HA ionizes gives

$$[\mathrm{HA}] = 0.150 - 0.150 = 0\ M$$
$$[\mathrm{H^+}] = 0 + 0.150 = 0.150\ M$$
$$[\mathrm{A^-}] = 0 + 0.150 = 0.150\ M$$

Using these as initial concentrations and "*y*" to represent the concentration of HA at equilibrium, this is the ICE table for this starting point.

	$HA(aq) \rightleftharpoons H^+(aq) + A^-(aq)$		
Initial concentration (*M*)	0	0.150	0.150
Change (*M*)	$+y$	$-y$	$-y$
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	y	$0.150 - y$	$0.150 - y$

This table has two main columns and four rows. The first row for the first column does not have a heading and then has the following: Initial pressure (M), Change (M), Equilibrium (M). The second column has the header, “H A (a q) equilibrium arrow H superscript plus sign (a q) plus A subscript negative sign (a q).” Under the second column is a subgroup of three columns and three rows. The first column has the following: 0, positive y, y. The second column has the following: 0.150, negative y, 0.150 minus y. The third column has the following: 0.150, negative y, and 0.150 minus y.

Setting up and solving the quadratic equation gives

$$K_c = \frac{[\mathrm{H^+}][\mathrm{A^-}]}{[\mathrm{HA}]} = \frac{(0.150 - y)(0.150 - y)}{(y)} = 6.80 \times 10^{-4}$$

$$6.80 \times 10^{-4} y = 0.0225 - 0.300y + y^2$$

Retain a few extra significant figures to minimize rounding problems.

$$y^2 - 0.30068y + 0.022500 = 0$$

$$y = \frac{0.30068 \pm \sqrt{(0.30068)^2 - (4)(1)(0.022500)}}{(2)(1)}$$

$$y = \frac{0.30068 \pm 0.020210}{2}$$

Rounding each solution to three significant figures gives

$$y = 0.160\ M \text{ or } y = 0.140\ M$$

Using the physically significant root (0.140 M) gives the equilibrium concentrations as

$$[\mathrm{HA}] = y = 0.140\ M$$

$$[\mathrm{H^+}] = 0.150 - y = 0.010\ M$$

$$[\mathrm{A^-}] = 0.150 - y = 0.010\ M$$

Thus, the two approaches give the same results (to three *decimal places*), and show that *both* starting points lead to the same equilibrium conditions. The “all reactant” starting point resulted in a relatively small change (x) because the system was close to equilibrium, while the “all product” starting point had a relatively large change (y) that was nearly the size of the initial concentrations. It can be said that a system that starts “close” to equilibrium will require only a ”small” change in conditions (x) to reach equilibrium.

Recall that a small K_c means that very little of the reactants form products and a large K_c means that most of the reactants form products. If the system can be arranged so it starts “close” to equilibrium, then if the change (x) is small compared to any initial concentrations, it can be neglected. Small is usually defined as resulting in an error of less than 5%. The following two examples demonstrate this.

Example 4.5.5: Approximate Solution Starting Close to Equilibrium

What are the concentrations at equilibrium of a 0.15 *M* solution of HCN?

$$\mathrm{HCN}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H^+}(aq) + \mathrm{CN^-}(aq) \quad K_c = 4.9 \times 10^{-10}$$

Solution

Using “x” to represent the concentration of each product at equilibrium gives this ICE table.

	$HCN(aq) \rightleftharpoons H^+(aq) + CN^-(aq)$		
Initial concentration (*M*)	0.15	0	0
Change (*M*)	$-x$	x	x
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	$0.15 - x$	x	x

This table has two main columns and four rows. The first row for the first column does not have a heading and then has the following: Initial pressure (M), Change (M), Equilibrium (M). The second column has the header, “H C N (a q) equilibrium arrow H superscript plus sign (a q) plus C N subscript negative sign (a q).” Under the second column is a subgroup of three columns and three rows. The first column has the following: 0.15, negative x, 0.15 minus x. The second column has the following: 0, x, x. The third column has the following: 0, x, x.

The exact solution may be obtained using the quadratic formula with

$$K_c = \frac{(x)(x)}{0.15 - x}$$

solving

$$x^2 + 4.9 \times 10^{-10} - 7.35 \times 10^{-11} = 0$$

$$x = 8.56 \times 10^{-6}\ M\ (3\ \text{sig. figs.}) = 8.6 \times 10^{-6}\ M\ (2\ \text{sig. figs.})$$

Thus $[H^+] = [CN^-] = x = 8.6 \times 10^{-6}\ M$ and $[HCN] = 0.15 - x = 0.15\ M$.

In this case, chemical intuition can provide a simpler solution. From the equilibrium constant and the initial conditions, x must be small compared to 0.15 *M*. More formally, if $x \ll 0.15$, then $0.15 - x \approx 0.15$. If this assumption is true, then it simplifies obtaining x

$$K_c = \frac{(x)(x)}{0.15 - x} \approx \frac{x^2}{0.15}$$

$$4.9 \times 10^{-10} = \frac{x^2}{0.15}$$

$$x^2 = (0.15)(4.9 \times 10^{-10}) = 7.4 \times 10^{-11}$$

$$x = \sqrt{7.4 \times 10^{-11}} = 8.6 \times 10^{-6}\ M$$

In this example, solving the exact (quadratic) equation and using approximations gave the same result to two significant figures. While most of the time the approximation is a bit different from the exact solution, as long as the error is less than 5%, the approximate solution is considered valid. In this problem, the 5% applies to IF $(0.15 - x) \approx 0.15\ M$, so if

$$\frac{x}{0.15} \times 100\% = \frac{8.6 \times 10^{-6}}{0.15} \times 100\% = 0.006\%$$

is less than 5%, as it is in this case, the assumption is valid. The approximate solution is thus a valid solution.

? Exercise 4.5.5

What are the equilibrium concentrations in a 0.25 *M* NH_3 solution?

$$NH_3(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \qquad K_c = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$$

Assume that x is much less than 0.25 M and calculate the error in your assumption.

Answer

$[OH^-] = [NH_4^+] = 0.0021\ M$; $[NH_3]$ = 0.25 *M*, error = 0.84%

The second example requires that the original information be processed a bit, but it still can be solved using a small *x* approximation.

Example 4.5.6: Approximate Solution After Shifting Starting Concentration

Copper(II) ions form a complex ion in the presence of ammonia

$$Cu^{2+}(aq) + 4\,NH_3(aq) \rightleftharpoons Cu(NH_3)_4^{2+}(aq) \quad K_c = 5.0 \times 10^{13} = \frac{[Cu(NH_3)_4^{2+}]}{[Cu^{2+}(aq)][NH_3]^4}$$

If 0.010 mol Cu^{2+} is added to 1.00 L of a solution that is 1.00 *M* NH_3 what are the concentrations when the system comes to equilibrium?

Solution The initial concentration of copper(II) is 0.010 *M*. The equilibrium constant is very large so it would be better to start with as much product as possible because "all products" is much closer to equilibrium than "all reactants." Note that Cu^{2+} is the limiting reactant; if all 0.010 *M* of it reacts to form product the concentrations would be

$$[Cu^{2+}] = 0.010 - 0.010 = 0\ M$$

$$[Cu(NH_3)_4^{2+}] = 0.010\ M$$

$$[NH_3] = 1.00 - 4 \times 0.010 = 0.96\ M$$

Using these "shifted" values as initial concentrations with *x* as the free copper(II) ion concentration at equilibrium gives this ICE table.

	$Cu^{2+}(aq)$ +	$4NH_3(aq) \rightleftharpoons$	$Cu(NH_3)_4^{2+}(aq)$
Initial concentration (*M*)	0	0.96	0.010
Change (*M*)	+*x*	+4*x*	−*x*
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	*x*	0.96 + 4*x*	0.010 − *x*

This table has two main columns and four rows. The first row for the first column does not have a heading and then has the following: Initial pressure (M), Change (M), Equilibrium (M). The second column has the header, "C u superscript 2 positive sign (a q) plus 4 N H subscript 3 (a q) equilibrium arrow C u (N H subscript 3) subscript 4 superscript 2 positive sign (a q)." Under the second column is a subgroup of three columns and three rows. The first column has the following: 0, positive x, x. The second column has the following: 0.96, positive 4 x, 0.96 plus 4 x. The third column has the following: 0.010, negative x, 0.010 minus x.

Since we are starting close to equilibrium, *x* should be small so that

$$0.96 + 4x \approx 0.96\ M$$

$$0.010 - x \approx 0.010\ M$$

$$K_c = \frac{(0.010 - x)}{x(0.96 - 4x)^4} \approx \frac{(0.010)}{x(0.96)^4} = 5.0 \times 10^{13}$$

$$x = \frac{(0.010)}{K_c(0.96)^4} = 2.4 \times 10^{-16}\ M$$

Select the smallest concentration for the 5% rule.

$$\frac{2.4 \times 10^{-16}}{0.010} \times 100\% = 2 \times 10^{-12}\%$$

This is much less than 5%, so the assumptions are valid. The concentrations at equilibrium are

$$[Cu^{2+}] = x = 2.4 \times 10^{-16}\ M$$
$$[NH_3] = 0.96 - 4x = 0.96\ M$$

$$[\mathrm{Cu(NH_3)_4^{2+}}] = 0.010 - x = 0.010\ M$$

By starting with the maximum amount of product, this system was near equilibrium and the change (x) was very small. With only a small change required to get to equilibrium, the equation for x was greatly simplified and gave a valid result well within the 5% error maximum.

? Exercise 4.5.6

What are the equilibrium concentrations when 0.25 mol Ni^{2+} is added to 1.00 L of 2.00 *M* NH_3 solution?

$$\mathrm{Ni^{2+}}(aq) + 6\,\mathrm{NH_3}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ni(NH_3)_6^{2+}}(aq)$$

with $K_c = 5.5 \times 10^8$.

With such a large equilibrium constant, first form as much product as possible, then assume that only a small amount (x) of the product shifts left. Calculate the error in your assumption.

Answer

$[\mathrm{Ni(NH_3)_6^{2+}}] = 0.25\ M$, [$NH_3$] = 0.50 *M*, [$Ni^{2+}$] = 2.9 × 10^{-8} *M*, error = 1.2 × 10^{-5}%

Summary

The ratios of the rate of change in concentrations of a reaction are equal to the ratios of the coefficients in the balanced chemical equation. The sign of the coefficient of X is positive when the concentration increases and negative when it decreases. We learned to approach three basic types of equilibrium problems. When given the concentrations of the reactants and products at equilibrium, we can solve for the equilibrium constant; when given the equilibrium constant and some of the concentrations involved, we can solve for the missing concentrations; and when given the equilibrium constant and the initial concentrations, we can solve for the concentrations at equilibrium.

This page titled 4.5: Equilibrium Calculations is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **13.5: Equilibrium Calculations** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

4.6: Precipitation and Dissolution

Learning Objectives

- Write chemical equations and equilibrium expressions representing solubility equilibria
- Carry out equilibrium computations involving solubility, equilibrium expressions, and solute concentrations

The preservation of medical laboratory blood samples, mining of sea water for magnesium, formulation of over-the-counter medicines such as Milk of Magnesia and antacids, and treating the presence of hard water in your home's water supply are just a few of the many tasks that involve controlling the equilibrium between a slightly soluble ionic solid and an aqueous solution of its ions.

In some cases, we want to prevent dissolution from occurring. Tooth decay, for example, occurs when the calcium hydroxylapatite, which has the formula $Ca_5(PO_4)_3(OH)$, in our teeth dissolves. The dissolution process is aided when bacteria in our mouths feast on the sugars in our diets to produce lactic acid, which reacts with the hydroxide ions in the calcium hydroxylapatite. Preventing the dissolution prevents the decay. On the other hand, sometimes we want a substance to dissolve. We want the calcium carbonate in a chewable antacid to dissolve because the CO_3^{2-} ions produced in this process help soothe an upset stomach.

In this section, we will find out how we can control the dissolution of a slightly soluble ionic solid by the application of Le Chatelier's principle. We will also learn how to use the equilibrium constant of the reaction to determine the concentration of ions present in a solution.

The Solubility Product Constant

Silver chloride is what's known as a sparingly soluble ionic solid (Figure 4.6.1). Recall from the solubility rules in an earlier chapter that halides of Ag^+ are not normally soluble. However, when we add an excess of solid AgCl to water, it dissolves to a small extent and produces a mixture consisting of a very dilute solution of Ag^+ and Cl^- ions in equilibrium with undissolved silver chloride:

$$\mathrm{AgCl}(s) \underset{\text{precipitation}}{\overset{\text{dissolution}}{\rightleftharpoons}} \mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + \mathrm{Cl^-}(aq)$$

This equilibrium, like other equilibria, is dynamic; some of the solid AgCl continues to dissolve, but at the same time, Ag^+ and Cl^- ions in the solution combine to produce an equal amount of the solid. At equilibrium, the opposing processes have equal rates.

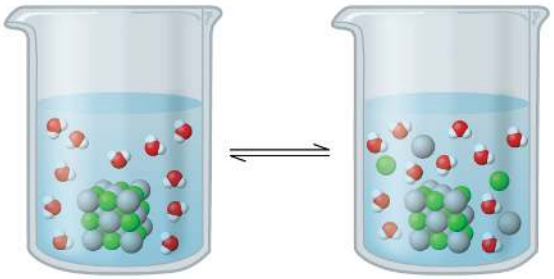


Figure 4.6.1: Silver chloride is a sparingly soluble ionic solid. When it is added to water, it dissolves slightly and produces a mixture consisting of a very dilute solution of Ag^+ and Cl^- ions in equilibrium with undissolved silver chloride.

The equilibrium constant for the equilibrium between a slightly soluble ionic solid and a solution of its ions is called the solubility product (K_{sp}) of the solid. Recall from the chapter on solutions and colloids that we use an ion's concentration as an approximation of its activity in a dilute solution. For silver chloride, at equilibrium:

$$\mathrm{AgCl}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + \mathrm{Cl^-}(aq)$$

with

$$K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Ag^+}(aq)][\mathrm{Cl^-}(aq)]$$

When looking at dissolution reactions such as this, the solid is listed as a reactant, whereas the ions are listed as products. The solubility product constant, as with every equilibrium constant expression, is written as the product of the concentrations of each of

the ions, raised to the power of their stoichiometric coefficients. Here, the solubility product constant is equal to Ag^+ and Cl^- when a solution of silver chloride is in equilibrium with undissolved AgCl. There is no denominator representing the reactants in this equilibrium expression since the reactant is a pure solid; therefore [AgCl] does not appear in the expression for K_{sp}.

Table 4.6.1: Common Solubility Products by Decreasing Equilibrium Constants

Substance	K_{sp} at 25 °C
CuCl	1.2×10^{-6}
CuBr	6.27×10^{-9}
AgI	1.5×10^{-16}
PbS	7×10^{-29}
$Al(OH)_3$	2×10^{-32}
$Fe(OH)_3$	4×10^{-38}

Some common solubility products are listed in Table 4.6.1 according to their K_{sp} values, whereas a more extensive compilation of products appears in Table E3. Each of these equilibrium constants is much smaller than 1 because the compounds listed are only slightly soluble. A small K_{sp} represents a system in which the equilibrium lies to the left, so that relatively few hydrated ions would be present in a saturated solution.

Example 4.6.1: Writing Equations and Solubility Products

Write the ionic equation for the dissolution and the solubility product expression for each of the following slightly soluble ionic compounds:

a. AgI, silver iodide, a solid with antiseptic properties
b. $CaCO_3$, calcium carbonate, the active ingredient in many over-the-counter chewable antacids
c. $Mg(OH)_2$, magnesium hydroxide, the active ingredient in Milk of Magnesia
d. $Mg(NH_4)PO_4$, magnesium ammonium phosphate, an essentially insoluble substance used in tests for magnesium
e. $Ca_5(PO_4)_3OH$, the mineral apatite, a source of phosphate for fertilizers

(Hint: When determining how to break (d) and (e) up into ions, refer to the list of polyatomic ions in the section on chemical nomenclature.)

Solution

a. $AgI(s) \rightleftharpoons Ag^+(aq) + I^-(aq) \quad K_{sp} = [Ag^+][I^-]$
b. $CaCO_3(s) \rightleftharpoons Ca^{2+}(aq) + CO_3^{2-}(aq) \quad K_{sp} = [Ca^{2+}][CO_3^{2-}]$
c. $Mg(OH)_2(s) \rightleftharpoons Mg^{2+}(aq) + 2\,OH^-(aq) \quad K_{sp} = [Mg^{2+}][OH^-]^2$
d. $Mg(NH_4)PO_4(s) \rightleftharpoons Mg^{2+}(aq) + NH_4^+(aq) + PO_4^{3-}(aq) \quad K_{sp} = [Mg^{2+}][NH_4^+][PO_4^{3-}]$
e. $Ca_5(PO_4)_3OH(s) \rightleftharpoons 5\,Ca^{2+}(aq) + 3\,PO_4^{3-}(aq) + OH^-(aq) \quad K_{sp} = [Ca^{2+}]^5[PO_4^{3-}]^3[OH^-]$

Exercise 4.6.1

Write the ionic equation for the dissolution and the solubility product for each of the following slightly soluble compounds:

a. $BaSO_4$
b. Ag_2SO_4
c. $Al(OH)_3$
d. Pb(OH)Cl

Answer a

$$BaSO_4(s) \rightleftharpoons Ba^{2+}(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) \quad K_{sp} = [Ba^{2+}][SO_4^{2-}]$$

Answer b

$$Ag_2SO_4(s) \rightleftharpoons 2\,Ag^+(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) \qquad K_{sp} = [Ag^+]^2[SO_4^{2-}]$$

Answer c

$$Al(OH)_3(s) \rightleftharpoons Al^{2+}(aq) + 3\,OH^-(aq) \qquad K_{sp} = [Al^{3+}][OH^-]^3$$

Answer d

$$Pb(OH)Cl(s) \rightleftharpoons Pb^{2+}(aq) + OH^-(aq) + Cl^-(aq) \qquad K_{sp} = [Pb^{2+}][OH^-][Cl^-]$$

Now we will extend the discussion of K_{sp} and show how the solubility product constant is determined from the solubility of its ions, as well as how K_{sp} can be used to determine the molar solubility of a substance.

K_{sp} and Solubility

Recall that the definition of *solubility* is the maximum possible concentration of a solute in a solution at a given temperature and pressure. We can determine the solubility product of a slightly soluble solid from that measure of its solubility at a given temperature and pressure, provided that the only significant reaction that occurs when the solid dissolves is its dissociation into solvated ions, that is, the only equilibrium involved is:

$$M_pX_q(s) \rightleftharpoons pM^{m+}(aq) + qX^{n-}(aq)$$

In this case, we calculate the solubility product by taking the solid's solubility expressed in units of moles per liter (mol/L), known as its molar solubility.

Example 4.6.2: Calculation of K_{sp} from Equilibrium Concentrations

We began the chapter with an informal discussion of how the mineral fluorite is formed. Fluorite, CaF_2, is a slightly soluble solid that dissolves according to the equation:

$$CaF_2(s) \rightleftharpoons Ca^{2+}(aq) + 2\,F^-(aq)$$

The concentration of Ca^{2+} in a saturated solution of CaF_2 is 2.1×10^{-4} *M*; therefore, that of F^- is 4.2×10^{-4} *M*, that is, twice the concentration of Ca^{2+}. What is the solubility product of fluorite?

Solution

First, write out the K_{sp} expression, then substitute in concentrations and solve for K_{sp}:

$$CaF_2(s) \rightleftharpoons Ca^{2+}(aq) + 2\,F^-(aq)$$

A saturated solution is a solution at equilibrium with the solid. Thus:

$$\begin{aligned} K_{sp} &= [Ca^{2+}][F^-]^2 \\ &= (2.1 \times 10^{-4})(4.2 \times 10^{-4})^2 \\ &= 3.7 \times 10^{-11} \end{aligned}$$

As with other equilibrium constants, we do not include units with K_{sp}.

Exercise 4.6.2

In a saturated solution that is in contact with solid $Mg(OH)_2$, the concentration of Mg^{2+} is 3.7×10^{-5} *M*. What is the solubility product for $Mg(OH)_2$?

$$Mg(OH)_2(s) \rightleftharpoons Mg^{2+}(aq) + 2\,OH^-(aq)$$

Answer

2.0×10^{-13}

Example 4.6.3: Determination of Molar Solubility from K_{sp}

The K_{sp} of copper(I) bromide, CuBr, is 6.3×10^{-9}. Calculate the molar solubility of copper bromide.

Solution

The solubility product constant of copper(I) bromide is 6.3×10^{-9}.

The reaction is:

$$\mathrm{CuBr}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Cu}^{+}(aq) + \mathrm{Br}^{-}(aq)$$

First, write out the solubility product equilibrium constant expression:

$$K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Cu}^{+}][\mathrm{Br}^{-}]$$

Create an ICE table (as introduced in the chapter on fundamental equilibrium concepts), leaving the CuBr column empty as it is a solid and does not contribute to the K_{sp}:

	CuBr ⇌	Cu^+	+ Br^-
Initial concentration (*M*)		0	0
Change (*M*)		*x*	*x*
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)		0 + *x* = *x*	0 + *x* = *x*

At equilibrium:

$$\begin{aligned} K_{sp} &= [\mathrm{Cu}^{+}][\mathrm{Br}^{-}] \\ 6.3 \times 10^{-9} &= (x)(x) = x^2 \\ x &= \sqrt{(6.3 \times 10^{-9})} = 7.9 \times 10^{-5} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the molar solubility of CuBr is 7.9×10^{-5} *M*.

Exercise 4.6.3

The K_{sp} of AgI is 1.5×10^{-16}. Calculate the molar solubility of silver iodide.

Answer

1.2×10^{-8} *M*

Example 4.6.4: Determination of Molar Solubility from K_{sp}, Part II

Determination of Molar Solubility from K_{sp}, Part II The K_{sp} of calcium hydroxide, $Ca(OH)_2$, is 1.3×10^{-6}. Calculate the molar solubility of calcium hydroxide.

Solution

The solubility product constant of calcium hydroxide is 1.3×10^{-6}.

The reaction is:

$$\mathrm{Ca(OH)}_2(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ca}^{2+}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{OH}^{-}(aq)$$

First, write out the solubility product equilibrium constant expression:

$$K_{sp} = [\mathrm{Ca}^{2+}][\mathrm{OH}^{-}]^2$$

Create an ICE table, leaving the $Ca(OH)_2$ column empty as it is a solid and does not contribute to the K_{sp}:

	$Ca(OH)_2 \rightleftharpoons$	Ca^{2+}	+ $2OH^-$
Initial concentration (*M*)		0	0
Change (*M*)		x	$2x$
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)		$0 + x = x$	$0 + 2x = 2x$

At equilibrium:

$$K_{sp} = [Ca^{2+}][OH^-]^2$$
$$1.3 \times 10^{-6} = (x)(2x)^2 = (x)(4x^2) = 4x^3$$
$$x = \sqrt[3]{\frac{1.3 \times 10^{-6}}{4}} = 6.9 \times 10^{-3}$$

Therefore, the molar solubility of $Ca(OH)_2$ is 6.9×10^{-3} *M*.

Exercise 4.6.4

The K_{sp} of PbI_2 is 1.4×10^{-8}. Calculate the molar solubility of lead(II) iodide.

Answer

1.5×10^{-3} *M*

Note that solubility is not always given as a molar value. When the solubility of a compound is given in some unit other than moles per liter, we must convert the solubility into moles per liter (i.e., molarity) in order to use it in the solubility product constant expression. Example 4.6.5 shows how to perform those unit conversions before determining the solubility product equilibrium.

Example 4.6.5: Determination of K_{sp} from Gram Solubility

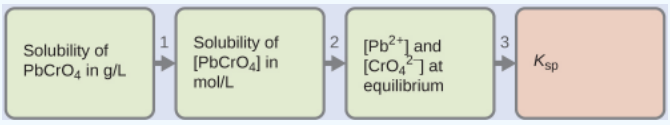
Many of the pigments used by artists in oil-based paints (Figure 4.6.2) are sparingly soluble in water. For example, the solubility of the artist's pigment chrome yellow, $PbCrO_4$, is 4.6×10^{-6} g/L. Determine the solubility product equilibrium constant for $PbCrO_4$.



Figure 4.6.2: Oil paints contain pigments that are very slightly soluble in water. In addition to chrome yellow ($PbCrO_4$), examples include Prussian blue ($Fe_7(CN)_{18}$), the reddish-orange color vermilion (HgS), and green color veridian (Cr_2O_3). (credit: Sonny Abesamis)

Solution

We are given the solubility of $PbCrO_4$ in grams per liter. If we convert this solubility into moles per liter, we can find the equilibrium concentrations of Pb^{2+} and CrO_4^{2-}, then K_{sp}:



1. *Use the molar mass of PbCrO$_4$* $\left(\frac{323.2\text{ g}}{1\text{ mol}}\right)$ *to convert the solubility of PbCrO$_4$ in grams per liter into moles per liter:*

$$[\text{PbCrO}_4] = \frac{4.6 \times 10^{-6}\text{ g PbCrO}_4}{1\text{ L}} \times \frac{1\text{ mol PbCrO}_4}{323.2\text{ g PbCrO}_4}$$

$$= \frac{1.4 \times 10^{-8}\text{ mol PbCrO}_4}{1\text{ L}}$$

$$= 1.4 \times 10^{-8}\ M$$

- *The chemical equation for the dissolution indicates that 1 mol of PbCrO$_4$ gives 1 mol of Pb^{2+}(aq) and 1 mol of* $\text{CrO}_4^{2-}(aq)$:
  $\text{PbCrO}_4(s) \rightleftharpoons \text{Pb}^{2+}(aq) + \text{CrO}_4^{2-}(aq)$

  Thus, both [Pb^{2+}] and $[\text{CrO}_4^{2-}]$ are equal to the molar solubility of PbCrO$_4$:

  $[\text{Pb}^{2+}] = [\text{CrO}_4^{2-}] = 1.4 \times 10^{-8}\ M$
- *Solve.* K_{sp} = [Pb^{2+}] $[\text{CrO}_4^{2-}]$ = (1.4 × 10^{-8})(1.4 × 10^{-8}) = 2.0 × 10^{-16}

Exercise 4.6.5

The solubility of TlCl [thallium(I) chloride], an intermediate formed when thallium is being isolated from ores, is 3.46 grams per liter at 20 °C. What is its solubility product?

Answer

2.08 × 10^{-4}

Example 4.6.6: Calculating the Solubility of Hg_2Cl_2

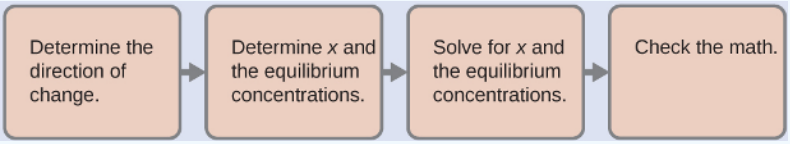
Calomel, Hg_2Cl_2, is a compound composed of the diatomic ion of mercury(I), Hg_2^{2+}, and chloride ions, Cl^-. Although most mercury compounds are now known to be poisonous, eighteenth-century physicians used calomel as a medication. Their patients rarely suffered any mercury poisoning from the treatments because calomel is quite insoluble:

$$\text{Hg}_2\text{Cl}_2(s) \rightleftharpoons \text{Hg}_2^{2+}(aq) + 2\,\text{Cl}^-(aq) \quad K_{sp} = 1.1 \times 10^{-18}$$

Calculate the molar solubility of Hg_2Cl_2.

Solution

The molar solubility of Hg_2Cl_2 is equal to the concentration of Hg_2^{2+} ions because for each 1 mol of Hg_2Cl_2 that dissolves, 1 mol of Hg_2^{2+} forms:



1. *Determine the direction of change.* Before any Hg_2Cl_2 dissolves, Q is zero, and the reaction will shift to the right to reach equilibrium.
2. *Determine* x *and equilibrium concentrations.* Concentrations and changes are given in the following ICE table:

	$Hg_2Cl_2 \rightleftharpoons$	Hg_2^{2+} +	$2Cl^-$
Initial concentration (*M*)		0	0
Change (*M*)		*x*	2*x*
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)		0 + *x* = *x*	0 + 2*x* = 2*x*

Note that the change in the concentration of Cl^- ($2x$) is twice as large as the change in the concentration of Hg_2^{2+} (x) because 2 mol of Cl^- forms for each 1 mol of Hg_2^{2+} that forms. Hg_2Cl_2 is a pure solid, so it does not appear in the calculation.

3. *Solve for* x *and the equilibrium concentrations.* We substitute the equilibrium concentrations into the expression for K_{sp} and calculate the value of x:

$$\begin{aligned} K_{sp} &= [Hg_2^{2+}][Cl^-]^2 \\ 1.1 \times 10^{-18} &= (x)(2x)^2 \\ 4x^3 &= 1.1 \times 10^{-18} \\ x &= \sqrt[3]{\left(\frac{1.1 \times 10^{-18}}{4}\right)} = 6.5 \times 10^{-7}\ M \end{aligned}$$

So the concentrations are

$$\begin{aligned} [Hg_2^{2+}] &= 6.5 \times 10^{-7}\ M = 6.5 \times 10^{-7}\ M \\ [Cl^-] &= 2x = 2(6.5 \times 10^{-7}) = 1.3 \times 10^{-6}\ M \end{aligned}$$

The molar solubility of Hg_2Cl_2 is equal to $[Hg_2^{2+}]$, or 6.5×10^{-7} M.

Check the work.

At equilibrium, $Q = K_{sp}$:

$$Q = [Hg_2^{2+}][Cl^-]^2 = (6.5 \times 10^{-7})(1.3 \times 10^{-6})^2 = 1.1 \times 10^{-18}$$

The calculations check.

Exercise 4.6.6

Determine the molar solubility of MgF_2 from its solubility product: $K_{sp} = 6.4 \times 10^{-9}$.

Answer

1.2×10^{-3} M

Tabulated K_{sp} values can also be compared to reaction quotients calculated from experimental data to tell whether a solid will precipitate in a reaction under specific conditions: Q equals K_{sp} at equilibrium; if Q is less than K_{sp}, the solid will dissolve until Q equals K_{sp}; if Q is greater than K_{sp}, precipitation will occur at a given temperature until Q equals K_{sp}.

Using Barium Sulfate for Medical Imaging

Various types of medical imaging techniques are used to aid diagnoses of illnesses in a noninvasive manner. One such technique utilizes the ingestion of a barium compound before taking an X-ray image. A suspension of barium sulfate, a chalky powder, is ingested by the patient. Since the K_{sp} of barium sulfate is 1.1×10^{-10}, very little of it dissolves as it coats the lining of the patient's intestinal tract. Barium-coated areas of the digestive tract then appear on an X-ray as white, allowing for greater visual detail than a traditional X-ray (Figure 4.6.3).



Figure 4.6.3: The suspension of barium sulfate coats the intestinal tract, which allows for greater visual detail than a traditional X-ray. (credit modification of work by “glitzy queen00”/Wikimedia Commons).

Further diagnostic testing can be done using barium sulfate and fluoroscopy. In fluoroscopy, a continuous X-ray is passed through the body so the doctor can monitor, on a TV or computer screen, the barium sulfate’s movement as it passes through the digestive tract. Medical imaging using barium sulfate can be used to diagnose acid reflux disease, Crohn’s disease, and ulcers in addition to other conditions.

Predicting Precipitation

The equation that describes the equilibrium between solid calcium carbonate and its solvated ions is:

$$\mathrm{CaCO_3}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Ca^{2+}}(aq) + \mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}(aq)$$

We can establish this equilibrium either by adding solid calcium carbonate to water or by mixing a solution that contains calcium ions with a solution that contains carbonate ions. If we add calcium carbonate to water, the solid will dissolve until the concentrations are such that the value of the reaction quotient ($Q = [\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}][\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}]$) is equal to the solubility product (K_{sp} = 4.8 × 10^{-9}). If we mix a solution of calcium nitrate, which contains $\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}$ ions, with a solution of sodium carbonate, which contains $\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}$ ions, the slightly soluble ionic solid $\mathrm{CaCO_3}$ will precipitate, provided that the concentrations of $\mathrm{Ca^{2+}}$ and $\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}$ ions are such that Q is greater than K_{sp} for the mixture. The reaction shifts to the left and the concentrations of the ions are reduced by formation of the solid until the value of Q equals K_{sp}. A saturated solution in equilibrium with the undissolved solid will result. If the concentrations are such that Q is less than K_{sp}, then the solution is not saturated and no precipitate will form.

We can compare numerical values of Q with K_{sp} to predict whether precipitation will occur, as Example 4.6.7 shows. (Note: Since all forms of equilibrium constants are temperature dependent, we will assume a room temperature environment going forward in this chapter unless a different temperature value is explicitly specified.)

Example 4.6.7: Precipitation of $Mg(OH)_2$

The first step in the preparation of magnesium metal is the precipitation of $Mg(OH)_2$ from sea water by the addition of lime, $Ca(OH)_2$, a readily available inexpensive source of OH^- ion:

$$\mathrm{Mg(OH)_2}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Mg^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \quad K_{sp} = 8.9 \times 10^{-12}$$

The concentration of $Mg^{2+}(aq)$ in sea water is 0.0537 *M*. Will $Mg(OH)_2$ precipitate when enough $Ca(OH)_2$ is added to give a $[OH^-]$ of 0.0010 *M*?

Solution

This problem asks whether the reaction:

$$\mathrm{Mg(OH)_2}(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Mg^{2+}}(aq) + 2\,\mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$$

shifts to the left and forms solid $Mg(OH)_2$ when $[Mg^{2+}] = 0.0537\ M$ and $[OH^-] = 0.0010\ M$. The reaction shifts to the left if Q is greater than K_{sp}. Calculation of the reaction quotient under these conditions is shown here:

$$Q = [Mg^{2+}][OH^-]^2 = (0.0537)(0.0010)^2 = 5.4 \times 10^{-8}$$

Because Q is greater than K_{sp} ($Q = 5.4 \times 10^{-8}$ is larger than $K_{sp} = 8.9 \times 10^{-12}$), we can expect the reaction to shift to the left and form solid magnesium hydroxide. $Mg(OH)_2(s)$ forms until the concentrations of magnesium ion and hydroxide ion are reduced sufficiently so that the value of Q is equal to K_{sp}.

Exercise 4.6.7

Use the solubility products in Table E3 to determine whether $CaHPO_4$ will precipitate from a solution with $[Ca^{2+}] = 0.0001\ M$ and $[HPO_4^{2-}] = 0.001\ M$.

Answer

No precipitation of $CaHPO_4$; $Q = 1 \times 10^{-7}$, which is less than K_{sp}

Example 4.6.8: Precipitation of AgCl upon Mixing Solutions

Does silver chloride precipitate when equal volumes of a 2.0×10^{-4}-M solution of $AgNO_3$ and a 2.0×10^{-4}-M solution of NaCl are mixed?

(Note: The solution also contains Na^+ and NO_3^- ions, but when referring to solubility rules, one can see that sodium nitrate is very soluble and cannot form a precipitate.)

Solution

The equation for the equilibrium between solid silver chloride, silver ion, and chloride ion is:

$$AgCl(s) \rightleftharpoons Ag^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)$$

The solubility product is 1.8×10^{-10} (Table E3).

AgCl will precipitate if the reaction quotient calculated from the concentrations in the mixture of $AgNO_3$ and NaCl is greater than K_{sp}. The volume doubles when we mix equal volumes of $AgNO_3$ and NaCl solutions, so each concentration is reduced to half its initial value. Consequently, immediately upon mixing, $[Ag^+]$ and $[Cl^-]$ are both equal to:

$$\frac{1}{2}(2.0 \times 10^{-4})\ M = 1.0 \times 10^{-4}\ M$$

The reaction quotient, Q, is *momentarily* greater than K_{sp} for AgCl, so a supersaturated solution is formed:

$$Q = [Ag^+][Cl^-] = (1.0 \times 10^{-4})(1.0 \times 10^{-4}) = 1.0 \times 10^{-8} > K_{sp}$$

Since supersaturated solutions are unstable, AgCl will precipitate from the mixture until the solution returns to equilibrium, with Q equal to K_{sp}.

Exercise 4.6.8

Will $KClO_4$ precipitate when 20 mL of a 0.050-M solution of K^+ is added to 80 mL of a 0.50-M solution of ClO_4^-? (Remember to calculate the new concentration of each ion after mixing the solutions before plugging into the reaction quotient expression.)

Answer

No, $Q = 4.0 \times 10^{-3}$, which is less than $K_{sp} = 1.07 \times 10^{-2}$

In the previous two examples, we have seen that $Mg(OH)_2$ or AgCl precipitate when Q is greater than K_{sp}. In general, when a solution of a soluble salt of the M^{m+} ion is mixed with a solution of a soluble salt of the X^{n-} ion, the solid, M_pX_q precipitates if the value of Q for the mixture of M^{m+} and X^{n-} is greater than K_{sp} for M_pX_q. Thus, if we know the concentration of one of the ions of a

slightly soluble ionic solid and the value for the solubility product of the solid, then we can calculate the concentration that the other ion must exceed for precipitation to begin. To simplify the calculation, we will assume that precipitation begins when the reaction quotient becomes equal to the solubility product constant.

Example 4.6.9: Precipitation of Calcium Oxalate

Blood will not clot if calcium ions are removed from its plasma. Some blood collection tubes contain salts of the oxalate ion, $C_2O_4^{2-}$, for this purpose (Figure 4.6.4). At sufficiently high concentrations, the calcium and oxalate ions form solid, $CaC_2O_4{\bullet}H_2O$ (which also contains water bound in the solid). The concentration of Ca^{2+} in a sample of blood serum is 2.2×10^{-3} *M*. What concentration of $C_2O_4^{2-}$ ion must be established before $CaC_2O_4{\bullet}H_2O$ begins to precipitate?



Figure 4.6.4: Anticoagulants can be added to blood that will combine with the Ca^{2+} ions in blood serum and prevent the blood from clotting. (credit: modification of work by Neeta Lind)

Solution

The equilibrium expression is:

$$CaC_2O_4(s) \rightleftharpoons Ca^{2+}(aq) + C_2O_4^{2-}(aq)$$

For this reaction (Table E3):

$$K_{sp} = [Ca^{2+}][C_2O_4^{2-}] = 1.96 \times 10^{-8}$$

CaC_2O_4 does not appear in this expression because it is a solid. Water does not appear because it is the solvent.

Solid CaC_2O_4 does not begin to form until Q equals K_{sp}. Because we know K_{sp} and $[Ca^{2+}]$, we can solve for the concentration of $C_2O_4^{2-}$ that is necessary to produce the first trace of solid:

$$Q = K_{sp} = [Ca^{2+}][C_2O_4^{2-}] = 1.96 \times 10^{-8}$$

$$(2.2 \times 10^{-3})[C_2O_4^{2-}] = 1.96 \times 10^{-8}$$

$$[C_2O_4^{2-}] = \frac{1.96 \times 10^{-8}}{2.2 \times 10^{-3}} = 8.9 \times 10^{-6}$$

A concentration of $[C_2O_4^{2-}] = 8.9 \times 10^{-6}$ *M* is necessary to initiate the precipitation of CaC_2O_4 under these conditions.

Exercise 4.6.9

If a solution contains 0.0020 mol of CrO_4^{2-} per liter, what concentration of Ag^+ ion must be reached by adding solid $AgNO_3$ before Ag_2CrO_4 begins to precipitate? Neglect any increase in volume upon adding the solid silver nitrate.

Answer

4.5×10^{-9} *M*

It is sometimes useful to know the concentration of an ion that remains in solution after precipitation. We can use the solubility product for this calculation too: If we know the value of K_{sp} and the concentration of one ion in solution, we can calculate the

concentration of the second ion remaining in solution. The calculation is of the same type as that in Example 4.6.8—calculation of the concentration of a species in an equilibrium mixture from the concentrations of the other species and the equilibrium constant. However, the concentrations are different; we are calculating concentrations after precipitation is complete, rather than at the start of precipitation.

Example 4.6.10: Concentrations Following Precipitation

Clothing washed in water that has a manganese [$Mn^{2+}(aq)$] concentration exceeding 0.1 mg/L (1.8×10^{-6} *M*) may be stained by the manganese upon oxidation, but the amount of Mn^{2+} in the water can be reduced by adding a base. If a person doing laundry wishes to add a buffer to keep the pH high enough to precipitate the manganese as the hydroxide, $Mn(OH)_2$, what pH is required to keep [Mn^{2+}] equal to 1.8×10^{-6} *M*?

Solution

The dissolution of $Mn(OH)_2$ is described by the equation:

$$Mn(OH)_2(s) \rightleftharpoons Mn^{2+}(aq) + 2\,OH^-(aq) \quad K_{sp} = 2 \times 10^{-13}$$

We need to calculate the concentration of OH^- when the concentration of Mn^{2+} is 1.8×10^{-6} *M*. From that, we calculate the pH. At equilibrium:

$$K_{sp} = [Mn^{2+}][OH^-]^2$$

or

$$(1.8 \times 10^{-6})[OH^-]^2 = 2 \times 10^{-13}$$

so

$$[OH^-] = 3.3 \times 10^{-4}\ M$$

Now we calculate the pH from the pOH:

$$pOH = -\log[OH^-] = -\log(3.3 \times 10^{-4}) = 3.48$$

$$pH = 14.00 - pOH = 14.00 - 3.48 = 10.52$$

If the person doing laundry adds a base, such as the sodium silicate (Na_4SiO_4) in some detergents, to the wash water until the pH is raised to 10.52, the manganese ion will be reduced to a concentration of 1.8×10^{-6} *M*; at that concentration or less, the ion will not stain clothing.

Exercise 4.6.10

The first step in the preparation of magnesium metal is the precipitation of $Mg(OH)_2$ from sea water by the addition of $Ca(OH)_2$. The concentration of $Mg^{2+}(aq)$ in sea water is 5.37×10^{-2} *M*. Calculate the pH at which [Mg^{2+}] is diminished to 1.0×10^{-5} *M* by the addition of $Ca(OH)_2$.

Answer

10.97

Due to their light sensitivity, mixtures of silver halides are used in fiber optics for medical lasers, in photochromic eyeglass lenses (glass lenses that automatically darken when exposed to sunlight), and—before the advent of digital photography—in photographic film. Even though AgCl ($K_{sp} = 1.6 \times 10^{-10}$), AgBr ($K_{sp} = 5.0 \times 10^{-13}$), and AgI ($K_{sp} = 1.5 \times 10^{-16}$) are each quite insoluble, we cannot prepare a homogeneous solid mixture of them by adding Ag^+ to a solution of Cl^-, Br^-, and I^-; essentially all of the AgI will precipitate before any of the other solid halides form because of its smaller value for K_{sp}. However, we can prepare a homogeneous mixture of the solids by slowly adding a solution of Cl^-, Br^-, and I^- to a solution of Ag^+.

When two anions form slightly soluble compounds with the same cation, or when two cations form slightly soluble compounds with the same anion, the less soluble compound (usually, the compound with the smaller K_{sp}) generally precipitates first when we add a precipitating agent to a solution containing both anions (or both cations). When the K_{sp} values of the two compounds differ

by two orders of magnitude or more (e.g., 10^{-2} vs. 10^{-4}), almost all of the less soluble compound precipitates before any of the more soluble one does. This is an example of selective precipitation, where a reagent is added to a solution of dissolved ions causing one of the ions to precipitate out before the rest.

The Role of Precipitation in Wastewater Treatment

Solubility equilibria are useful tools in the treatment of wastewater carried out in facilities that may treat the municipal water in your city or town (Figure 4.6.5). Specifically, selective precipitation is used to remove contaminants from wastewater before it is released back into natural bodies of water. For example, phosphate ions (PO_4^{2-}) are often present in the water discharged from manufacturing facilities. An abundance of phosphate causes excess algae to grow, which impacts the amount of oxygen available for marine life as well as making water unsuitable for human consumption.



Figure 4.6.5: Wastewater treatment facilities, such as this one, remove contaminants from wastewater before the water is released back into the natural environment. (credit: “eutrophication&hypoxia”/Wikimedia Commons)

One common way to remove phosphates from water is by the addition of calcium hydroxide, known as lime, $Ca(OH)_2$. The lime is converted into calcium carbonate, a strong base, in the water. As the water is made more basic, the calcium ions react with phosphate ions to produce hydroxylapatite, $Ca_5(PO4)_3(OH)$, which then precipitates out of the solution:

$$5\,Ca^{2+} + 3\,PO_4^{3-} + OH^- \rightleftharpoons Ca_{10}(PO_4)_6 \cdot (OH)_2(s)$$

The precipitate is then removed by filtration and the water is brought back to a neutral pH by the addition of CO_2 in a recarbonation process. Other chemicals can also be used for the removal of phosphates by precipitation, including iron(III) chloride and aluminum sulfate.

Selective precipitation can also be used in qualitative analysis. In this method, reagents are added to an unknown chemical mixture in order to induce precipitation. Certain reagents cause specific ions to precipitate out; therefore, the addition of the reagent can be used to determine whether the ion is present in the solution.

Example 4.6.11: Precipitation of Silver Halides

A solution contains 0.0010 mol of KI and 0.10 mol of KCl per liter. $AgNO_3$ is gradually added to this solution. Which forms first, solid AgI or solid AgCl?

Solution

The two equilibria involved are:

$$AgCl(s) \rightleftharpoons Ag^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) \qquad K_{sp} = 1.6 \times 10^{-10}$$

$$AgI(s) \rightleftharpoons Ag^+(aq) + I^-(aq) \qquad K_{sp} = 1.5 \times 10^{-16}$$

If the solution contained about *equal* concentrations of Cl^- and I^-, then the silver salt with the smallest K_{sp} (AgI) would precipitate first. The concentrations are not equal, however, so we should find the $[Ag^+]$ at which AgCl begins to precipitate and the $[Ag^+]$ at which AgI begins to precipitate. The salt that forms at the lower $[Ag^+]$ precipitates first.

For AgI: AgI precipitates when Q equals K_{sp} for AgI (1.5×10^{-16}). When $[I^-] = 0.0010\ M$:

$$Q = [Ag^+][I^-] = [Ag^+](0.0010) = 1.5 \times 10^{-16}$$

$$[Ag^+] = \frac{1.5 \times 10^{-16}}{0.0010} = 1.5 \times 10^{-13}$$

AgI begins to precipitate when $[Ag^+]$ is 1.5×10^{-13} *M*.

For AgCl: AgCl precipitates when *Q* equals K_{sp} for AgCl (1.6×10^{-10}). When $[Cl^-] = 0.10$ *M*:

$$Q_{sp} = [Ag^+][Cl^-] = [Ag^+](0.10) = 1.6 \times 10^{-10}$$

$$[Ag^+] = \frac{1.6 \times 10^{-10}}{0.10} = 1.6 \times 10^{-9}\ M$$

AgCl begins to precipitate when $[Ag^+]$ is 1.6×10^{-9} *M*.

AgI begins to precipitate at a lower $[Ag^+]$ than AgCl, so AgI begins to precipitate first.

? Exercise 4.6.11

If silver nitrate solution is added to a solution which is 0.050 *M* in both Cl^- and Br^- ions, at what $[Ag^+]$ would precipitation begin, and what would be the formula of the precipitate?

Answer

$[Ag^+] = 1.0 \times 10^{-11}$ *M*; AgBr precipitates first

Common Ion Effect

As we saw when we discussed buffer solutions, the hydronium ion concentration of an aqueous solution of acetic acid decreases when the strong electrolyte sodium acetate, $NaCH_3CO_2$, is added. We can explain this effect using Le Chatelier's principle. The addition of acetate ions causes the equilibrium to shift to the left, decreasing the concentration of H_3O^+ to compensate for the increased acetate ion concentration. This increases the concentration of CH_3CO_2H:

$$CH_3CO_2H + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + CH_3CO_2^-$$

Because sodium acetate and acetic acid have the acetate ion in common, the influence on the equilibrium is called **the common ion effect.** The common ion effect can also have a direct effect on solubility equilibria. Suppose we are looking at the reaction where silver iodide is dissolved:

$$AgI(s) \rightleftharpoons Ag^+(aq) + I^-(aq)$$

If we were to add potassium iodide (KI) to this solution, we would be adding a substance that shares a common ion with silver iodide. Le Chatelier's principle tells us that when a change is made to a system at equilibrium, the reaction will shift to counteract that change. In this example, there would be an excess of iodide ions, so the reaction would shift toward the left, causing more silver iodide to precipitate out of solution.

✓ Example 4.6.12: Common Ion Effect

Calculate the molar solubility of cadmium sulfide (CdS) in a 0.010-*M* solution of cadmium bromide ($CdBr_2$). The K_{sp} of CdS is 1.0×10^{-28}.

Solution

The first thing you should notice is that the cadmium sulfide is dissolved in a solution that contains cadmium ions. We need to use an ICE table to set up this problem and include the $CdBr_2$ concentration as a contributor of cadmium ions:

$$CdS(s) \rightleftharpoons Cd^{2+}(aq) + S^{2-}(aq)$$

	CdS ⇌	Cd^{2+}	+ S^{2-}
Initial concentration (*M*)		0.010	0
Change (*M*)		*x*	*x*
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)		0.010 + *x*	0 + *x* = *x*

This table has two main columns and four rows. The first row for the first column does not have a heading and then has the following in the first column: Initial concentration (M), Change (M), and Equilibrium concentration (M). The second column has the header, “C d S equilibrium arrow C d to the second power plus S to the second power superscript negative sign.” Under the second column is a subgroup of three rows and three columns. The first column is blank. The second column has the following: 0.010, x, 0.010 plus x. The third column has the following: 0, x, 0 plus x equals x.

$$K_{sp} = [Cd^{2+}][S^{2-}] = 1.0 \times 10^{-28}$$

$$(0.010 + x)(x) = 1.0 \times 10^{-28}\ \ x^2 + 0.010x - 1.0 \times 10^{-28} = 0$$

We can solve this equation using the quadratic formula, but we can also make an assumption to make this calculation much simpler. Since the K_{sp} value is so small compared with the cadmium concentration, we can assume that the change between the initial concentration and the equilibrium concentration is negligible, so that 0.010 + *x* ~ 0.010. Going back to our K_{sp} expression, we would now get:

$$K_{sp} = [Cd^{2+}][S^{2-}] = 1.0 \times 10^{-28}$$
$$(0.010)(x) = 1.0 \times 10^{-28}$$
$$x = 1.0 \times 10^{-26}$$

Therefore, the molar solubility of CdS in this solution is 1.0×10^{-26} *M*.

Exercise 4.6.12

Calculate the molar solubility of aluminum hydroxide, $Al(OH)_3$, in a 0.015-*M* solution of aluminum nitrate, $Al(NO_3)_3$. The K_{sp} of $Al(OH)_3$ is 2×10^{-32}.

Answer

4×10^{-11}

Summary

The equilibrium constant for an equilibrium involving the precipitation or dissolution of a slightly soluble ionic solid is called the solubility product, K_{sp}, of the solid. When we have a heterogeneous equilibrium involving the slightly soluble solid M_pX_q and its ions M^{m+} and X^{n-}:

$$M_pX_q(s) \rightleftharpoons pM^{m+}(aq) + qX^{n-}(aq)$$

We write the solubility product expression as:

$$K_{sp} = [M^{m+}]^p[X^{n-}]^q$$

The solubility product of a slightly soluble electrolyte can be calculated from its solubility; conversely, its solubility can be calculated from its K_{sp}, provided the only significant reaction that occurs when the solid dissolves is the formation of its ions. A slightly soluble electrolyte begins to precipitate when the magnitude of the reaction quotient for the dissolution reaction exceeds the magnitude of the solubility product. Precipitation continues until the reaction quotient equals the solubility product. A reagent can be added to a solution of ions to allow one ion to selectively precipitate out of solution. The common ion effect can also play a role in precipitation reactions. In the presence of an ion in common with one of the ions in the solution, Le Chatelier’s principle applies and more precipitate comes out of solution so that the molar solubility is reduced.

Glossary

common ion effect

effect on equilibrium when a substance with an ion in common with the dissolved species is added to the solution; causes a decrease in the solubility of an ionic species, or a decrease in the ionization of a weak acid or base

molar solubility

solubility of a compound expressed in units of moles per liter (mol/L)

selective precipitation

process in which ions are separated using differences in their solubility with a given precipitating reagent

solubility product (K_{sp})

equilibrium constant for the dissolution of a slightly soluble electrolyte

---

This page titled 4.6: Precipitation and Dissolution is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **15.1: Precipitation and Dissolution** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

5: Acids and Bases

A general chemistry Libretexts Textbook remixed and remastered from OpenStax's textbook:

General Chemistry

This chapter will illustrate the chemistry of acid-base reactions and equilibria, and provide you with tools for quantifying the concentrations of acids and bases in solutions.

5.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases
5.2: pH and pOH
5.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases
5.4: Hydrolysis of Salt Solutions
5.5: Polyprotic Acids
5.6: Lewis Acids and Bases

Contributors and Attributions

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

This page titled 5: Acids and Bases is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

5.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases

Learning Objectives

- Identify acids, bases, and conjugate acid-base pairs according to the Brønsted-Lowry definition
- Write equations for acid and base ionization reactions
- Use the ion-product constant for water to calculate hydronium and hydroxide ion concentrations
- Describe the acid-base behavior of amphiprotic substances

Acids and bases have been known for a long time. When Robert Boyle characterized them in 1680, he noted that acids dissolve many substances, change the color of certain natural dyes (for example, they change litmus from blue to red), and lose these characteristic properties after coming into contact with alkalis (bases). In the eighteenth century, it was recognized that acids have a sour taste, react with limestone to liberate a gaseous substance (now known to be CO_2), and interact with alkalis to form neutral substances. In 1815, Humphry Davy contributed greatly to the development of the modern acid-base concept by demonstrating that hydrogen is the essential constituent of acids. Around that same time, Joseph Louis Gay-Lussac concluded that acids are substances that can neutralize bases and that these two classes of substances can be defined only in terms of each other. The significance of hydrogen was reemphasized in 1884 when Svante Arrhenius defined an acid as a compound that dissolves in water to yield hydrogen cations (now recognized to be hydronium ions) and a base as a compound that dissolves in water to yield hydroxide anions.

In an earlier chapter on chemical reactions, we defined acids and bases as Arrhenius did: We identified an acid as a compound that dissolves in water to yield hydronium ions (H_3O^+) and a base as a compound that dissolves in water to yield hydroxide ions (OH^-). This definition is not wrong; it is simply limited.

Later, we extended the definition of an acid or a base using the more general definition proposed in 1923 by the Danish chemist Johannes Brønsted and the English chemist Thomas Lowry. Their definition centers on the proton, H^+. A proton is what remains when a normal hydrogen atom, ^1_1H, loses an electron. A compound that donates a proton to another compound is called a Brønsted-Lowry acid, and a compound that accepts a proton is called a Brønsted-Lowry base. An acid-base reaction is the transfer of a proton from a proton donor (acid) to a proton acceptor (base). In a subsequent chapter of this text we will introduce the most general model of acid-base behavior introduced by the American chemist G. N. Lewis.

Acids may be compounds such as HCl or H_2SO_4, organic acids like acetic acid (CH_3COOH) or ascorbic acid (vitamin C), or H_2O. Anions (such as \(\ce{HSO_4^-}\), $H_2PO_4^-$, HS^-, and HCO_3^-) and cations (such as H_3O^+, NH_4^+, and $[Al(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$) may also act as acids. Bases fall into the same three categories. Bases may be neutral molecules (such as H_2O, NH_3, and CH_3NH_2), anions (such as OH^-, HS^-, HCO_3^-, CO_3^{2-}, F^-, and PO_4^{3-}), or cations (such as $[Al(H_2O)_5OH]^{2+}$). The most familiar bases are ionic compounds such as $NaOH$ and $Ca(OH)_2$, which contain the hydroxide ion, OH^-. The hydroxide ion in these compounds accepts a proton from acids to form water:

$$H^+ + OH^- \rightarrow H_2O \tag{5.1.1}$$

We call the product that remains after an acid donates a proton the conjugate base of the acid. This species is a base because it can accept a proton (to re-form the acid):

$$\text{acid} \rightleftharpoons \text{proton} + \text{conjugate base} \tag{5.1.2}$$

$$HF \rightleftharpoons H^+ + F^- \tag{5.1.3}$$

$$H_2SO_4 \rightleftharpoons H^+ + HSO_4^- \tag{5.1.4}$$

$$H_2O \rightleftharpoons H^+ + OH^- \tag{5.1.5}$$

$$HSO_4^- \rightleftharpoons H^+ + SO_4^{2-} \tag{5.1.6}$$

$$NH_4^+ \rightleftharpoons H^+ + NH_3 \tag{5.1.7}$$

We call the product that results when a base accepts a proton the base's conjugate acid. This species is an acid because it can give up a proton (and thus re-form the base):

$$\text{base} + \text{proton} \rightleftharpoons \text{conjugate acid} \tag{5.1.8}$$

$$OH^- + H^+ \rightleftharpoons H_2O \tag{5.1.9}$$

$$H_2O + H^+ \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ \tag{5.1.10}$$

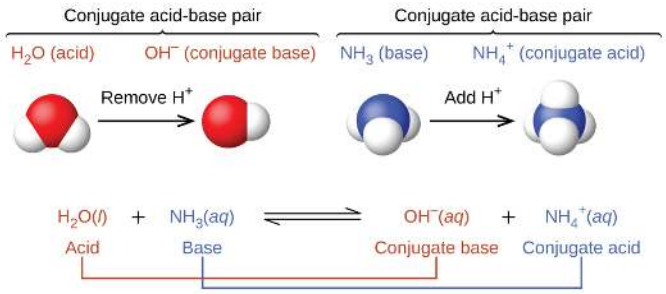
$$NH_3 + H^+ \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+ \tag{5.1.11}$$

$$S^{2-} + H^+ \rightleftharpoons HS^- \tag{5.1.12}$$

$$CO_3^{2-} + H^+ \rightleftharpoons HCO_3^- \tag{5.1.13}$$

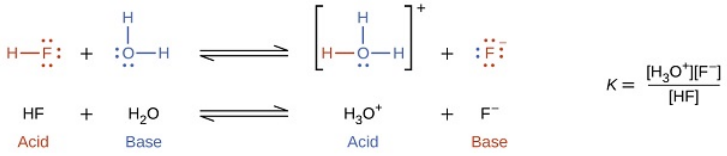
$$F^- + H^+ \rightleftharpoons HF \tag{5.1.14}$$

In these two sets of equations, the behaviors of acids as proton donors and bases as proton acceptors are represented in isolation. In reality, all acid-base reactions involve the transfer of protons between acids and bases. For example, consider the acid-base reaction that takes place when ammonia is dissolved in water. A water molecule (functioning as an acid) transfers a proton to an ammonia molecule (functioning as a base), yielding the conjugate base of water, OH^-, and the conjugate acid of ammonia, NH_4^+:



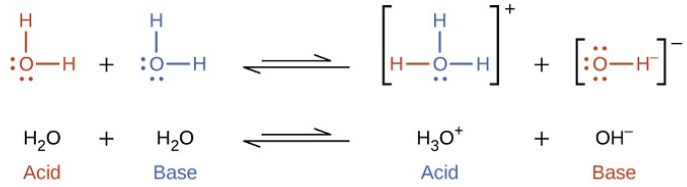
This figure has three parts in two rows. In the first row, two diagrams of acid-base pairs are shown. On the left, a space filling model of H subscript 2 O is shown with a red O atom at the center and two smaller white H atoms attached in a bent shape. Above this model is the label “H subscript 2 O (acid)” in purple. An arrow points right, which is labeled “Remove H superscript plus.” To the right is another space filling model with a single red O atom to which a single smaller white H atom is attached. The label in purple above this model reads, “O H superscript negative (conjugate base).” Above both of these red and white models is an upward pointing bracket that is labeled “Conjugate acid-base pair.” To the right is a space filling model with a central blue N atom to which three smaller white H atoms are attached in a triangular pyramid arrangement. A label in green above reads “N H subscript 3 (base).” An arrow labeled “Add H superscript plus” points right. To the right of the arrow is another space filling model with a blue central N atom and four smaller white H atoms in a tetrahedral arrangement. The green label above reads “N H subscript 3 superscript plus (conjugate acid).” Above both of these blue and white models is an upward pointing bracket that is labeled “Conjugate acid-base pair.” The second row of the figure shows the chemical reaction, H subscript 2 O (l) is shown in purple, and is labeled below in purple as “acid,” plus N H subscript 3 (a q) in green, labeled below in green as “base,” followed by a double sided arrow arrow and O H superscript negative (a q) in purple, labeled in purple as “conjugate base,” plus N H subscript 4 superscript plus (a q)” in green, which is labeled in green as “conjugate acid.” The acid on the left side of the equation is connected to the conjugate base on the right with a purple line. Similarly, the base on the left is connected to the conjugate acid on the right side.

The reaction between a Brønsted-Lowry acid and water is called acid ionization. For example, when hydrogen fluoride dissolves in water and ionizes, protons are transferred from hydrogen fluoride molecules to water molecules, yielding hydronium ions and fluoride ions:



This figure has two rows. In both rows, a chemical reaction is shown. In the first, structural formulas are provided. In this model, in purple, an H atom is connected to an F atom with a single bond. The F atom has pairs of electron dots at the top, right, and bottom. This is followed by a plus sign, which is followed in green by an O atom which has H atoms singly bonded above and to the right. The O atom has pairs of electron dots on its left and lower sides. A double arrow follows. To the right, in brackets is a structure with a central O atom in green, with green H atoms singly bonded above and to the right. A pair of green electron dots is on the lower side of the O atom. To the left of the green O atom, a purple H atom is singly bonded. This is followed by a plus sign and an F atom in purple with pairs of electron dots above, right, below, and to the left. This atom also has a superscript negative sign. The reaction is written in symbolic form below. H F is labeled in purple below as “Acid subscript 1.” This is followed by plus H subscript 2 O, which is labeled in green below as “Base subscript 2.” A double sided arrow follows. To the right is H subscript 3 O superscript plus, which is labeled in green as below in as “Acid subscript 2.” This is followed by plus and F surrounded by 4 pairs of dots and superscript negative. The label below in purple reads, “Base subscript 1.” To the right of the reactions is the formula, K subscript a equals left bracket H subscript 3 O superscript plus right bracket left bracket F superscript negative right bracket all over left bracket H F right bracket.

In the preceding paragraphs we saw that water can function as either an acid or a base, depending on the nature of the solute dissolved in it. In fact, in pure water or in any aqueous solution, water acts both as an acid and a base. A very small fraction of water molecules donate protons to other water molecules to form hydronium ions and hydroxide ions:



This figure has two rows. In both rows, a chemical reaction is shown. In the first, structural formulas are provided. In this model, in purple, O atom which has H atoms singly bonded above and to the right. The O atom has pairs of electron dots on its left and lower sides. This is followed by a plus sign, which is followed in green by an O atom which has H atoms singly bonded above and to the right. The O atom has pairs of electron dots on its left and lower sides. A double arrow follows. To the right, in brackets is a structure with a central O atom in green, with green H atoms singly bonded above and to the right. A pair of green electron dots is on the lower side of the O atom. To the left of the green O atom, a purple H atom is singly bonded. Outside the brackets to the right is a superscript plus. This is followed by a plus sign and an O atom in purple with pairs of electron dots above, left, and below. An H atom is singly bonded to the right. This atom has a superscript negative sign. The reaction is written in symbolic form below. H subscript 2 O is labeled in purple below as “Acid subscript 1.” This is followed by plus H subscript 2 O, which is labeled in green below as “Base subscript 2.” A double sided arrow follows. To the right is H subscript 3 O superscript plus, which is labeled in green as below in as “Acid subscript 2.” This is followed by plus and O with pairs of dots above, below, and to the left with a singly bonded H on the right with a superscript negative. The label below in purple reads, “ Base subscript 1.”

This type of reaction, in which a substance ionizes when one molecule of the substance reacts with another molecule of the same substance, is referred to as **autoionization**. Pure water undergoes autoionization to a very slight extent. Only about two out of every 10^9 molecules in a sample of pure water are ionized at 25 °C. The equilibrium constant for the ionization of water is called the ion-product constant for water (K_w):

$$\mathrm{H_2O_{(\mathit{l})} + H_2O_{(\mathit{l})} \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+_{(\mathit{aq})} + OH^-_{(\mathit{aq})}} \quad K_w = [\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{OH^-}] \tag{5.1.15}$$

The slight ionization of pure water is reflected in the small value of the equilibrium constant; at 25 °C, Kw has a value of 1.0×10^{-14}. The process is endothermic, and so the extent of ionization and the resulting concentrations of hydronium ion and hydroxide ion increase with temperature. For example, at 100 °C, the value for K_w is approximately 5.1×10^{-13}, roughly 50-times larger than the value at 25 °C.

Example 5.1.1: Ion Concentrations in Pure Water

What are the hydronium ion concentration and the hydroxide ion concentration in pure water at 25 °C?

Solution

The autoionization of water yields the same number of hydronium and hydroxide ions. Therefore, in pure water, $[H_3O^+] = [OH^-]$. At 25 °C:

$$K_w = [H_3O^+][OH^-] = [H_3O^+]^2 = [OH^-]^2 = 1.0 \times 10^{-14}$$

So:

$$[H_3O^+] = [OH^-] = \sqrt{1.0 \times 10^{-14}} = 1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$$

The hydronium ion concentration and the hydroxide ion concentration are the same, and we find that both equal $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$.

Exercise 5.1.1

The ion product of water at 80 °C is 2.4×10^{-13}. What are the concentrations of hydronium and hydroxide ions in pure water at 80 °C?

Answer

$[H_3O^+] = [OH^-] = 4.9 \times 10^{-7}\ M$

It is important to realize that the autoionization equilibrium for water is established in all aqueous solutions. Adding an acid or base to water will not change the position of the equilibrium. Example 14.12 demonstrates the quantitative aspects of this relation between hydronium and hydroxide ion concentrations.

Example 5.1.2: The Inverse Proportionality of $[H_3O^+]$ and $[OH^-]$

The Inverse Proportionality of [H_3O^+] and [OH^-] A solution of carbon dioxide in water has a hydronium ion concentration of $2.0 \times 10^{-6}\ M$. What is the concentration of hydroxide ion at 25 °C?

Solution

We know the value of the ion-product constant for water at 25 °C:

$$2\,H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+_{(aq)} + OH^-_{(aq)}$$

$$K_w = [H_3O^+][OH^-] = 1.0 \times 10^{-14}$$

Thus, we can calculate the missing equilibrium concentration.

Rearrangement of the K_w expression yields that $[OH^-]$ is directly proportional to the inverse of [H_3O^+]:

$$[OH^-] = \frac{K_w}{[H_3O^+]} = \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{2.0 \times 10^{-6}} = 5.0 \times 10^{-9}$$

The hydroxide ion concentration in water is reduced to $5.0 \times 10^{-9}\ M$ as the hydrogen ion concentration increases to $2.0 \times 10^{-6}\ M$. This is expected from Le Chatelier's principle; the autoionization reaction shifts to the left to reduce the stress of the increased hydronium ion concentration and the $[OH^-]$ is reduced relative to that in pure water.

A check of these concentrations confirms that our arithmetic is correct:

$$\begin{aligned} K_w &= [H_3O^+][OH^-] \\ &= (2.0 \times 10^{-6})(5.0 \times 10^{-9}) \\ &= 1.0 \times 10^{-14} \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 5.1.2

What is the hydronium ion concentration in an aqueous solution with a hydroxide ion concentration of 0.001 M at 25 °C?

Answer

$$[H_3O^+] = 1 \times 10^{-11} M$$

Amphiprotic Species

Like water, many molecules and ions may either gain or lose a proton under the appropriate conditions. Such species are said to be amphiprotic. Another term used to describe such species is amphoteric, which is a more general term for a species that may act either as an acid or a base by any definition (not just the Brønsted-Lowry one). Consider for example the bicarbonate ion, which may either donate or accept a proton as shown here:

$$HCO^-_{3(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons CO^{2-}_{3(aq)} + H_3O^+_{(aq)} \tag{5.1.16}$$

$$HCO^-_{3(aq)} + H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_{3(aq)} + OH^-_{(aq)} \tag{5.1.17}$$

Example 5.1.3: The Acid-Base Behavior of an Amphoteric Substance

Write separate equations representing the reaction of HSO_3^-

a. as an acid with OH^-
b. as a base with HI

Solution

a. $HSO_3^-(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons SO_3^{2-}(aq) + H_2O_{(l)}$
b. $HSO_3^-(aq) + HI(aq) \rightleftharpoons H_2SO_3(aq) + I^-(aq)$

Exercise 5.1.3

Write separate equations representing the reaction of $H_2PO_4^-$

a. as a base with HBr
b. as an acid with OH^-

Answer a

$$H_2PO_4^-(aq) + HBr(aq) \rightleftharpoons H_3PO_4(aq) + Br^-(aq)$$

Answer b

$$H_2PO_4^-(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightleftharpoons HPO_4^{2-}(aq) + H_2O_{(l)}$$

Summary

A compound that can donate a proton (a hydrogen ion) to another compound is called a Brønsted-Lowry acid. The compound that accepts the proton is called a Brønsted-Lowry base. The species remaining after a Brønsted-Lowry acid has lost a proton is the conjugate base of the acid. The species formed when a Brønsted-Lowry base gains a proton is the conjugate acid of the base. Thus, an acid-base reaction occurs when a proton is transferred from an acid to a base, with formation of the conjugate base of the reactant acid and formation of the conjugate acid of the reactant base. Amphiprotic species can act as both proton donors and proton acceptors. Water is the most important amphiprotic species. It can form both the hydronium ion, H_3O^+, and the hydroxide ion, OH^- when it undergoes autoionization:

$$2\,H_2O_{(l)} \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

The ion product of water, K_w is the equilibrium constant for the autoionization reaction:

$$K_w = [H_3O^+][OH^-] = 1.0 \times 10^{-14} \text{ at } 25\,^\circ C$$

Key Equations

- $$K_{\text{w}} = [\text{H}_3\text{O}^+][\text{OH}^-] = 1.0 \times 10^{-14} \text{ (at 25 °C)}$$

Glossary

acid ionization
reaction involving the transfer of a proton from an acid to water, yielding hydronium ions and the conjugate base of the acid

amphiprotic
species that may either gain or lose a proton in a reaction

amphoteric
species that can act as either an acid or a base

autoionization
reaction between identical species yielding ionic products; for water, this reaction involves transfer of protons to yield hydronium and hydroxide ions

base ionization
reaction involving the transfer of a proton from water to a base, yielding hydroxide ions and the conjugate acid of the base

Brønsted-Lowry acid
proton donor

Brønsted-Lowry base
proton acceptor

conjugate acid
substance formed when a base gains a proton

conjugate base
substance formed when an acid loses a proton

ion-product constant for water (K_{w})
equilibrium constant for the autoionization of water

This page titled 5.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **14.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

5.2: pH and pOH

Learning Objectives

- Explain the characterization of aqueous solutions as acidic, basic, or neutral
- Express hydronium and hydroxide ion concentrations on the pH and pOH scales
- Perform calculations relating pH and pOH

As discussed earlier, hydronium and hydroxide ions are present both in pure water and in all aqueous solutions, and their concentrations are inversely proportional as determined by the ion product of water (K_w). The concentrations of these ions in a solution are often critical determinants of the solution's properties and the chemical behaviors of its other solutes, and specific vocabulary has been developed to describe these concentrations in relative terms. A solution is neutral if it contains equal concentrations of hydronium and hydroxide ions; acidic if it contains a greater concentration of hydronium ions than hydroxide ions; and basic if it contains a lesser concentration of hydronium ions than hydroxide ions.

A common means of expressing quantities, the values of which may span many orders of magnitude, is to use a logarithmic scale. One such scale that is very popular for chemical concentrations and equilibrium constants is based on the p-function, defined as shown where "X" is the quantity of interest and "log" is the base-10 logarithm:

$$\mathrm{pX} = -\log \mathrm{X} \tag{5.2.1}$$

The pH of a solution is therefore defined as shown here, where $[H_3O^+]$ is the molar concentration of hydronium ion in the solution:

$$\mathrm{pH} = -\log[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] \tag{5.2.2}$$

Rearranging this equation to isolate the hydronium ion molarity yields the equivalent expression:

$$[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = 10^{-\mathrm{pH}} \tag{5.2.3}$$

Likewise, the hydroxide ion molarity may be expressed as a p-function, or pOH:

$$\mathrm{pOH} = -\log[\mathrm{OH^-}] \tag{5.2.4}$$

or

$$[\mathrm{OH^-}] = 10^{-\mathrm{pOH}} \tag{5.2.5}$$

Finally, the relation between these two ion concentration expressed as p-functions is easily derived from the K_w expression:

$$K_\mathrm{w} = [\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{OH^-}] \tag{5.2.6}$$

$$-\log K_\mathrm{w} = -\log([\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{OH^-}]) = -\log[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] + -\log[\mathrm{OH^-}] \tag{5.2.7}$$

$$\mathrm{p}K_\mathrm{w} = \mathrm{pH} + \mathrm{pOH} \tag{5.2.8}$$

At 25 °C, the value of K_w is 1.0×10^{-14}, and so:

$$14.00 = \mathrm{pH} + \mathrm{pOH} \tag{5.2.9}$$

The hydronium ion molarity in pure water (or any neutral solution) is $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ at 25 °C. The pH and pOH of a neutral solution at this temperature are therefore:

$$\mathrm{pH} = -\log[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = -\log(1.0 \times 10^{-7}) = 7.00 \tag{5.2.10}$$

$$\mathrm{pOH} = -\log[\mathrm{OH^-}] = -\log(1.0 \times 10^{-7}) = 7.00 \tag{5.2.11}$$

And so, at this temperature, acidic solutions are those with hydronium ion molarities greater than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ and hydroxide ion molarities less than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ (corresponding to pH values less than 7.00 and pOH values greater than 7.00). Basic solutions are those with hydronium ion molarities less than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ and hydroxide ion molarities greater than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ (corresponding to pH values greater than 7.00 and pOH values less than 7.00).

When $pH = 7$ Solutions are not Neutral

Since the autoionization constant K_w is temperature dependent, these correlations between pH values and the acidic/neutral/basic adjectives will be different at temperatures other than 25 °C. For example, the hydronium molarity of pure water at 80 °C is 4.9 × 10^{-7} *M*, which corresponds to pH and pOH values of:

$$\begin{aligned} pH &= -\log[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] \\ &= -\log(4.9 \times 10^{-7}) \\ &= 6.31 \\ pOH &= -\log[\mathrm{OH^-}] \\ &= -\log(4.9 \times 10^{-7}) \\ &= 6.31 \end{aligned}$$

At this temperature, then, neutral solutions exhibit pH = pOH = 6.31, acidic solutions exhibit pH less than 6.31 and pOH greater than 6.31, whereas basic solutions exhibit pH greater than 6.31 and pOH less than 6.31. This distinction can be important when studying certain processes that occur at nonstandard temperatures, such as enzyme reactions in warm-blooded organisms. Unless otherwise noted, references to pH values are presumed to be those at standard temperature (25 °C) (Table 5.2.1).

Table 5.2.1: Summary of Relations for Acidic, Basic and Neutral Solutions

Classification	Relative Ion Concentrations	pH at 25 °C
acidic	$[H_3O^+] > [OH^-]$	pH < 7
neutral	$[H_3O^+] = [OH^-]$	pH = 7
basic	$[H_3O^+] < [OH^-]$	pH > 7

Figure 5.2.1 shows the relationships between $[H_3O^+]$, $[OH^-]$, pH, and pOH, and gives values for these properties at standard temperatures for some common substances.

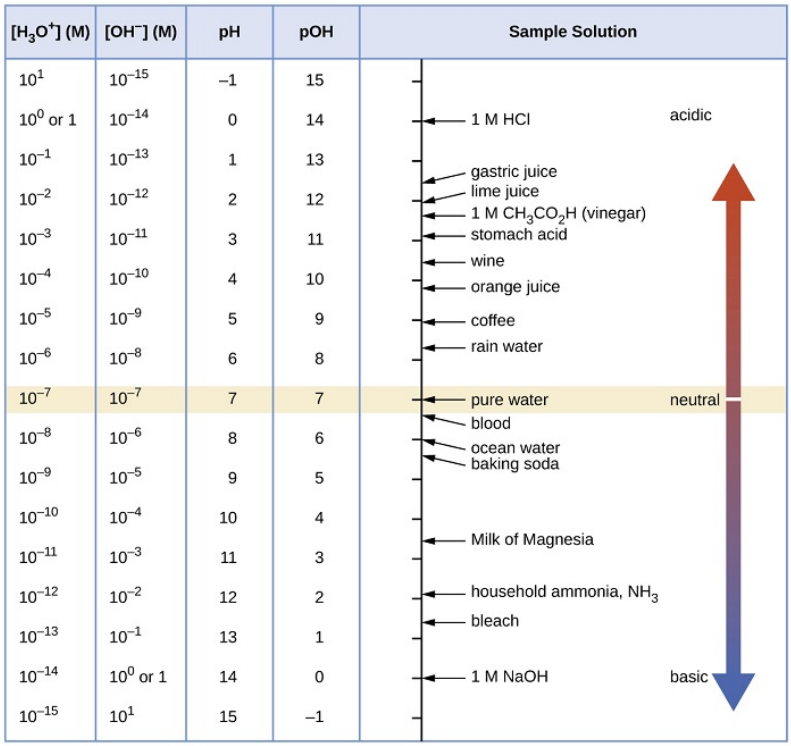


Figure 5.2.1: The pH and pOH scales represent concentrations of $[H_3O^+]$ and OH^-, respectively. The pH and pOH values of some common substances at standard temperature (25 °C) are shown in this chart.

A table is provided with 5 columns. The first column is labeled “left bracket H subscript 3 O superscript plus right bracket (M).” Powers of ten are listed in the column beginning at 10 superscript 1, including 10 superscript 0 or 1, 10 superscript negative 1, decreasing by single powers of 10 to 10 superscript negative 15. The second column is labeled “left bracket O H superscript negative right bracket (M).” Powers of ten are listed in the column beginning at 10 superscript negative 15, increasing by single powers of 10 to including 10 superscript 0 or 1, and 10 superscript 1. The third column is labeled “p H.” Values listed in this column are integers beginning at negative 1, increasing by ones up to 14. The fourth column is labeled “p O H.” Values in this column are integers beginning at 15, decreasing by ones up to negative 1. The fifth column is labeled “Sample Solution.” A vertical line at the left of the column has tick marks corresponding to each p H level in the table. Substances are listed next to this line segment with line segments connecting them to the line to show approximate p H and p O H values. 1 M H C l is listed at a p H of 0. Gastric juices are listed at a p H of about 1.5. Lime juice is listed at a p H of about 2, followed by 1 M C H subscript 3 C O subscript 2 H, followed by stomach acid at a p H value of nearly 3. Wine is listed around 3.5. Coffee is listed just past 5. Pure water is listed at a p H of 7. Pure blood is just beyond 7. Milk of Magnesia is listed just past a p H of 10.5. Household ammonia is listed just before a pH of 12. 1 M N a O H is listed at a p H of 0. To the right of this labeled arrow is an arrow that points up and down through the height of the column. A beige strip passes through the table and to this double headed arrow at p H 7. To the left of the double headed arrow in this beige strip is the label “neutral.” A narrow beige strip runs through the arrow. Just above and below this region, the arrow is purple. It gradually turns to a bright red as it extends upward. At the top of the arrow, near the head of the arrow is the label “acidic.” Similarly, the lower region changes color from purple to blue moving to the bottom of the column. The head at this end of the arrow is labeled “basic.”

✔ Example 5.2.1: Calculation of pH from $[H_3O^+]$

What is the pH of stomach acid, a solution of HCl with a hydronium ion concentration of $1.2 \times 10^{-3}\ M$?

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} pH &= -\log[H_3O^+] \\ &= -\log(1.2 \times 10^{-3}) \\ &= -(-2.92) \\ &= 2.92 \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 5.2.1

Water exposed to air contains carbonic acid, H_2CO_3, due to the reaction between carbon dioxide and water:

$$CO_2(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_3(aq)$$

Air-saturated water has a hydronium ion concentration caused by the dissolved CO_2 of $2.0 \times 10^{-6}\ M$, about 20-times larger than that of pure water. Calculate the pH of the solution at 25 °C.

Answer

5.70

Example 5.2.2: Calculation of Hydronium Ion Concentration from pH

Calculate the hydronium ion concentration of blood, the pH of which is 7.3 (slightly alkaline).

Solution

$$pH = -\log[H_3O^+] = 7.3$$

$$\log[H_3O^+] = -7.3$$

$$[H_3O^+] = 10^{-7.3}$$

or

$$[H_3O^+] = \text{antilog of} -7.3$$

$$[H_3O^+] = 5 \times 10^{-8}\ M$$

(On a calculator take the antilog, or the "inverse" log, of −7.3, or calculate $10^{-7.3}$.)

Exercise 5.2.2

Calculate the hydronium ion concentration of a solution with a pH of −1.07.

Answer

12 M

Environmental Science

Normal rainwater has a pH between 5 and 6 due to the presence of dissolved CO_2 which forms carbonic acid:

$$H_2O(l) + CO_2(g) \longrightarrow H_2CO_3(aq) \tag{5.2.12}$$

$$H_2CO_3(aq) \rightleftharpoons H^+(aq) + HCO_3^-(aq) \tag{5.2.13}$$

Acid rain is rainwater that has a pH of less than 5, due to a variety of nonmetal oxides, including CO_2, SO_2, SO_3, NO, and NO_2 being dissolved in the water and reacting with it to form not only carbonic acid, but sulfuric acid and nitric acid. The formation and subsequent ionization of sulfuric acid are shown here:

$$H_2O(l) + SO_3(g) \longrightarrow H_2SO_4(aq) \tag{5.2.14}$$

$$H_2SO_4(aq) \longrightarrow H^+(aq) + HSO_4^-(aq) \tag{5.2.15}$$

Carbon dioxide is naturally present in the atmosphere because we and most other organisms produce it as a waste product of metabolism. Carbon dioxide is also formed when fires release carbon stored in vegetation or when we burn wood or fossil fuels. Sulfur trioxide in the atmosphere is naturally produced by volcanic activity, but it also stems from burning fossil fuels, which have traces of sulfur, and from the process of "roasting" ores of metal sulfides in metal-refining processes. Oxides of nitrogen are

formed in internal combustion engines where the high temperatures make it possible for the nitrogen and oxygen in air to chemically combine.

Acid rain is a particular problem in industrial areas where the products of combustion and smelting are released into the air without being stripped of sulfur and nitrogen oxides. In North America and Europe until the 1980s, it was responsible for the destruction of forests and freshwater lakes, when the acidity of the rain actually killed trees, damaged soil, and made lakes uninhabitable for all but the most acid-tolerant species. Acid rain also corrodes statuary and building facades that are made of marble and limestone (Figure 5.2.2). Regulations limiting the amount of sulfur and nitrogen oxides that can be released into the atmosphere by industry and automobiles have reduced the severity of acid damage to both natural and manmade environments in North America and Europe. It is now a growing problem in industrial areas of China and India.



(a) (b)

Figure 5.2.2: (a) Acid rain makes trees more susceptible to drought and insect infestation, and depletes nutrients in the soil. (b) It also is corrodes statues that are carved from marble or limestone. (credit a: modification of work by Chris M Morris; credit b: modification of work by "Eden, Janine and Jim"/Flickr)

Two photos are shown. Photograph a on the left shows the upper portion of trees against a bright blue sky. The tops of several trees at the center of the photograph have bare branches and appear to be dead. Image b shows a statue of a man that appears to from the revolutionary war era in either marble or limestone.

Example 5.2.3: Calculation of pOH

What are the pOH and the pH of a 0.0125-M solution of potassium hydroxide, KOH?

Solution

Potassium hydroxide is a highly soluble ionic compound and completely dissociates when dissolved in dilute solution, yielding $[OH^-] = 0.0125$ M:

$$\mathrm{pOH} = -\log[\mathrm{OH}^-] = -\log 0.0125$$

$$= -(-1.903) = 1.903$$

The pH can be found from the pOH:

$$\mathrm{pH} + \mathrm{pOH} = 14.00$$

$$\mathrm{pH} = 14.00 - \mathrm{pOH} = 14.00 - 1.903 = 12.10$$

Exercise 5.2.3

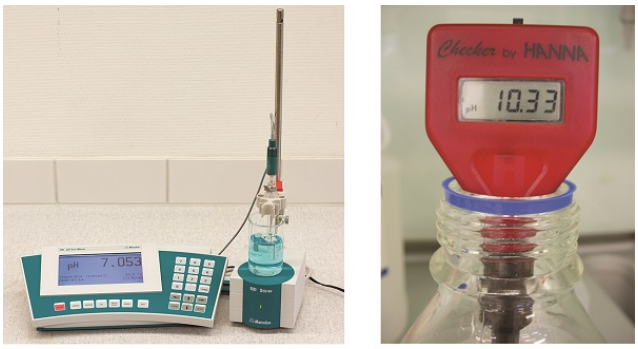
The hydronium ion concentration of vinegar is approximately $4 \times 10^{-3}\ M$. What are the corresponding values of pOH and pH?

Answer

pOH = 11.6,

pH = 14.00 - pOH = 2.4

The acidity of a solution is typically assessed experimentally by measurement of its pH. The pOH of a solution is not usually measured, as it is easily calculated from an experimentally determined pH value. The pH of a solution can be directly measured using a pH meter (Figure 5.2.3).



(a) (b)

Figure 5.2.3: (a) A research-grade pH meter used in a laboratory can have a resolution of 0.001 pH units, an accuracy of ± 0.002 pH units, and may cost in excess of $1000. (b) A portable pH meter has lower resolution (0.01 pH units), lower accuracy (± 0.2 pH units), and a far lower price tag. (credit b: modification of work by Jacopo Werther)

This figure contains two images. The first, image a, is of an analytical digital p H meter on a laboratory counter. The second, image b, is of a portable hand held digital p H meter.

The pH of a solution may also be visually estimated using colored indicators (Figure 5.2.3).



(a) (b)

Figure 5.2.4: (a) A universal indicator assumes a different color in solutions of different pH values. Thus, it can be added to a solution to determine the pH of the solution. The eight vials each contain a universal indicator and 0.1-M solutions of progressively weaker acids: HCl (pH = l), CH_3CO_2H (pH = 3), and NH_4Cl (pH = 5), deionized water, a neutral substance (pH = 7); and 0.1-M solutions of the progressively stronger bases: KCl (pH = 7), aniline, $C_6H_5NH_2$ (pH = 9), NH_3 (pH = 11), and NaOH (pH = 13). (b) pH paper contains a mixture of indicators that give different colors in solutions of differing pH values. (credit: modification of work by Sahar Atwa).

This figure contains two images. The first shows a variety of colors of solutions in labeled beakers. A red solution in a beaker is labeled “0.10 M H C l.” An orange solution is labeled “0.10 M C H subscript 3 C O O H.” A yellow-orange solution is labeled “0.1 M N H subscript 4 C l.” A yellow solution is labeled “deionized water.” A second solution beaker is labeled “0.10 M K C l.” A green solution is labeled “0.10 M aniline.” A blue solution is labeled “0.10 M N H subscript 4 C l (a q).” A final beaker containing a dark blue solution is labeled “0.10 M N a O H.” Image b shows pHydrion paper that is used for measuring pH in the range of p H from 1 to 12. The color scale for identifying p H based on color is shown along with several of the test strips used to evaluate p H.

Summary

The concentration of hydronium ion in a solution of an acid in water is greater than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ at 25 °C. The concentration of hydroxide ion in a solution of a base in water is greater than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ at 25 °C. The concentration of H_3O^+ in a solution can be expressed as the pH of the solution; $\mathrm{pH} = -\log \mathrm{H_3O^+}$. The concentration of OH^- can be expressed as the pOH of the solution: $\mathrm{pOH} = -\log[\mathrm{OH^-}]$. In pure water, pH = 7.00 and pOH = 7.00

Key Equations

- $\mathrm{pH} = -\log[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$
- $\mathrm{pOH} = -\log[\mathrm{OH^-}]$
- $[H_3O^+] = 10^{-\mathrm{pH}}$
- $[OH^-] = 10^{-\mathrm{pOH}}$
- pH + pOH = pK_w = 14.00 at 25 °C

Glossary

acidic

describes a solution in which $[H_3O^+] > [OH^-]$

basic

describes a solution in which $[H_3O^+] < [OH^-]$

neutral

describes a solution in which $[H_3O^+] = [OH^-]$

pH

logarithmic measure of the concentration of hydronium ions in a solution

pOH

logarithmic measure of the concentration of hydroxide ions in a solution

---

This page titled 5.2: pH and pOH is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **14.2: pH and pOH** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

5.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases

Learning Objectives

- Assess the relative strengths of acids and bases according to their ionization constants
- Rationalize trends in acid–base strength in relation to molecular structure
- Carry out equilibrium calculations for weak acid–base systems

We can rank the strengths of acids by the extent to which they ionize in aqueous solution. The reaction of an acid with water is given by the general expression:

$$\mathrm{HA}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{A^-}(aq) \tag{5.3.1}$$

Water is the base that reacts with the acid HA, $\mathrm{A^-}$ is the conjugate base of the acid HA, and the hydronium ion is the conjugate acid of water. A strong acid yields 100% (or very nearly so) of $\mathrm{H_3O^+}$ and $\mathrm{A^-}$ when the acid ionizes in water; Figure 5.3.1 lists several strong acids. A weak acid gives small amounts of $\mathrm{H_3O^+}$ and $\mathrm{A^-}$.

Figure 5.3.1: Some of the common strong acids and bases are listed here.

Six Strong Acids		Six Strong Bases	
$\mathrm{HClO_4}$	perchloric acid	LiOH	lithium hydroxide
HCl	hydrochloric acid	NaOH	sodium hydroxide
HBr	hydrobromic acid	KOH	potassium hydroxide
HI	hydroiodic acid	$\mathrm{Ca(OH)_2}$	calcium hydroxide
$\mathrm{HNO_3}$	nitric acid	$\mathrm{Sr(OH)_2}$	strontium hydroxide
$\mathrm{H_2SO_4}$	sulfuric acid	$\mathrm{Ba(OH)_2}$	barium hydroxide

The relative strengths of acids may be determined by measuring their equilibrium constants in aqueous solutions. In solutions of the same concentration, stronger acids ionize to a greater extent, and so yield higher concentrations of hydronium ions than do weaker acids. The equilibrium constant for an acid is called the acid-ionization constant, K_a. For the reaction of an acid HA:

$$\mathrm{HA}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{A^-}(aq) \tag{5.3.2}$$

we write the equation for the ionization constant as:

$$K_\mathrm{a} = \frac{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{A^-}]}{[\mathrm{HA}]} \tag{5.3.3}$$

where the concentrations are those at equilibrium. Although water is a reactant in the reaction, it is the solvent as well, so we do not include $[\mathrm{H_2O}]$ in the equation. The larger the K_a of an acid, the larger the concentration of $\mathrm{H_3O^+}$ and $\mathrm{A^-}$ relative to the concentration of the nonionized acid, HA. Thus a stronger acid has a larger ionization constant than does a weaker acid. The ionization constants increase as the strengths of the acids increase.

The following data on acid-ionization constants indicate the order of acid strength: $\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H} < \mathrm{HNO_2} < \mathrm{HSO_4^-}$

$$\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{CH_3CO_2^-}(aq) \qquad K_\mathrm{a} = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$$

$$\mathrm{HNO_2}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{NO_2^-}(aq) \qquad K_\mathrm{a} = 4.6 \times 10^{-4}$$

$$\mathrm{HSO_4^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{SO_4^{2-}}(aq) \qquad K_\mathrm{a} = 1.2 \times 10^{-2}$$

Another measure of the strength of an acid is its *percent ionization*. The percent ionization of a weak acid is the ratio of the concentration of the ionized acid to the initial acid concentration, times 100:

$$\%\ \text{ionization} = \frac{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]_\mathrm{eq}}{[\mathrm{HA}]_0} \times 100\% \tag{5.3.4}$$

Because the ratio includes the initial concentration, the percent ionization for a solution of a given weak acid varies depending on the original concentration of the acid, and actually decreases with increasing acid concentration.

Example 5.3.1: Calculation of Percent Ionization from pH

Calculate the percent ionization of a 0.125-*M* solution of nitrous acid (a weak acid), with a pH of 2.09.

Solution

The percent ionization for an acid is:

$$\frac{[H_3O^+]_{eq}}{[HNO_2]_0} \times 100$$

The chemical equation for the dissociation of the nitrous acid is:

$$HNO_2(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons NO_2^-(aq) + H_3O^+(aq).$$

Since $10^{-pH} = [H_3O^+]$, we find that $10^{-2.09} = 8.1 \times 10^{-3}\ M$, so that percent ionization (Equation 5.3.4) is:

$$\frac{8.1 \times 10^{-3}}{0.125} \times 100 = 6.5\%$$

Remember, the logarithm 2.09 indicates a hydronium ion concentration with only two significant figures.

Exercise 5.3.1

Calculate the percent ionization of a 0.10 *M* solution of acetic acid with a pH of 2.89.

Answer

1.3% ionized

We can rank the strengths of bases by their tendency to form hydroxide ions in aqueous solution. The reaction of a Brønsted-Lowry base with water is given by:

$$B(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons HB^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \tag{5.3.5}$$

Water is the acid that reacts with the base, HB^+ is the conjugate acid of the base B, and the hydroxide ion is the conjugate base of water. A strong base yields 100% (or very nearly so) of OH^- and HB^+ when it reacts with water; Figure 5.3.1 lists several strong bases. A weak base yields a small proportion of hydroxide ions. Soluble ionic hydroxides such as NaOH are considered strong bases because they dissociate completely when dissolved in water.

As we did with acids, we can measure the relative strengths of bases by measuring their base-ionization constant (K_b) in aqueous solutions. In solutions of the same concentration, stronger bases ionize to a greater extent, and so yield higher hydroxide ion concentrations than do weaker bases. A stronger base has a larger ionization constant than does a weaker base. For the reaction of a base, B:

$$B(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons HB^+(aq) + OH^-(aq), \tag{5.3.6}$$

we write the equation for the ionization constant as:

$$K_b = \frac{[HB^+][OH^-]}{[B]} \tag{5.3.7}$$

where the concentrations are those at equilibrium. Again, we do not include $[H_2O]$ in the equation because water is the solvent. The chemical reactions and ionization constants of the three bases shown are:

$$\mathrm{NO_2^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{HNO_2}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \qquad K_\mathrm{b} = 2.17 \times 10^{-11}$$

$$\mathrm{CH_3CO_2^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \qquad K_\mathrm{b} = 5.6 \times 10^{-10}$$

$$\mathrm{NH_3}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{NH_4^+}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \qquad K_\mathrm{b} = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$$

A table of ionization constants of weak bases appears in Table E2. As with acids, percent ionization can be measured for basic solutions, but will vary depending on the base ionization constant and the initial concentration of the solution.

Consider the ionization reactions for a conjugate acid-base pair, $\mathrm{HA} - \mathrm{A^-}$:

$$\mathrm{HA}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{A^-}(aq) \tag{5.3.8}$$

with $K_\mathrm{a} = \dfrac{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{A^-}]}{[\mathrm{HA}]}$.

$$\mathrm{A^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{OH^-}(aq) + \mathrm{HA}(aq) \tag{5.3.9}$$

with $K_\mathrm{b} = \dfrac{[\mathrm{HA}][\mathrm{OH}]}{[\mathrm{A^-}]}$.

Adding these two chemical equations yields the equation for the autoionization for water:

$$\cancel{\mathrm{HA}(aq)} + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) + \cancel{\mathrm{A^-}(aq)} + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \cancel{\mathrm{A^-}(aq)} + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq) + \cancel{\mathrm{HA}(aq)}$$

$$2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$$

As shown in the previous chapter on equilibrium, the K expression for a chemical equation derived from adding two or more other equations is the mathematical product of the other equations' K expressions. Multiplying the mass-action expressions together and cancelling common terms, we see that:

$$K_\mathrm{a} \times K_\mathrm{b} = \frac{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{A^-}]}{[\mathrm{HA}]} \times \frac{[\mathrm{HA}][\mathrm{OH^-}]}{[\mathrm{A^-}]} = [\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{OH^-}] = K_\mathrm{w} \tag{5.3.10}$$

For example, the acid ionization constant of acetic acid (CH_3COOH) is 1.8×10^{-5}, and the base ionization constant of its conjugate base, acetate ion ($\mathrm{CH_3COO^-}$), is 5.6×10^{-10}. The product of these two constants is indeed equal to K_w:

$$K_\mathrm{a} \times K_\mathrm{b} = (1.8 \times 10^{-5}) \times (5.6 \times 10^{-10}) = 1.0 \times 10^{-14} = K_\mathrm{w} \tag{5.3.11}$$

The extent to which an acid, HA, donates protons to water molecules depends on the strength of the conjugate base, $\mathrm{A^-}$, of the acid. If $\mathrm{A^-}$ is a strong base, any protons that are donated to water molecules are recaptured by $\mathrm{A^-}$. Thus there is relatively little $\mathrm{A^-}$ and $\mathrm{H_3O^+}$ in solution, and the acid, HA, is weak. If $\mathrm{A^-}$ is a weak base, water binds the protons more strongly, and the solution contains primarily $\mathrm{A^-}$ and $\mathrm{H_3O^+}$—the acid is strong. Strong acids form very weak conjugate bases, and weak acids form stronger conjugate bases (Figure 5.3.2).

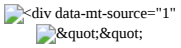


Figure 5.3.2: This diagram shows the relative strengths of conjugate acid-base pairs, as indicated by their ionization constants in aqueous solution.

Figure 5.3.3 lists a series of acids and bases in order of the decreasing strengths of the acids and the corresponding increasing strengths of the bases. The acid and base in a given row are conjugate to each other.

The first six acids in Figure 5.3.3 are the most common strong acids. These acids are completely dissociated in aqueous solution. The conjugate bases of these acids are weaker bases than water. When one of these acids dissolves in water, their protons are completely transferred to water, the stronger base.

Those acids that lie between the hydronium ion and water in Figure 5.3.3 form conjugate bases that can compete with water for possession of a proton. Both hydronium ions and nonionized acid molecules are present in equilibrium in a solution of one of these acids. Compounds that are weaker acids than water (those found below water in the column of acids) in Figure 5.3.3 exhibit no

observable acidic behavior when dissolved in water. Their conjugate bases are stronger than the hydroxide ion, and if any conjugate base were formed, it would react with water to re-form the acid.

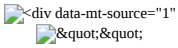

" style="width: 798px; height: 715px;" width="798px" height="715px" src="/@api/deki/files/65685/CNX_Chem_14_03_Corresp.jpg">

Figure 5.3.3: The chart shows the relative strengths of conjugate acid-base pairs.

The extent to which a base forms hydroxide ion in aqueous solution depends on the strength of the base relative to that of the hydroxide ion, as shown in the last column in Figure 5.3.3. A strong base, such as one of those lying below hydroxide ion, accepts protons from water to yield 100% of the conjugate acid and hydroxide ion. Those bases lying between water and hydroxide ion accept protons from water, but a mixture of the hydroxide ion and the base results. Bases that are weaker than water (those that lie above water in the column of bases) show no observable basic behavior in aqueous solution.

Example 5.3.2: The Product $K_a \times K_b = K_w$

Use the K_b for the nitrite ion, NO_2^-, to calculate the K_a for its conjugate acid.

Solution

K_b for NO_2^- is given in this section as 2.17×10^{-11}. The conjugate acid of NO_2^- is HNO_2; K_a for HNO_2 can be calculated using the relationship:

$$K_a \times K_b = 1.0 \times 10^{-14} = K_w$$

Solving for K_a, we get:

$$\begin{aligned} K_a &= \frac{K_w}{K_b} \\ &= \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{2.17 \times 10^{-11}} \\ &= 4.6 \times 10^{-4} \end{aligned}$$

This answer can be verified by finding the K_a for HNO_2 in Table E1

Exercise 5.3.2

We can determine the relative acid strengths of NH_4^+ and HCN by comparing their ionization constants. The ionization constant of HCN is given in Table E1 as 4.9×10^{-10}. The ionization constant of NH_4^+ is not listed, but the ionization constant of its conjugate base, NH_3, is listed as 1.8×10^{-5}. Determine the ionization constant of NH_4^+, and decide which is the stronger acid, HCN or NH_4^+.

Answer

NH_4^+ is the slightly stronger acid (K_a for $NH_4^+ = 5.6 \times 10^{-10}$).

The Ionization of Weak Acids and Weak Bases

Many acids and bases are weak; that is, they do not ionize fully in aqueous solution. A solution of a weak acid in water is a mixture of the nonionized acid, hydronium ion, and the conjugate base of the acid, with the nonionized acid present in the greatest concentration. Thus, a weak acid increases the hydronium ion concentration in an aqueous solution (but not as much as the same amount of a strong acid).

Acetic acid (CH_3CO_2H) is a weak acid. When we add acetic acid to water, it ionizes to a small extent according to the equation:

$$CH_3CO_2H(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + CH_3CO_2^-(aq)$$

giving an equilibrium mixture with most of the acid present in the nonionized (molecular) form. This equilibrium, like other equilibria, is dynamic; acetic acid molecules donate hydrogen ions to water molecules and form hydronium ions and acetate ions at the same rate that hydronium ions donate hydrogen ions to acetate ions to reform acetic acid molecules and water molecules. We

can tell by measuring the pH of an aqueous solution of known concentration that only a fraction of the weak acid is ionized at any moment (Figure 5.3.4). The remaining weak acid is present in the nonionized form.

For acetic acid, at equilibrium:

$$K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+][CH_3CO_2^-]}{[CH_3CO_2H]} = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$$



Figure 5.3.4: pH paper indicates that a 0.l-M solution of HCl (beaker on left) has a pH of 1. The acid is fully ionized and $[H_3O^+]$ = 0.1 M. A 0.1-M solution of CH_3CO_2H (beaker on right) has a pH of 3 ($[H_3O^+]$ = 0.001 M) because the weak acid CH_3CO_2H is only partially ionized. In this solution, $[H_3O^+] < [CH_3CO_2H]$. (credit: modification of work by Sahar Atwa)

Table 5.3.1: Ionization Constants of Some Weak Acids

Ionization Reaction	K_a at 25 °C
$HSO_4^- + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + SO_4^{2-}$	1.2×10^{-2}
$HF + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + F^-$	3.5×10^{-4}
$HNO_2 + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + NO_2^-$	4.6×10^{-4}
$HNCO + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + NCO^-$	2×10^{-4}
$HCO_2H + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + HCO_2^-$	1.8×10^{-4}
$CH_3CO_2H + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + CH_3CO_2^-$	1.8×10^{-5}
$HClO + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + ClO^-$	2.9×10^{-8}
$HBrO + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + BrO^-$	2.8×10^{-9}
$HCN + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + CN^-$	4.9×10^{-10}

Table 5.3.1 gives the ionization constants for several weak acids; additional ionization constants can be found in Table E1.

At equilibrium, a solution of a weak base in water is a mixture of the nonionized base, the conjugate acid of the weak base, and hydroxide ion with the nonionized base present in the greatest concentration. Thus, a weak base increases the hydroxide ion concentration in an aqueous solution (but not as much as the same amount of a strong base).

For example, a solution of the weak base trimethylamine, $(CH_3)_3N$, in water reacts according to the equation:

$$(CH_3)_3N(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons (CH_3)_3NH^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

This gives an equilibrium mixture with most of the base present as the nonionized amine. This equilibrium is analogous to that described for weak acids.

We can confirm by measuring the pH of an aqueous solution of a weak base of known concentration that only a fraction of the base reacts with water (Figure 14.4.5). The remaining weak base is present as the unreacted form. The equilibrium constant for the ionization of a weak base, K_b, is called the **ionization constant** of the weak base, and is equal to the reaction quotient when the reaction is at equilibrium. For trimethylamine, at equilibrium:

$$K_b = \frac{[(CH_3)_3NH^+][OH^-]}{[(CH_3)_3N]}$$



Figure 5.3.5: pH paper indicates that a 0.1-M solution of NH_3 (left) is weakly basic. The solution has a pOH of 3 ($[OH^-]$ = 0.001 M) because the weak base NH_3 only partially reacts with water. A 0.1-M solution of NaOH (right) has a pOH of 1 because NaOH is a strong base (credit: modification of work by Sahar Atwa).

The ionization constants of several weak bases are given in Table 5.3.2 and Table E2.

Table 5.3.2: Ionization Constants of Some Weak Bases

Ionization Reaction	K_b at 25 °C
$(CH_3)_2NH + H_2O \rightleftharpoons (CH_3)_2NH_2^+ + OH^-$	5.9×10^{-4}
$CH_3NH_2 + H_2O \rightleftharpoons CH_3NH_3^+ + OH^-$	4.4×10^{-4}
$(CH_3)_3N + H_2O \rightleftharpoons (CH_3)_3NH^+ + OH^-$	6.3×10^{-5}
$NH_3 + H_2O \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+ + OH^-$	1.8×10^{-5}
$C_6H_5NH_2 + H_2O \rightleftharpoons C_6N_5NH_3^+ + OH^-$	4.3×10^{-10}

Example 5.3.3: Determination of K_a from Equilibrium Concentrations

Acetic acid is the principal ingredient in vinegar; that's why it tastes sour. At equilibrium, a solution contains $[CH_3CO_2H]$ = 0.0787 *M* and $[H_3O^+] = [CH_3CO_2^-] = 0.00118\ M$. What is the value of K_a for acetic acid?



Vinegar is a solution of acetic acid, a weak acid. (credit: modification of work by “HomeSpot HQ”/Flickr)

Solution

We are asked to calculate an equilibrium constant from equilibrium concentrations. At equilibrium, the value of the equilibrium constant is equal to the reaction quotient for the reaction:

$$CH_3CO_2H(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + CH_3CO_2^-(aq)$$

$$K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+][CH_3CO_2^-]}{[CH_3CO_2H]} = \frac{(0.00118)(0.00118)}{0.0787} = 1.77 \times 10^{-5}$$

Exercise 5.3.3

What is the equilibrium constant for the ionization of the HSO_4^- ion, the weak acid used in some household cleansers:

$$HSO_4^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq)$$

In one mixture of $NaHSO_4$ and Na_2SO_4 at equilibrium, $[H_3O^+]$ = 0.027 *M*; $[HSO_4^-] = 0.29\ M$; and $[SO_4^{2-}] = 0.13\ M$.

Answer

K_a for $HSO_4^- = 1.2 \times \times 10^{-2}$

Example 5.3.4: Determination of K_b from Equilibrium Concentrations

Caffeine, $C_8H_{10}N_4O_2$ is a weak base. What is the value of K_b for caffeine if a solution at equilibrium has $[C_8H_{10}N_4O_2]$ = 0.050 *M*, $[C_8H_{10}N_4O_2H^+]$ = 5.0 × 10^{-3} *M*, and $[OH^-]$ = 2.5 × 10^{-3} *M*?

Solution

At equilibrium, the value of the equilibrium constant is equal to the reaction quotient for the reaction:

$$C_8H_{10}N_4O_2(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons C_8H_{10}N_4O_2H^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

so

$$K_b = \frac{[C_8H_{10}N_4O_2H^+][OH^-]}{[C_8H_{10}N_4O_2]} = \frac{(5.0 \times 10^{-3})(2.5 \times 10^{-3})}{0.050} = 2.5 \times 10^{-4} \quad (5.3.12)$$

Exercise 5.3.4

What is the equilibrium constant for the ionization of the HPO_4^{2-} ion, a weak base:

$$HPO_4^{2-}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_2PO_4^-(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

In a solution containing a mixture of NaH_2PO_4 and Na_2HPO_4 at equilibrium with:

- $[OH^-] = 1.3 \times 10^{-6} M$
- $[H_2PO_4^-]$=0 · 042 M and
- $[HPO_4^{2-}]$=0 · 341 M.

Answer

K_b for $HPO_4^{2-} = 1.6 \times 10^{-7}$

Example 5.3.5: Determination of K_a or K_b from pH

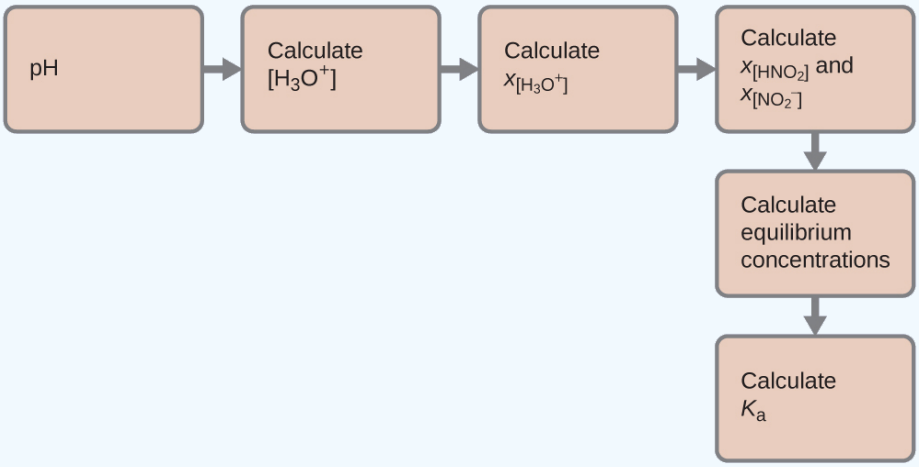
The pH of a 0.0516-*M* solution of nitrous acid, HNO_2, is 2.34. What is its K_a?

$$HNO_2(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + NO_2^-(aq)$$

Solution

We determine an equilibrium constant starting with the initial concentrations of HNO_2, H_3O^+, and NO_2^- as well as one of the final concentrations, the concentration of hydronium ion at equilibrium. (Remember that pH is simply another way to express the concentration of hydronium ion.)

We can solve this problem with the following steps in which *x* is a change in concentration of a species in the reaction:



We can summarize the various concentrations and changes as shown here (the concentration of water does not appear in the expression for the equilibrium constant, so we do not need to consider its concentration):

	HNO_2 + H_2O ⇌ H_3O^+ + NO_2^-			
Initial concentration (*M*)	0.0516		~0	0
Change (*M*)	−*x*	+	*x*	*x*
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	$[HNO_2]_i$ + (−*x*) = 0.0516 + (−*x*)		$[H_3O]^+$ + *x* $[NO_2]^-$ + *x* ~0 + *x*	0.0046

To get the various values in the ICE (Initial, Change, Equilibrium) table, we first calculate $[H_3O^+]$, the equilibrium concentration of H_3O^+, from the pH:

$$[H_3O^+] = 10^{-2.34} = 0.0046\ M$$

The change in concentration of H_3O^+, $x_{[H_3O^+]}$, is the difference between the equilibrium concentration of H_3O^+, which we determined from the pH, and the initial concentration, $[H_3O^+]_i$. The initial concentration of H_3O^+ is its concentration in pure water, which is so much less than the final concentration that we approximate it as zero (~0).

The change in concentration of NO_2^- is equal to the change in concentration of $[H_3O^+]$. For each 1 mol of H_3O^+ that forms, 1 mol of NO_2^- forms. The equilibrium concentration of HNO_2 is equal to its initial concentration plus the change in its concentration.

Now we can fill in the ICE table with the concentrations at equilibrium, as shown here:

	HNO_2 + H_2O ⇌ H_3O^+ + NO_2^-			
Initial concentration (*M*)	0.0516		~0	0
Change (*M*)	−*x*	+	*x* = 0.0046	*x* = 0.0046
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	0.0470		0.0046	0.0046

Finally, we calculate the value of the equilibrium constant using the data in the table:

$$K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+][NO_2^-]}{[HNO_2]} = \frac{(0.0046)(0.0046)}{(0.0470)} = 4.5 \times 10^{-4}$$

Exercise 5.3.5

The pH of a solution of household ammonia, a 0.950-*M* solution of NH_3, is 11.612. What is K_b for NH_3.

Answer

$K_b = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$

Example 5.3.6: Equilibrium Concentrations in a Solution of a Weak Acid

Formic acid, HCO_2H, is the irritant that causes the body's reaction to ant stings.



The pain of an ant's sting is caused by formic acid. (credit: John Tann)

What is the concentration of hydronium ion and the pH in a 0.534-*M* solution of formic acid?

$$HCO_2H(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + HCO_2^-(aq) \quad K_a = 1.8 \times 10^{-4}$$

Solution

1. Determine x and equilibrium concentrations. The equilibrium expression is:

$$HCO_2H(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + HCO_2^-(aq)$$

The concentration of water does not appear in the expression for the equilibrium constant, so we do not need to consider its change in concentration when setting up the ICE table.

The table shows initial concentrations (concentrations before the acid ionizes), changes in concentration, and equilibrium concentrations follows (the data given in the problem appear in color):

	HCO_2H +	H_2O ⇌	H_3O^+
Initial concentration (*M*)	0.534	~0	0
Change (*M*)	−*x*	*x*	*x*
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	0.534 + (−*x*)	0 + *x* = *x*	0 + *x* = *x*

2. Solve for x and the equilibrium concentrations. At equilibrium:

$$K_a = 1.8 \times 10^{-4} = \frac{[H_3O^+][HCO_2^-]}{[HCO_2H]}$$

$$= \frac{(x)(x)}{0.534 - x} = 1.8 \times 10^{-4}$$

Now solve for x. Because the initial concentration of acid is reasonably large and K_a is very small, we assume that $x << 0.534$, which *permits* us to simplify the denominator term as $(0.534 - x) = 0.534$. This gives:

$$K_a = 1.8 \times 10^{-4} = \frac{x^2}{0.534}$$

Solve for x as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 &= 0.534 \times (1.8 \times 10^{-4}) \\ &= 9.6 \times 10^{-5} \\ x &= \sqrt{9.6 \times 10^{-5}} \\ &= 9.8 \times 10^{-3} \end{aligned}$$

To check the assumption that x is small compared to 0.534, we calculate:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{x}{0.534} &= \frac{9.8 \times 10^{-3}}{0.534} \\ &= 1.8 \times 10^{-2}\ (1.8\%\ \text{of}\ 0.534) \end{aligned}$$

x is less than 5% of the initial concentration; the assumption is valid.

We find the equilibrium concentration of hydronium ion in this formic acid solution from its initial concentration and the change in that concentration as indicated in the last line of the table:

$$\begin{aligned} [\mathrm{H_3O^+}] &= 0 + x = 0 + 9.8 \times 10^{-3}\ M. \\ &= 9.8 \times 10^{-3}\ M \end{aligned}$$

The pH of the solution can be found by taking the negative log of the $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$, so:

$$pH = -\log(9.8 \times 10^{-3}) = 2.01$$

Exercise 5.3.6: acetic acid

Only a small fraction of a weak acid ionizes in aqueous solution. What is the percent ionization of acetic acid in a 0.100-*M* solution of acetic acid, CH_3CO_2H?

$$\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{CH_3CO_2^-}(aq) \quad K_\mathrm{a} = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$$

Hint

Determine $[\mathrm{CH_3CO_2^-}]$ at equilibrium.) Recall that the percent ionization is the fraction of acetic acid that is ionized × 100, or $\dfrac{[\mathrm{CH_3CO_2^-}]}{[\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}]_\text{initial}} \times 100.$

Answer

percent ionization = 1.3%

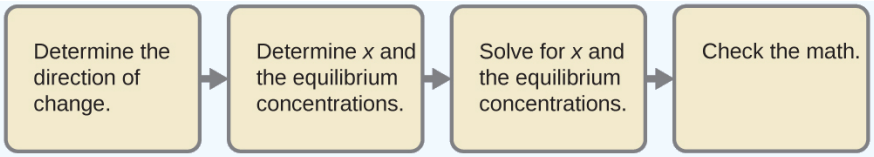
The following example shows that the concentration of products produced by the ionization of a weak base can be determined by the same series of steps used with a weak acid.

Example 5.3.7: Equilibrium Concentrations in a Solution of a Weak Base

Find the concentration of hydroxide ion in a 0.25-*M* solution of trimethylamine, a weak base:

$$(\mathrm{CH_3})_3\mathrm{N}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons (\mathrm{CH_3})_3\mathrm{NH^+}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \quad K_\mathrm{b} = 6.3 \times 10^{-5}$$

Solution This problem requires that we calculate an equilibrium concentration by determining concentration changes as the ionization of a base goes to equilibrium. The solution is approached in the same way as that for the ionization of formic acid in Example 5.3.6. The reactants and products will be different and the numbers will be different, but the logic will be the same:



1. Determine x and equilibrium concentrations. The table shows the changes and concentrations:

	$(CH_3)_3N + H_2O \rightleftharpoons (CH_3)_3NH^+ + OH^-$			
Initial concentration (*M*)	0.25		0	~0
Change (*M*)	$-x$		x	x
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	$0.25 + (-x)$		$0 + x$	$\sim 0 + x$

2. Solve for x and the equilibrium concentrations. At equilibrium:

$$K_b = \frac{[(CH_3)_3NH^+][OH^-]}{[(CH_3)_3N]} = \frac{(x)(x)}{0.25 - x =} 6.3 \times 10^{-5}$$

If we assume that *x* is small relative to 0.25, then we can replace (0.25 − *x*) in the preceding equation with 0.25. Solving the simplified equation gives:

$$x = 4.0 \times 10^{-3}$$

This change is less than 5% of the initial concentration (0.25), so the assumption is justified.

Recall that, for this computation, x is equal to the equilibrium concentration of *hydroxide ion* in the solution (see earlier tabulation):

$$([OH^-] = 0 + x = x = 4.0 \times 10^{-3}\ M$$
$$= 4.0 \times 10^{-3}\ M$$

Then calculate pOH as follows:

$$pOH = -\log(4.3 \times 10^{-3}) = 2.40$$

Using the relation introduced in the previous section of this chapter:

$$pH + pOH = pK_w = 14.00$$

permits the computation of pH:

$$pH = 14.00 - pOH = 14.00 - 2.37 = 11.60$$

Check the work. A check of our arithmetic shows that $K_b = 6.3 \times 10^{-5}$.

Exercise 5.3.7

a. Show that the calculation in Step 2 of this example gives an *x* of 4.3×10^{-3} and the calculation in Step 3 shows $K_b = 6.3 \times 10^{-5}$.

b. Find the concentration of hydroxide ion in a 0.0325-*M* solution of ammonia, a weak base with a K_b of 1.76×10^{-5}.

Calculate the percent ionization of ammonia, the fraction ionized × 100, or $\frac{[NH_4^+]}{[NH_3]} \times 100\%$

Answer a

$7.56 \times 10^{-4}\ M$, 2.33%

Answer b

2.33%

Some weak acids and weak bases ionize to such an extent that the simplifying assumption that x is small relative to the initial concentration of the acid or base is inappropriate. As we solve for the equilibrium concentrations in such cases, we will see that we cannot neglect the change in the initial concentration of the acid or base, and we must solve the equilibrium equations by using the quadratic equation.

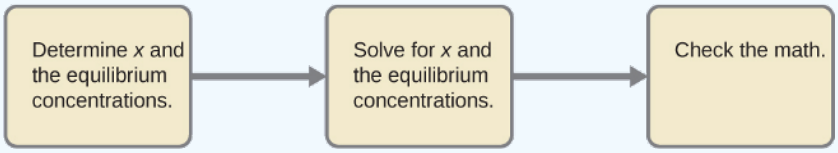
Example 5.3.8: Equilibrium Concentrations in a Solution of a Weak Acid

Sodium bisulfate, $NaHSO_4$, is used in some household cleansers because it contains the HSO_4^- ion, a weak acid. What is the pH of a 0.50-*M* solution of HSO_4^-?

$$HSO_4^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) \quad K_a = 1.2 \times 10^{-2}$$

Solution

We need to determine the equilibrium concentration of the hydronium ion that results from the ionization of HSO_4^- so that we can use $[H_3O^+]$ to determine the pH. As in the previous examples, we can approach the solution by the following steps:



1. Determine x and equilibrium concentrations. This table shows the changes and concentrations:

	HSO_4^- + H_2O ⇌ H_3O^+ + SO_4^{2-}			
Initial concentration (*M*)	0.50		~0	0
Change (*M*)	−*x*		*x*	*x*
Equilibrium concentration (*M*)	0.50 + (−*x*) = 0.50 − *x*)		0 + *x* = *x*	0 + *x* = *x*

2. Solve for x and the concentrations.

As we begin solving for x, we will find this is more complicated than in previous examples. As we discuss these complications we should not lose track of the fact that it is still the purpose of this step to determine the value of x.

At equilibrium:

$$K_a = 1.2 \times 10^{-2} = \frac{[H_3O^+][SO_4^{2-}]}{[HSO_4^-]} = \frac{(x)(x)}{0.50 - x}$$

If we assume that *x* is small and approximate (0.50 − *x*) as 0.50, we find:

$$x = 7.7 \times 10^{-2}$$

When we check the assumption, we confirm:

$$\frac{x}{[HSO_4^-]_i} \overset{?}{\leq} 0.05$$

which for this system is

$$\frac{x}{0.50} = \frac{7.7 \times 10^{-2}}{0.50} = 0.15(15\%)$$

The value of x is not less than 5% of 0.50, so the assumption is not valid. We need the quadratic formula to find x.

The equation:

$$K_a = 1.2 \times 10^{-2} = \frac{(x)(x)}{0.50 - x}$$

gives

$$6.0 \times 10^{-3} - 1.2 \times 10^{-2} x = x^{2+}$$

or

$$x^{2+} + 1.2 \times 10^{-2} x - 6.0 \times 10^{-3} = 0$$

This equation can be solved using the quadratic formula. For an equation of the form

$$ax^{2+} + bx + c = 0,$$

x is given by the quadratic equation:

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^{2+} - 4ac}}{2a}$$

In this problem, $a = 1$, $b = 1.2 \times 10^{-3}$, and $c = -6.0 \times 10^{-3}$.

Solving for x gives a negative root (which cannot be correct since concentration cannot be negative) and a positive root:

$$x = 7.2 \times 10^{-2}$$

Now determine the hydronium ion concentration and the pH:

$$\begin{aligned}[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] &= 0 + x = 0 + 7.2 \times 10^{-2}\ M \\ &= 7.2 \times 10^{-2}\ M\end{aligned}$$

The pH of this solution is:

$$\mathrm{pH} = -\log[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = -\log 7.2 \times 10^{-2} = 1.14$$

Exercise 5.3.8

a. Show that the quadratic formula gives $x = 7.2 \times 10^{-2}$.
b. Calculate the pH in a 0.010-*M* solution of caffeine, a weak base:

$$\mathrm{C_8H_{10}N_4O_2}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{C_8H_{10}N_4O_2H^+}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \quad K_b = 2.5 \times 10^{-4}$$

Hint

It will be necessary to convert [$\mathrm{OH^-}$] to $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$ or pOH to pH toward the end of the calculation.

Answer

pH 11.16

Summary

The strengths of Brønsted-Lowry acids and bases in aqueous solutions can be determined by their acid or base ionization constants. Stronger acids form weaker conjugate bases, and weaker acids form stronger conjugate bases. Thus strong acids are completely ionized in aqueous solution because their conjugate bases are weaker bases than water. Weak acids are only partially ionized because their conjugate bases are strong enough to compete successfully with water for possession of protons. Strong bases react with water to quantitatively form hydroxide ions. Weak bases give only small amounts of hydroxide ion. The strengths of the binary acids increase from left to right across a period of the periodic table (CH_4 < NH_3 < H_2O < HF), and they increase down a group (HF < HCl < HBr < HI).

Key Equations

- $K_\text{a} = \dfrac{[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+][\text{A}^-]}{[\text{HA}]}$
- $K_\text{b} = \dfrac{[\text{HB}^+][\text{OH}^-]}{[\text{B}]}$
- $K_a \times K_b = 1.0 \times 10^{-14} = K_w \text{ (at room temperature)}$
- $\text{Percent ionization} = \dfrac{[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+]_\text{eq}}{[\text{HA}]_0} \times 100$

Glossary

acid ionization constant (K_a)
equilibrium constant for the ionization of a weak acid

base ionization constant (K_b)
equilibrium constant for the ionization of a weak base

leveling effect of water
any acid stronger than H_3O^+, or any base stronger than OH^- will react with water to form H_3O^+, or OH^-, respectively; water acts as a base to make all strong acids appear equally strong, and it acts as an acid to make all strong bases appear equally strong

oxyacid
compound containing a nonmetal and one or more hydroxyl groups

percent ionization
ratio of the concentration of the ionized acid to the initial acid concentration, times 100

Contributors and Attributions

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

This page titled 5.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **14.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.
- **Current page** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.4: Hydrolysis of Salt Solutions

Learning Objectives

- Predict whether a salt solution will be acidic, basic, or neutral
- Calculate the concentrations of the various species in a salt solution
- Describe the process that causes solutions of certain metal ions to be acidic

As we have seen in the section on chemical reactions, when an acid and base are mixed, they undergo a neutralization reaction. The word “neutralization” seems to imply that a stoichiometrically equivalent solution of an acid and a base would be neutral. This is sometimes true, but the salts that are formed in these reactions may have acidic or basic properties of their own, as we shall now see.

Acid-Base Neutralization

A solution is neutral when it contains equal concentrations of hydronium and hydroxide ions. When we mix solutions of an acid and a base, an acid-base neutralization reaction occurs. However, even if we mix stoichiometrically equivalent quantities, we may find that the resulting solution is not neutral. It could contain either an excess of hydronium ions or an excess of hydroxide ions because the nature of the salt formed determines whether the solution is acidic, neutral, or basic. The following four situations illustrate how solutions with various pH values can arise following a neutralization reaction using stoichiometrically equivalent quantities:

1. A strong acid and a strong base, such as HCl(*aq*) and NaOH(*aq*) will react to form a neutral solution since the conjugate partners produced are of negligible strength:

$$\mathrm{HCl}(aq) + \mathrm{NaOH}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{NaCl}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

2. A strong acid and a weak base yield a weakly acidic solution, not because of the strong acid involved, but because of the conjugate acid of the weak base.
3. A weak acid and a strong base yield a weakly basic solution. A solution of a weak acid reacts with a solution of a strong base to form the conjugate base of the weak acid and the conjugate acid of the strong base. The conjugate acid of the strong base is a weaker acid than water and has no effect on the acidity of the resulting solution. However, the conjugate base of the weak acid is a weak base and ionizes slightly in water. This increases the amount of hydroxide ion in the solution produced in the reaction and renders it slightly basic.
4. A weak acid plus a weak base can yield either an acidic, basic, or neutral solution. This is the most complex of the four types of reactions. When the conjugate acid and the conjugate base are of unequal strengths, the solution can be either acidic or basic, depending on the relative strengths of the two conjugates. Occasionally the weak acid and the weak base will have the *same* strength, so their respective conjugate base and acid will have the same strength, and the solution will be neutral. To predict whether a particular combination will be acidic, basic or neutral, tabulated *K* values of the conjugates must be compared.

Stomach Antacids

Our stomachs contain a solution of roughly 0.03 *M* HCl, which helps us digest the food we eat. The burning sensation associated with heartburn is a result of the acid of the stomach leaking through the muscular valve at the top of the stomach into the lower reaches of the esophagus. The lining of the esophagus is not protected from the corrosive effects of stomach acid the way the lining of the stomach is, and the results can be very painful. When we have heartburn, it feels better if we reduce the excess acid in the esophagus by taking an antacid. As you may have guessed, antacids are bases. One of the most common antacids is calcium carbonate, $CaCO_3$. The reaction,

$$CaCO_3(s) + 2HCl(aq) \rightleftharpoons CaCl_2(aq) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(g)$$

not only neutralizes stomach acid, it also produces $CO_2(g)$, which may result in a satisfying belch.

Milk of Magnesia is a suspension of the sparingly soluble base magnesium hydroxide, $Mg(OH)_2$. It works according to the reaction:

$$Mg(OH)_2(s) \rightleftharpoons Mg^{2+}(aq) + 2OH^-(aq)$$

The hydroxide ions generated in this equilibrium then go on to react with the hydronium ions from the stomach acid, so that :

$$H_3O^+ + OH^- \rightleftharpoons 2H_2O(l)$$

This reaction does not produce carbon dioxide, but magnesium-containing antacids can have a laxative effect. Several antacids have aluminum hydroxide, $Al(OH)_3$, as an active ingredient. The aluminum hydroxide tends to cause constipation, and some antacids use aluminum hydroxide in concert with magnesium hydroxide to balance the side effects of the two substances.

Culinary Aspects of Chemistry

Cooking is essentially synthetic chemistry that happens to be safe to eat. There are a number of examples of acid-base chemistry in the culinary world. One example is the use of baking soda, or sodium bicarbonate in baking. $NaHCO_3$ is a base. When it reacts with an acid such as lemon juice, buttermilk, or sour cream in a batter, bubbles of carbon dioxide gas are formed from decomposition of the resulting carbonic acid, and the batter "rises." Baking powder is a combination of sodium bicarbonate, and one or more acid salts that react when the two chemicals come in contact with water in the batter.

Many people like to put lemon juice or vinegar, both of which are acids, on cooked fish (Figure 5.4.1). It turns out that fish have volatile amines (bases) in their systems, which are neutralized by the acids to yield involatile ammonium salts. This reduces the odor of the fish, and also adds a "sour" taste that we seem to enjoy.

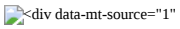


Figure 5.4.1: A neutralization reaction takes place between citric acid in lemons or acetic acid in vinegar, and the bases in the flesh of fish.

Pickling is a method used to preserve vegetables using a naturally produced acidic environment. The vegetable, such as a cucumber, is placed in a sealed jar submerged in a brine solution. The brine solution favors the growth of beneficial bacteria and suppresses the growth of harmful bacteria. The beneficial bacteria feed on starches in the cucumber and produce lactic acid as a waste product in a process called fermentation. The lactic acid eventually increases the acidity of the brine to a level that kills any harmful bacteria, which require a basic environment. Without the harmful bacteria consuming the cucumbers they are able to last much longer than if they were unprotected. A byproduct of the pickling process changes the flavor of the vegetables with the acid making them taste sour.

Salts of Weak Bases and Strong Acids

When we neutralize a weak base with a strong acid, the product is a salt containing the conjugate acid of the weak base. This conjugate acid is a weak acid. For example, ammonium chloride, NH_4Cl, is a salt formed by the reaction of the weak base ammonia with the strong acid HCl:

$$\mathrm{NH_3}(aq) + \mathrm{HCl}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NH_4Cl}(aq)$$

A solution of this salt contains ammonium ions and chloride ions. The chloride ion has no effect on the acidity of the solution since HCl is a strong acid. Chloride is a very weak base and will not accept a proton to a measurable extent. However, the ammonium ion, the conjugate acid of ammonia, reacts with water and increases the hydronium ion concentration:

$$\mathrm{NH_4^+}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{NH_3}(aq)$$

The equilibrium equation for this reaction is simply the ionization constant. K_a, for the acid $\mathrm{NH_4^+}$:

$$\frac{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{NH_3}]}{[\mathrm{NH_4^+}]} = K_a$$

We will not find a value of K_a for the ammonium ion in Table E1. However, it is not difficult to determine K_a for $\mathrm{NH_4^+}$ from the value of the ionization constant of water, K_w, and K_b, the ionization constant of its conjugate base, NH_3, using the following relationship:

$$K_w = K_a \times K_b$$

This relation holds for any base and its conjugate acid or for any acid and its conjugate base.

Example 5.4.1: pH of a Solution of a Salt of a Weak Base and a Strong Acid

Aniline is an amine that is used to manufacture dyes. It is isolated as aniline hydrochloride, $[C_6H_5NH_3^+]Cl$, a salt prepared by the reaction of the weak base aniline and hydrochloric acid. What is the pH of a 0.233 *M* solution of aniline hydrochloride?

$$C_6H_5NH_3^+(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + C_6H_5NH_2(aq)$$

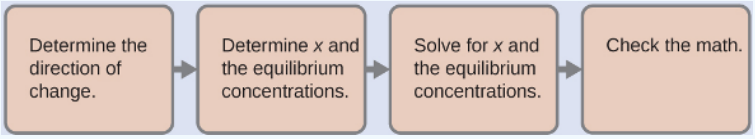
Solution

The new step in this example is to determine K_a for the $C_6H_5NH_3^+$ ion. The $C_6H_5NH_3^+$ ion is the conjugate acid of a weak base. The value of K_a for this acid is not listed in Table E1, but we can determine it from the value of K_b for aniline, $C_6H_5NH_2$, which is given as 4.6×10^{-10} :

$$K_a(\text{for } C_6H_5NH_3^+) \times K_b(\text{for } C_6H_5NH_2) = K_w = 1.0 \times 10^{-14}$$

$$K_a(\text{for } C_6H_5NH_3^+) = \frac{K_w}{K_b(\text{for } C_6H_5NH_2)} = \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{4.6 \times 10^{-10}} = 2.3 \times 10^{-5}$$

Now we have the ionization constant and the initial concentration of the weak acid, the information necessary to determine the equilibrium concentration of H_3O^+, and the pH:



Four tan rectangles are shown that are connected with right pointing arrows. The first is labeled “Determine the direction of change.” The second is labeled “Determine x and the equilibrium concentrations.” The third is labeled “Solve for x and the equilibrium concentrations.” The fourth is labeled “Check the math.”

With these steps we find $[H_3O^+] = 2.3 \times 10^{-3}$ *M* and pH = 2.64

Exercise 5.4.1

a. Do the calculations and show that the hydronium ion concentration for a 0.233-*M* solution of $C_6H_5NH_3^+$ is 2.3×10^{-3} and the pH is 2.64.

b. What is the hydronium ion concentration in a 0.100-*M* solution of ammonium nitrate, NH_4NO_3, a salt composed of the ions NH_4^+ and NO_3^-. Use the data in Table E1 to determine K_b for the ammonium ion. Which is the stronger acid $C_6H_5NH_3^+$ or NH_4^+?

Answer a

$K_a(\text{for } NH_4^+) = 5.6 \times 10^{-10}$, $[H_3O^+]$ = 7.5 × 10−6 M

Answer b

$C_6H_5NH_3^+$ is the stronger acid (a) (b) .

Salts of Weak Acids and Strong Bases

When we neutralize a weak acid with a strong base, we get a salt that contains the conjugate base of the weak acid. This conjugate base is usually a weak base. For example, sodium acetate, $NaCH_3CO_2$, is a salt formed by the reaction of the weak acid acetic acid with the strong base sodium hydroxide:

$$CH_3CO_2H(aq) + NaOH(aq) \longrightarrow NaCH_3CO_2(aq) + H_2O(aq)$$

A solution of this salt contains sodium ions and acetate ions. The sodium ion has no effect on the acidity of the solution. However, the acetate ion, the conjugate base of acetic acid, reacts with water and increases the concentration of hydroxide ion:

$$CH_3CO_2^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons CH_3CO_2H(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

The equilibrium equation for this reaction is the ionization constant, K_b, for the base $CH_3CO_2^-$. The value of K_b can be calculated from the value of the ionization constant of water, K_w, and K_a, the ionization constant of the conjugate acid of the anion using the equation:

$$_w = K_a \times K_b$$

For the acetate ion and its conjugate acid we have:

$$K_b(\text{for } CH_3CO_2^-) = \frac{K_w}{K_a(\text{for } CH_3CO_2H)} = \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{1.8 \times 10^{-5}} = 5.6 \times 10^{-10}$$

Some handbooks do not report values of K_b. They only report ionization constants for acids. If we want to determine a K_b value using one of these handbooks, we must look up the value of K_a for the conjugate acid and convert it to a K_b value.

Example 5.4.2: Equilibrium of a Salt of a Weak Acid and a Strong Base

Determine the acetic acid concentration in a solution with $[CH_3CO_2^-] = 0.050\ M$ and [OH$^-$] = 2.5 × 10^{-6} M at equilibrium. The reaction is:

$$CH_3CO_2^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons CH_3CO_2H(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

Solution

We are given two of three equilibrium concentrations and asked to find the missing concentration. If we can find the equilibrium constant for the reaction, the process is straightforward.

The acetate ion behaves as a base in this reaction; hydroxide ions are a product. We determine K_b as follows:

$$K_b(\text{for } CH_3CO_2^-) = \frac{K_w}{K_a(\text{for } CH_3CO_2H)} = \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{1.8 \times 10^{-5}} = 5.6 \times 10^{-10}$$

Now find the missing concentration:

$$K_b = \frac{[CH_3CO_2H][OH^-]}{[CH_3CO_2^-]} = 5.6 \times 10^{-10}$$

$$= \frac{[CH_3CO_2H](2.5 \times 10^{-6})}{(0.050)} = 5.6 \times 10^{-10}$$

Solving this equation we get [CH_3CO_2H] = 1.1 × 10^{-5} M.

Exercise 5.4.2

What is the pH of a 0.083-M solution of CN$^-$? Use 4.9 × 10^{-10} as K_a for HCN. Hint: We will probably need to convert pOH to pH or find [H_3O^+] using [OH$^-$] in the final stages of this problem.

Answer

11.16

Equilibrium in a Solution of a Salt of a Weak Acid and a Weak Base

In a solution of a salt formed by the reaction of a weak acid and a weak base, to predict the pH, we must know both the K_a of the weak acid and the K_b of the weak base. If $K_a > K_b$, the solution is acidic, and if $K_b > K_a$, the solution is basic.

Example 5.4.3: Determining the Acidic or Basic Nature of Salts

Determine whether aqueous solutions of the following salts are acidic, basic, or neutral:

a. KBr
b. $NaHCO_3$

c. NH_4Cl
d. Na_2HPO_4
e. NH_4F

Solution

Consider each of the ions separately in terms of its effect on the pH of the solution, as shown here:

a. The K^+ cation and the Br^- anion are both spectators, since they are the cation of a strong base (KOH) and the anion of a strong acid (HBr), respectively. The solution is neutral.
b. The Na^+ cation is a spectator, and will not affect the pH of the solution; the HCO_3^- anion is amphiprotic.The K_a of HCO_3^- is 4.7×10^{-11}, so the K_b of its conjugate base is $\frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{4.7 \times 10^{-11}} = 2.1 \times 10^{-4}$. Since $K_b >> K_a$, the solution is basic.
c. The NH_4^+ ion is acidic and the Cl^- ion is a spectator. The solution will be acidic.
d. The Na^+ ion is a spectator and will not affect the pH of the solution, while the HPO_4^{2-} ion is amphiprotic. The K_a of HPO_4^{2-} is 4.2×10^{-13} and its K_b is $\frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{4.2 \times 10^{-13}} = 2.4 \times 10^{-2}$. Because $K_b >> K_a$, the solution is basic.
e. The NH_4^+ ion is listed as being acidic, and the F^- ion is listed as a base, so we must directly compare the K_a and the K_b of the two ions. K_a of NH_4^+ is 5.6×10^{-10}, which seems very small, yet the K_b of F^- is 1.4×10^{-11}, so the solution is acidic, since $K_a > K_b$.

? Exercise 5.4.3

Determine whether aqueous solutions of the following salts are acidic, basic, or neutral:

a. K_2CO_3
b. $CaCl_2$
c. KH_2PO_4
d. $(NH_4)_2CO_3$
e. $AlBr_3$

Answer a

basic

Answer b

neutral

Answer c

acidic

Answer d

basic

Answer e

acidic

The Ionization of Hydrated Metal Ions

If we measure the pH of the solutions of a variety of metal ions we will find that these ions act as weak acids when in solution. The aluminum ion is an example. When aluminum nitrate dissolves in water, the aluminum ion reacts with water to give a hydrated aluminum ion, $Al(H_2O)_6^{3+}$, dissolved in bulk water. What this means is that the aluminum ion has the strongest interactions with the six closest water molecules (the so-called first solvation shell), even though it does interact with the other water molecules surrounding this $Al(H_2O)_6^{3+}$ cluster as well:

$$Al(NO_3)_3(s) + 6\,H_2O(l) \longrightarrow Al(H_2O)_6^{3+}(aq) + 3\,NO_3^-(aq)$$

We frequently see the formula of this ion simply as "$Al^{3+}(aq)$", without explicitly noting the six water molecules that are the closest ones to the aluminum ion and just describing the ion as being solvated in water (hydrated). This is similar to the simplification of the formula of the hydronium ion, H_3O^+ to H^+. However, in this case, the hydrated aluminum ion is a weak acid (Figure 5.4.2) and donates a proton to a water molecule. Thus, the hydration becomes important and we may use formulas that show the extent of hydration:

$$Al(H_2O)_6^{3+}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + Al(H_2O)_5(OH)^{2+}(aq) \quad K_a = 1.4 \times 10^{-5}$$

As with other polyprotic acids, the hydrated aluminum ion ionizes in stages, as shown by:

$$Al(H_2O)_6^{3+}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + Al(H_2O)_5(OH)^{2+}(aq)$$

$$Al(H_2O)_5(OH)^{2+}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + Al(H_2O)_4(OH)_2^+(aq)$$

$$Al(H_2O)_4(OH)_2^+(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + Al(H_2O)_3(OH)_3(aq)$$

Note that some of these aluminum species are exhibiting amphiprotic behavior, since they are acting as acids when they appear on the left side of the equilibrium expressions and as bases when they appear on the right side.

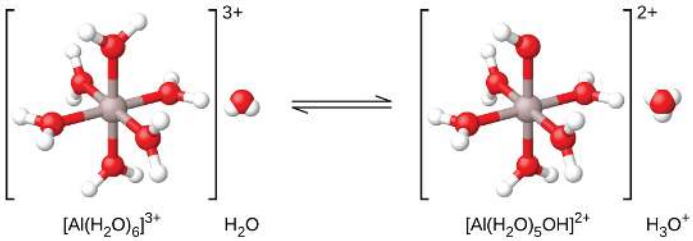


Figure 5.4.2: When an aluminum ion reacts with water, the hydrated aluminum ion becomes a weak acid.

A reaction is shown using ball and stick models. On the left, inside brackets with a superscript of 3 plus outside to the right is structure labeled "[A l (H subscript 2 O) subscript 6] superscript 3 plus." Inside the brackets is s central grey atom to which 6 red atoms are bonded in an arrangement that distributes them evenly about the central grey atom. Each red atom has two smaller white atoms attached in a forked or bent arrangement. Outside the brackets to the right is a space-filling model that includes a red central sphere with two smaller white spheres attached in a bent arrangement. Beneath this structure is the label "H subscript 2 O." A double sided arrow follows. Another set of brackets follows to the right of the arrows which have a superscript of two plus outside to the right. The structure inside the brackets is similar to that on the left, except a white atom is removed from the structure. The label below is also changed to "[A l (H subscript 2 O) subscript 5 O H] superscript 2 plus." To the right of this structure and outside the brackets is a space filling model with a central red sphere to which 3 smaller white spheres are attached. This structure is labeled "H subscript 3 O superscript plus."

However, the ionization of a cation carrying more than one charge is usually not extensive beyond the first stage. Additional examples of the first stage in the ionization of hydrated metal ions are:

$$Fe(H_2O)_6^{3+}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + Fe(H_2O)_5(OH)^{2+}(aq) \quad K_a = 2.74$$

$$Cu(H_2O)_6^{2+}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + Cu(H_2O)_5(OH)^{+}(aq) \quad K_a = 6.3$$

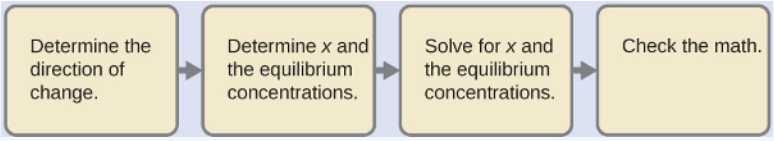
$$Zn(H_2O)_4^{2+}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + Zn(H_2O)_3(OH)^{+}(aq) \quad K_a = 9.6$$

Example 5.4.4: Hydrolysis of $[Al(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$

Calculate the pH of a 0.10-*M* solution of aluminum chloride, which dissolves completely to give the hydrated aluminum ion $[Al(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$ in solution.

Solution

In spite of the unusual appearance of the acid, this is a typical acid ionization problem.



A reaction is shown using ball and stick models. On the left, inside brackets with a superscript of 3 plus outside to the right is structure labeled “[A l (H subscript 2 O) subscript 6] superscript 3 plus.” Inside the brackets is s central grey atom to which 6 red atoms are bonded in an arrangement that distributes them evenly about the central grey atom. Each red atom has two smaller white atoms attached in a forked or bent arrangement. Outside the brackets to the right is a space-filling model that includes a red central sphere with two smaller white spheres attached in a bent arrangement. Beneath this structure is the label “H subscript 2 O.” A double sided arrow follows. Another set of brackets follows to the right of the arrows which have a superscript of two plus outside to the right. The structure inside the brackets is similar to that on the left, except a white atom is removed from the structure. The label below is also changed to “[A l (H subscript 2 O) subscript 5 O H] superscript 2 plus.” To the right of this structure and outside the brackets is a space filling model with a central red sphere to which 3 smaller white spheres are attached. This structure is labeled “H subscript 3 O superscript plus.”

1. *Determine the direction of change*. The equation for the reaction and K_a are:

$$\mathrm{Al(H_2O)_6^{3+}}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{Al(H_2O)_5(OH)^{2+}}(aq) \quad K_a = 1.4 \times 10^{-5}$$

The reaction shifts to the right to reach equilibrium.

2. *Determine x and equilibrium concentrations.* Use the table

:

	$\mathrm{Al(H_2O)_6^{3+}} + \mathrm{H_2O} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+} + \mathrm{Al(H_2O)_5(OH)^{2+}}$		
Initial concentration (*M*)	0.10	~0	0
Change (*M*)	$-x$	x	x
Equilibrium constant (*M*)	$0.10 - x$	x	x

This table has two main columns and four rows. The first row for the first column does not have a heading and then has the following in the first column: Initial concentration (M), Change (M), Equilibrium concentration (M). The second column has the header of “A l (H subscript 2 O) subscript 6 superscript 3 positive sign plus H subscript 2 O equilibrium arrow H subscript 3 O superscript positive sign plus A l (H subscript 2 O) subscript 5 (O H) superscript 2 positive sign.” Under the second column is a subgroup of four columns and three rows. The first column has the following: 0.10 (which appears in red), negative x, 0.10 minus x. The second column is blank. The third column has the following: approximately 0, x, x. The fourth column has the following: 0, x, x.

Solve for x and the equilibrium concentrations. Substituting the expressions for the equilibrium concentrations into the equation for the ionization constant yields:

1.
$$K_a = \frac{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{Al(H_2O)_5(OH)^{2+}}]}{[\mathrm{Al(H_2O)_6^{3+}}]}$$
$$= \frac{(x)(x)}{0.10 - x} = 1.4 \times 10^{-5}$$

Solving this equation gives:

$$x = 1.2 \times 10^{-3}\ M$$

From this we find:

$$[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = 0 + x = 1.2 \times 10^{-3}\ M$$
$$\mathrm{pH} = -\log[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = 2.92 (\text{an acidic solution})$$

Check the work. The arithmetic checks; when 1.2×10^{-3} *M* is substituted for *x*, the result = K_a.

Exercise 5.4.4

What is $[Al(H_2O)_5(OH)^{2+}]$ in a 0.15-*M* solution of $Al(NO_3)_3$ that contains enough of the strong acid HNO_3 to bring $[H_3O^+]$ to 0.10 *M*?

Answer

$2.1 \times 10^{-5}\ M$

The constants for the different stages of ionization are not known for many metal ions, so we cannot calculate the extent of their ionization. However, practically all hydrated metal ions other than those of the alkali metals ionize to give acidic solutions. Ionization increases as the charge of the metal ion increases or as the size of the metal ion decreases.

Summary

The characteristic properties of aqueous solutions of Brønsted-Lowry acids are due to the presence of hydronium ions; those of aqueous solutions of Brønsted-Lowry bases are due to the presence of hydroxide ions. The neutralization that occurs when aqueous solutions of acids and bases are combined results from the reaction of the hydronium and hydroxide ions to form water. Some salts formed in neutralization reactions may make the product solutions slightly acidic or slightly basic. Solutions that contain salts or hydrated metal ions have a pH that is determined by the extent of the hydrolysis of the ions in the solution. The pH of the solutions may be calculated using familiar equilibrium techniques, or it may be qualitatively determined to be acidic, basic, or neutral depending on the relative K_a and K_b of the ions involved.

This page titled 5.4: Hydrolysis of Salt Solutions is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **14.4: Hydrolysis of Salt Solutions** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

5.5: Polyprotic Acids

Learning Objectives

- Extend previously introduced equilibrium concepts to acids and bases that may donate or accept more than one proton

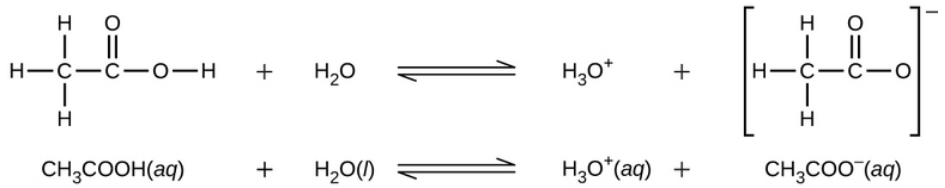
We can classify acids by the number of protons per molecule that they can give up in a reaction. Acids such as HCl, $\mathrm{HNO_3}$, and HCN that contain one ionizable hydrogen atom in each molecule are called monoprotic acids. Their reactions with water are:

$$\mathrm{HCl}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{Cl^-}(aq)$$

$$\mathrm{HNO_3}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{NO_3^-}(aq)$$

$$\mathrm{HCN}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{CN^-}(aq)$$

Even though it contains four hydrogen atoms, acetic acid, $\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}$, is also monoprotic because only the hydrogen atom from the carboxyl group ($-\mathrm{COOH}$) reacts with bases:



This image contains two equilibrium reactions. The first shows a C atom bonded to three H atoms and another C atom. The second C atom is double bonded to an O atom and also forms a single bond to another O atom. The second O atom is bonded to an H atom. There is a plus sign and then the molecular formula H subscript 2 O. An equilibrium arrow follows the H subscript 2 O. To the right of the arrow is H subscript 3 O superscript positive sign. There is a plus sign. The final structure shows a C atom bonded the three H atoms and another C atom. This second C atom is double bonded to an O atom and single bonded to another O atom. The entire structure is in brackets and a superscript negative sign appears outside the brackets. The second reaction shows C H subscript 3 C O O H (a q) plus H subscript 2 O (l) equilibrium arrow H subscript 3 O (a q) plus C H subscript 3 C O O superscript negative sign (a q).

Similarly, monoprotic bases are bases that will accept a single proton.

Diprotic Acids

Diprotic acids contain two ionizable hydrogen atoms per molecule; ionization of such acids occurs in two steps. The first ionization always takes place to a greater extent than the second ionization. For example, sulfuric acid, a strong acid, ionizes as follows:

- **The first ionization is**

$$\mathrm{H_2SO_4}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{HSO_4^-}(aq)$$

with $K_{\mathrm{a1}} > 10^2$; $complete\ dissociation$.

- **The second ionization is**

$$\mathrm{HSO_4^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{SO_4^{2-}}(aq)$$

with $K_{\mathrm{a2}} = 1.2 \times 10^{-2}$.

This stepwise ionization process occurs for all polyprotic acids. When we make a solution of a weak diprotic acid, we get a solution that contains a mixture of acids. Carbonic acid, $\mathrm{H_2CO_3}$, is an example of a weak diprotic acid. The first ionization of carbonic acid yields hydronium ions and bicarbonate ions in small amounts.

- **First Ionization**

$$\mathrm{H_2CO_3}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq)$$

with

$$K_{\mathrm{H_2CO_3}} = \frac{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{HCO_3^-}]}{[\mathrm{H_2CO_3}]} = 4.3 \times 10^{-7}$$

The bicarbonate ion can also act as an acid. It ionizes and forms hydronium ions and carbonate ions in even smaller quantities.

- **Second Ionization**

$$\mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}(aq)$$

with

$$K_{\mathrm{HCO_3^-}} = \frac{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}]}{[\mathrm{HCO_3^-}]} = 4.7 \times 10^{-11}$$

$K_{\mathrm{H_2CO_3}}$ is larger than $K_{\mathrm{HCO_3^-}}$ by a factor of 10^4, so H_2CO_3 is the dominant producer of hydronium ion in the solution. This means that little of the $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$ formed by the ionization of H_2CO_3 ionizes to give hydronium ions (and carbonate ions), and the concentrations of H_3O^+ and $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$ are practically equal in a pure aqueous solution of H_2CO_3.

If the first ionization constant of a weak diprotic acid is larger than the second by a factor of at least 20, it is appropriate to treat the first ionization separately and calculate concentrations resulting from it before calculating concentrations of species resulting from subsequent ionization. This can simplify our work considerably because we can determine the concentration of H_3O^+ and the conjugate base from the first ionization, then determine the concentration of the conjugate base of the second ionization in a solution with concentrations determined by the first ionization.

Example 5.5.1: Ionization of a Diprotic Acid

When we buy soda water (carbonated water), we are buying a solution of carbon dioxide in water. The solution is acidic because CO_2 reacts with water to form carbonic acid, H_2CO_3. What are $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$, $[\mathrm{HCO_3^-}]$, and $[\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}]$ in a saturated solution of CO_2 with an initial $[H_2CO_3]$ = 0.033 *M*?

$$\mathrm{H_2CO_3}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq) \quad K_{\mathrm{a1}} = 4.3 \times 10^{-7} \qquad \text{(equilibrium step 1)}$$

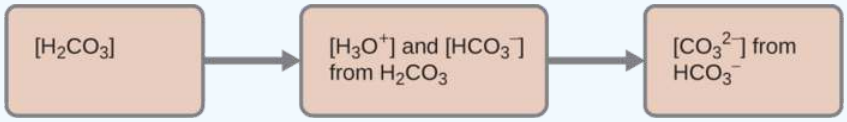
$$\mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}(aq) \quad K_{\mathrm{a2}} = 4.7 \times 10^{-11} \qquad \text{(equilibrium step 2)}$$

Solution

As indicated by the ionization constants, H_2CO_3 is a much stronger acid than $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$, so $\mathrm{H_2CO_3}$ is the dominant producer of hydronium ion in solution. Thus there are two parts in the solution of this problem:

1. Using the customary four steps, we determine the concentration of H_3O^+ and $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$ produced by ionization of H_2CO_3.
2. Then we determine the concentration of $\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}$ in a solution with the concentration of H_3O^+ and $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$ determined in (1).

To summarize:



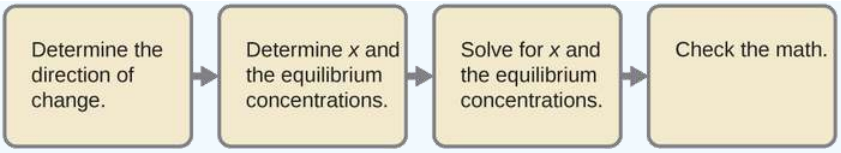
Four tan rectangles are shown that are connected with right pointing arrows. The first is labeled “left bracket H subscript 2 C O subscript 3 right bracket.” The second is labeled “left bracket H subscript 3 O superscript plus right bracket and left bracket H C O subscript 3 superscript negative right bracket from H subscript 2 C O subscript 3.” The third is labeled “left bracket C O subscript 3 superscript 2 negative right bracket from H C O subscript 3 superscript negative.”

1. First Ionization: Determine the concentrations of $\mathrm{H_3O^+}$ *and* $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$.

Since equilibrium step 1 is has a much bigger $K_{a1} = 4.3 \times 10^{-7}$ than $K_{a2} = 4.7 \times 10^{-11}$ for equilibrium step 2, we can safely ignore the second ionization step and focus only on the first step (but address it in next part of problem).

$$\mathrm{H_2CO_3}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq) \quad K_{\mathrm{a1}} = 4.3 \times 10^{-7}$$

As for the ionization of any other weak acid:



Four tan rectangles are shown that are connected with right pointing arrows. The first is labeled “Determine the direction of change.” The second is labeled “Determine x and the equilibrium concentrations.” The third is labeled “Solve for x and the equilibrium concentrations.” The fourth is labeled “Check the math.”

An abbreviated table of changes and concentrations shows:

Abbreviated table of changes and concentrations

ICE Table	$H_2CO_3(aq)$	$H_2O(l)$	$H_3O^+(aq)$	$HCO_3^-(aq)$
Initial (M)	$0.033\ M$	-	0	0
Change (M)	$-x$	-	$+x$	$+x$
Equilibrium (M)	$0.033\ M - x$	-	x	x

Substituting the equilibrium concentrations into the equilibrium constant gives us:

$$K_{H_2CO_3} = \frac{[H_3O^+][HCO_3^-]}{[H_2CO_3]} = \frac{(x)(x)}{0.033 - x} = 4.3 \times 10^{-7}$$

Solving the preceding equation making our standard assumptions gives:

$$x = 1.2 \times 10^{-4}$$

Thus:

$$[H_2CO_3] = 0.033\ M$$

$$[H_3O^+] = [HCO_3^-] = 1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M$$

2. Second Ionization: Determine the concentration of CO_3^{2-} in a solution at equilibrium.

Since the equilibrium step 1 is has a much bigger K_a than equilibrium step 2, we can the equilibrium conditions calculated from first part of example as the initial conditions for an ICER Table for the equilibrium step 2:

$$HCO_3^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + CO_3^{2-}(aq)$$

ICER Table for the equilibrium step 2:

ICE Table	$HCO_3^-(aq)$	$H_2O(l)$	$H_3O^+(aq)$	$CO_3^{2-}(aq)$
Initial (M)	$1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M$	-	$1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M$	0
Change (M)	$-y$	-	$+y$	$+y$
Equilibrium (M)	$1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M - y$	-	$1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M + y$	y

$$K_{HCO_3^-} = \frac{[H_3O^+][CO_3^{2-}]}{[HCO_3^-]}$$

$$= \frac{(1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M + y)(y)}{(1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M - y)}$$

To avoid solving a quadratic equation, we can assume $y \ll 1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M$ so

$$K_{HCO_3^-} = 4.7 \times 10^{-11} \approx \frac{(1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M)(y)}{(1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M)}$$

Rearranging to solve for y

$$y \approx \frac{(4.7 \times 10^{-11})(1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M)}{1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M}$$

$$[\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}] = y \approx 4.7 \times 10^{-11}$$

To summarize:

In part 1 of this example, we found that the $\mathrm{H_2CO_3}$ in a 0.033-M solution ionizes slightly and at equilibrium $[\mathrm{H_2CO_3}] = 0.033\ M$, $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = 1.2 \times 10^{-4}$, and $[\mathrm{HCO_3^-}] = 1.2 \times 10^{-4}\ M$. In part 2, we determined that $[\mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}] = 5.6 \times 10^{-11}\ M$.

? Exercise 5.5.2: Hydrogen Sulfide

The concentration of H_2S in a saturated aqueous solution at room temperature is approximately 0.1 M. Calculate $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$, $[\mathrm{HS^-}]$, and $[\mathrm{S^{2-}}]$ in the solution:

$$\mathrm{H_2S}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{HS^-}(aq) \quad K_{\mathrm{a1}} = 8.9 \times 10^{-8}$$

$$\mathrm{HS^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{S^{2-}}(aq) \quad K_{\mathrm{a2}} = 1.0 \times 10^{-19}$$

Answer

$[\mathrm{H_2S}] = 0.1M$, $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = [HS^-] = 0.0001\ M$, $[S^{2-}] = 1 \times 10^{-19}\ M$

We note that the concentration of the sulfide ion is the same as K_{a2}. This is due to the fact that each subsequent dissociation occurs to a lesser degree (as acid gets weaker).

Triprotic Acids

A triprotic acid is an acid that has three dissociable protons that undergo stepwise ionization: Phosphoric acid is a typical example:

- **The first ionization is**

$$\mathrm{H_3PO_4}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2PO_4^-}(aq)$$

with $K_{\mathrm{a1}} = 7.5 \times 10^{-3}$.

- **The second ionization is**

$$\mathrm{H_2PO_4^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{HPO_4^{2-}}(aq)$$

with $K_{\mathrm{a2}} = 6.2 \times 10^{-8}$.

- **The third ionization is**

$$\mathrm{HPO_4^{2-}}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{PO_4^{3-}}(aq)$$

with $K_{\mathrm{a3}} = 4.2 \times 10^{-13}$.

As with the diprotic acids, the differences in the ionization constants of these reactions tell us that in each successive step the degree of ionization is significantly weaker. This is a general characteristic of polyprotic acids and successive ionization constants often differ by a factor of about 10^5 to 10^6. This set of three dissociation reactions may appear to make calculations of equilibrium concentrations in a solution of H_3PO_4 complicated. However, because the successive ionization constants differ by a factor of 10^5 to 10^6, the calculations can be broken down into a series of parts similar to those for diprotic acids.

Polyprotic bases can accept more than one hydrogen ion in solution. The carbonate ion is an example of a diprotic base, since it can accept up to two protons. Solutions of alkali metal carbonates are quite alkaline, due to the reactions:

$$\mathrm{H_2O}(l) + \mathrm{CO_3^{2-}}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$$

and

$$\mathrm{H_2O}(l) + \mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_2CO_3}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq)$$

Summary

An acid that contains more than one ionizable proton is a polyprotic acid. The protons of these acids ionize in steps. The differences in the acid ionization constants for the successive ionizations of the protons in a polyprotic acid usually vary by roughly five orders of magnitude. As long as the difference between the successive values of K_a of the acid is greater than about a factor of 20, it is appropriate to break down the calculations of the concentrations of the ions in solution into a series of steps.

Glossary

diprotic acid
: acid containing two ionizable hydrogen atoms per molecule. A diprotic acid ionizes in two steps

diprotic base
: base capable of accepting two protons. The protons are accepted in two steps

monoprotic acid
: acid containing one ionizable hydrogen atom per molecule

stepwise ionization
: process in which an acid is ionized by losing protons sequentially

triprotic acid
: acid that contains three ionizable hydrogen atoms per molecule; ionization of triprotic acids occurs in three steps

---

This page titled 5.5: Polyprotic Acids is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **14.5: Polyprotic Acids** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

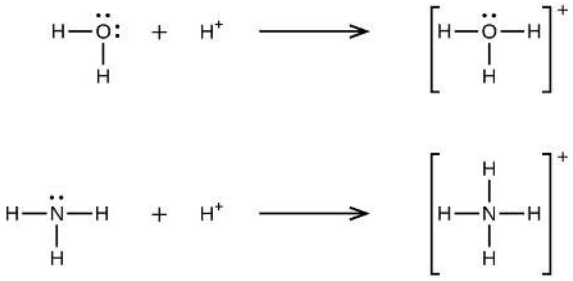
5.6: Lewis Acids and Bases

Learning Objectives

- Explain the Lewis model of acid-base chemistry

In 1923, G. N. Lewis proposed a generalized definition of acid-base behavior in which acids and bases are identified by their ability to accept or to donate a pair of electrons and form a coordinate covalent bond.

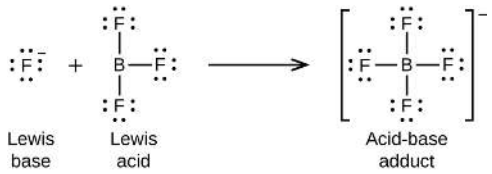
A coordinate covalent bond (or dative bond) occurs when one of the atoms in the bond provides both bonding electrons. For example, a coordinate covalent bond occurs when a water molecule combines with a hydrogen ion to form a hydronium ion. A coordinate covalent bond also results when an ammonia molecule combines with a hydrogen ion to form an ammonium ion. Both of these equations are shown here.



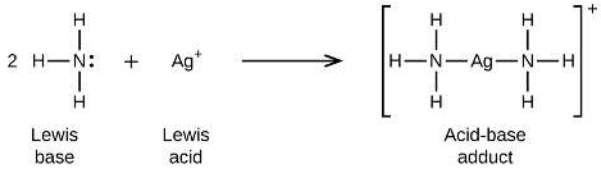
- A Lewis acid is any species (molecule or ion) that can *accept* a pair of electrons, and a Lewis base is any species (molecule or ion) that can *donate* a pair of electrons.

A Lewis acid-base reaction occurs when a base donates a pair of electrons to an acid. A **Lewis acid-base adduct**, a compound that contains a coordinate covalent bond between the Lewis acid and the Lewis base, is formed. The following equations illustrate the general application of the Lewis concept.

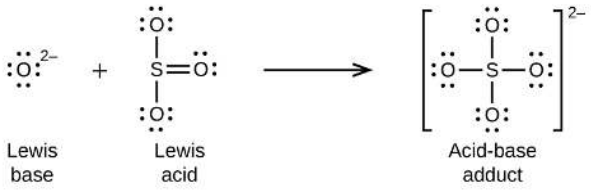
The boron atom in boron trifluoride, BF_3, has only six electrons in its valence shell. Being short of the preferred octet, BF_3 is a very good Lewis acid and reacts with many Lewis bases; a fluoride ion is the Lewis base in this reaction, donating one of its lone pairs:



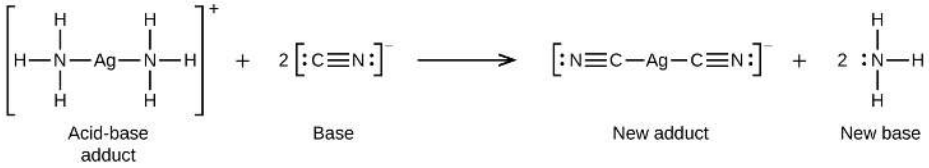
In the following reaction, each of two ammonia molecules, Lewis bases, donates a pair of electrons to a silver ion, the Lewis acid:

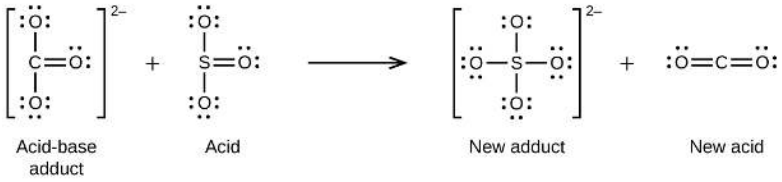


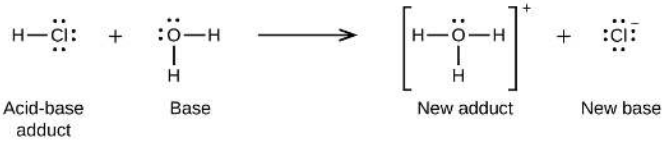
Nonmetal oxides act as Lewis acids and react with oxide ions, Lewis bases, to form oxyanions:



Many Lewis acid-base reactions are displacement reactions in which one Lewis base displaces another Lewis base from an acid-base adduct, or in which one Lewis acid displaces another Lewis acid:







The last displacement reaction shows how the reaction of a Brønsted-Lowry acid with a base fits into the Lewis concept. A Brønsted-Lowry acid such as HCl is an acid-base adduct according to the Lewis concept, and proton transfer occurs because a more stable acid-base adduct is formed. Thus, although the definitions of acids and bases in the two theories are quite different, the theories overlap considerably.

This page titled 5.6: Lewis Acids and Bases is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **15.2: Lewis Acids and Bases** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.
- **Current page** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

6: Buffers and Titrations

6.1: Buffers
6.2: Acid-Base Titrations

6: Buffers and Titrations is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

6.1: Buffers

Learning Objectives

- Describe the composition and function of acid–base buffers
- Calculate the pH of a buffer before and after the addition of added acid or base

A mixture of a weak acid and its conjugate base (or a mixture of a weak base and its conjugate acid) is called a buffer solution, or a buffer. Buffer solutions resist a change in pH when small amounts of a strong acid or a strong base are added (Figure 6.1.1). A solution of acetic acid (CH_3COOH and sodium acetate CH_3COONa) is an example of a buffer that consists of a weak acid and its salt. An example of a buffer that consists of a weak base and its salt is a solution of ammonia ($NH_3(aq)$) and ammonium chloride ($NH_4Cl(aq)$).



Figure 6.1.1: (a) The unbuffered solution on the left and the buffered solution on the right have the same pH (pH 8); they are basic, showing the yellow color of the indicator methyl orange at this pH. (b) After the addition of 1 mL of a 0.01-M HCl solution, the buffered solution has not detectably changed its pH but the unbuffered solution has become acidic, as indicated by the change in color of the methyl orange, which turns red at a pH of about 4. (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott)

How Buffers Work

A mixture of acetic acid and sodium acetate is acidic because the K_a of acetic acid is greater than the K_b of its conjugate base acetate. It is a buffer because it contains both the weak acid and its salt. Hence, it acts to keep the hydronium ion concentration (and the pH) almost constant by the addition of either a small amount of a strong acid or a strong base. If we add a base such as sodium hydroxide, the hydroxide ions react with the few hydronium ions present. Then more of the acetic acid reacts with water, restoring the hydronium ion concentration almost to its original value:

$$CH_3CO_2H(aq) + H_2O(l) \longrightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + CH_3CO_2^-(aq)$$

The pH changes very little. If we add an acid such as hydrochloric acid, most of the hydronium ions from the hydrochloric acid combine with acetate ions, forming acetic acid molecules:

$$H_3O^+(aq) + CH_3CO_2^-(aq) \longrightarrow CH_3CO_2H(aq) + H_2O(l)$$

Thus, there is very little increase in the concentration of the hydronium ion, and the pH remains practically unchanged (Figure 6.1.2).

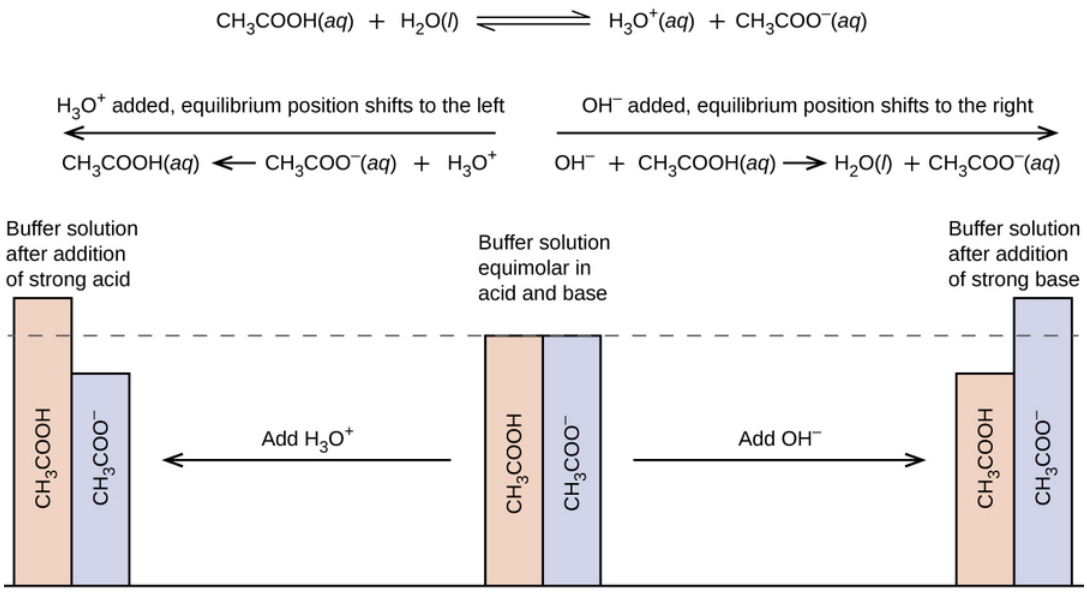


Figure 6.1.2: This diagram shows the buffer action of these reactions.

A mixture of ammonia and ammonium chloride is basic because the K_b for ammonia is greater than the K_a for the ammonium ion. It is a buffer because it also contains the salt of the weak base. If we add a base (hydroxide ions), ammonium ions in the buffer react with the hydroxide ions to form ammonia and water and reduce the hydroxide ion concentration almost to its original value:

$$\mathrm{NH_4^+}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NH_3}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

If we add an acid (hydronium ions), ammonia molecules in the buffer mixture react with the hydronium ions to form ammonium ions and reduce the hydronium ion concentration almost to its original value:

$$\mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{NH_3}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NH_4^+}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

The three parts of the following example illustrate the change in pH that accompanies the addition of base to a buffered solution of a weak acid and to an unbuffered solution of a strong acid.

Example 6.1.1: pH Changes in Buffered and Unbuffered Solutions

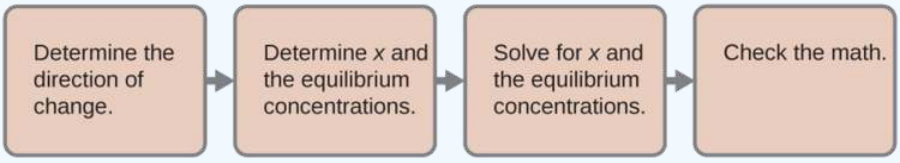
Acetate buffers are used in biochemical studies of enzymes and other chemical components of cells to prevent pH changes that might change the biochemical activity of these compounds.

a. Calculate the pH of an acetate buffer that is a mixture with 0.10 *M* acetic acid and 0.10 *M* sodium acetate.
b. Calculate the pH after 1.0 mL of 0.10 *M* NaOH is added to 100 mL of this buffer, giving a solution with a volume of 101 mL.

Solution

a. Calculate the pH of an acetate buffer that is a mixture with 0.10 *M* acetic acid and 0.10 *M* sodium acetate.

To determine the pH of the buffer solution we use a typical equilibrium calculation (as illustrated in earlier Examples):



1. *Determine the direction of change.* The equilibrium in a mixture of $\mathrm{H_3O^+}$, $\mathrm{CH_3CO_2^-}$, and $\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}$ is:

$$\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{CH_3CO_2^-}(aq)$$

The equilibrium constant for $\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}$ is not given, so we look it up in Table E1: $K_a = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$. With $[\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}] = [\mathrm{CH_3CO_2^-}] = 0.10\ M$ and $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = \sim 0\ M$, the reaction shifts to the right to form $\mathrm{H_3O^+}$.

2. *Determine* x *and equilibrium concentrations*. A table of changes and concentrations follows:

	$[CH_3CO_2H] + [H_2O] \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + [CH_3CO_2^-]$		
Initial concentration (*M*)	0.10	~0	0.10
Change (*M*)	$-x$	x	x
Equilibrium constant (*M*)	$0.10 - x$	x	$0.10 + x$

- *Solve for x and the equilibrium concentrations.* We find:

$$x = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}\ M$$

- and

$$[H_3O^+] = 0 + x = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}\ M$$

Thus:

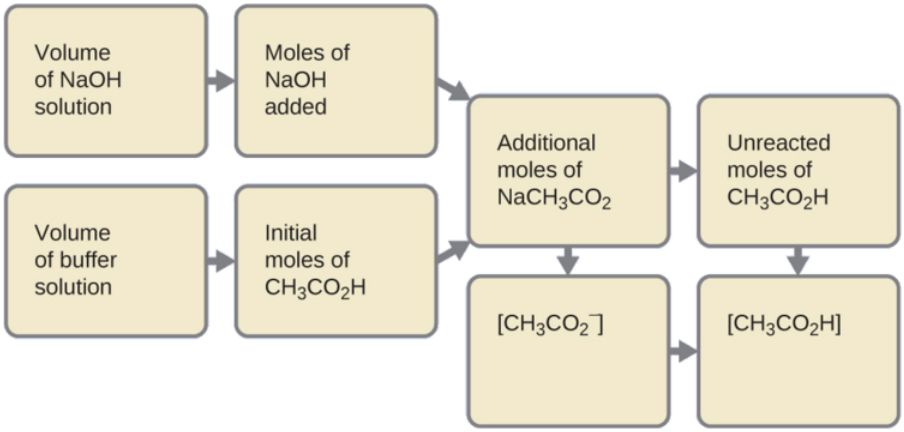
$$pH = -\log[H_3O^+] = -\log(1.8 \times 10^{-5})$$

$$= 4.74$$

4. *Check the work*. If we calculate all calculated equilibrium concentrations, we find that the equilibrium value of the reaction coefficient, $Q = K_a$.

(b) Calculate the pH after 1.0 mL of 0.10 *M* NaOH is added to 100 mL of this buffer, giving a solution with a volume of 101 mL.

First, we calculate the concentrations of an intermediate mixture resulting from the complete reaction between the acid in the buffer and the added base. Then we determine the concentrations of the mixture at the new equilibrium:



1. *Determine the moles of NaOH.* One milliliter (0.0010 L) of 0.10 *M* NaOH contains:

$$0.0010\ \cancel{L} \times \left(\frac{0.10\ \text{mol NaOH}}{1\ \cancel{L}}\right) = 1.0 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{mol NaOH}$$

2. *Determine the moles of CH_2CO_2H.* Before reaction, 0.100 L of the buffer solution contains:

$$0.100\ \cancel{L} \times \left(\frac{0.100\ \text{mol } CH_3CO_2H}{1\ \cancel{L}}\right) = 1.00 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{mol } CH_3CO_2H$$

3. *Solve for the amount of $NaCH_3CO_2$ produced.* The 1.0×10^{-4} mol of NaOH neutralizes 1.0×10^{-4} mol of CH_3CO_2H, leaving:

$$(1.0 \times 10^{-2}) - (0.01 \times 10^{-2}) = 0.99 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{mol } CH_3CO_2H$$

and producing 1.0×10^{-4} mol of $NaCH_3CO_2$. This makes a total of:

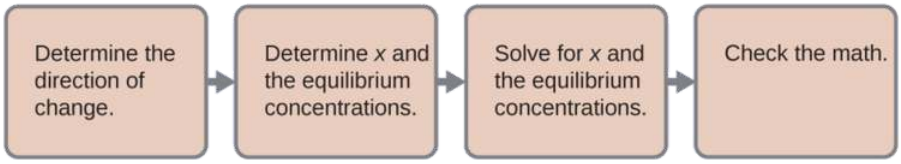
[\mathrm{(1.0×10^{−2})+(0.01×10^{−2})=1.01×10^{−2}\:mol\:NaCH_3CO_2} \nonumber \]

4. *Find the molarity of the products.* After reaction, CH_3CO_2H and $NaCH_3CO_2$ are contained in 101 mL of the intermediate solution, so:

$$[CH_3CO_2H] = \frac{9.9 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mol}}{0.101\ \text{L}} = 0.098\ M$$

$$[NaCH_3CO_2] = \frac{1.01 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{mol}}{0.101\ \text{L}} = 0.100\ M$$

Now we calculate the pH after the intermediate solution, which is 0.098 *M* in CH_3CO_2H and 0.100 *M* in $NaCH_3CO_2$, comes to equilibrium. The calculation is very similar to that in part (a) of this example:



This series of calculations gives a pH = 4.75. Thus the addition of the base barely changes the pH of the solution.

(c) For comparison, calculate the pH after 1.0 mL of 0.10 *M* NaOH is added to 100 mL of a solution of an unbuffered solution with a pH of 4.74 (a 1.8×10^{-5}-*M* solution of HCl). The volume of the final solution is 101 mL.

Solution

This 1.8×10^{-5}-*M* solution of HCl has the same hydronium ion concentration as the 0.10-*M* solution of acetic acid-sodium acetate buffer described in part (a) of this example. The solution contains:

$$0.100\ \text{L} \times \left(\frac{1.8 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{mol HCl}}{1\ \text{L}}\right) = 1.8 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{mol HCl}$$

As shown in part (b), 1 mL of 0.10 *M* NaOH contains 1.0×10^{-4} mol of NaOH. When the NaOH and HCl solutions are mixed, the HCl is the limiting reagent in the reaction. All of the HCl reacts, and the amount of NaOH that remains is:

$$(1.0 \times 10^{-4}) - (1.8 \times 10^{-6}) = 9.8 \times 10^{-5}\ M$$

The concentration of NaOH is:

$$\frac{9.8 \times 10^{-5}\ M\ \text{NaOH}}{0.101\ \text{L}} = 9.7 \times 10^{-4}\ M$$

The pOH of this solution is:

$$\text{pOH} = -\log[\text{OH}^-] = -\log(9.7 \times 10^{-4}) = 3.01$$

The pH is:

$$\text{pH} = 14.00 - \text{pOH} = 10.99$$

The pH changes from 4.74 to 10.99 in this unbuffered solution. This compares to the change of 4.74 to 4.75 that occurred when the same amount of NaOH was added to the buffered solution described in part (b).

? Exercise 6.1.1

Show that adding 1.0 mL of 0.10 *M* HCl changes the pH of 100 mL of a 1.8×10^{-5} *M* HCl solution from 4.74 to 3.00.

Answer

Initial pH of 1.8×10^{-5} *M* HCl; pH = −log[H_3O^+] = −log[1.8×10^{-5}] = 4.74

Moles of H_3O^+ added by addition of 1.0 mL of 0.10 *M* HCl: 0.10 moles/L × 0.0010 L = 1.0×10^{-4} moles; final pH after addition of 1.0 mL of 0.10 *M* HCl:

$$\text{pH} = -\log[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] = -\log\left(\frac{\text{total moles H}_3\text{O}^+}{\text{total volume}}\right) = -\log\left(\frac{1.0 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{mol} + 1.8 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{mol}}{101\ \text{mL}\left(\frac{1\ \text{L}}{1000\ \text{mL}}\right)}\right) = 3.00$$

Buffer Capacity

Buffer solutions do not have an unlimited capacity to keep the pH relatively constant (Figure 6.1.3). If we add so much base to a buffer that the weak acid is exhausted, no more buffering action toward the base is possible. On the other hand, if we add an excess of acid, the weak base would be exhausted, and no more buffering action toward any additional acid would be possible. In fact, we do not even need to exhaust all of the acid or base in a buffer to overwhelm it; its buffering action will diminish rapidly as a given component nears depletion.



Figure 6.1.3: The indicator color (methyl orange) shows that a small amount of acid added to a buffered solution of pH 8 (beaker on the left) has little affect on the buffered system (middle beaker). However, a large amount of acid exhausts the buffering capacity of the solution and the pH changes dramatically (beaker on the right). (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott)

The buffer capacity is the amount of acid or base that can be added to a given volume of a buffer solution before the pH changes significantly, usually by one unit. Buffer capacity depends on the amounts of the weak acid and its conjugate base that are in a buffer mixture. For example, 1 L of a solution that is 1.0 *M* in acetic acid and 1.0 *M* in sodium acetate has a greater buffer capacity than 1 L of a solution that is 0.10 *M* in acetic acid and 0.10 *M* in sodium acetate even though both solutions have the same pH. The first solution has more buffer capacity because it contains more acetic acid and acetate ion.

Selection of Suitable Buffer Mixtures

There are two useful rules of thumb for selecting buffer mixtures:

1. A good buffer mixture should have about equal concentrations of both of its components. A buffer solution has generally lost its usefulness when one component of the buffer pair is less than about 10% of the other. Figure 6.1.4 shows an acetic acid-acetate ion buffer as base is added. The initial pH is 4.74. A change of 1 pH unit occurs when the acetic acid concentration is reduced to 11% of the acetate ion concentration.

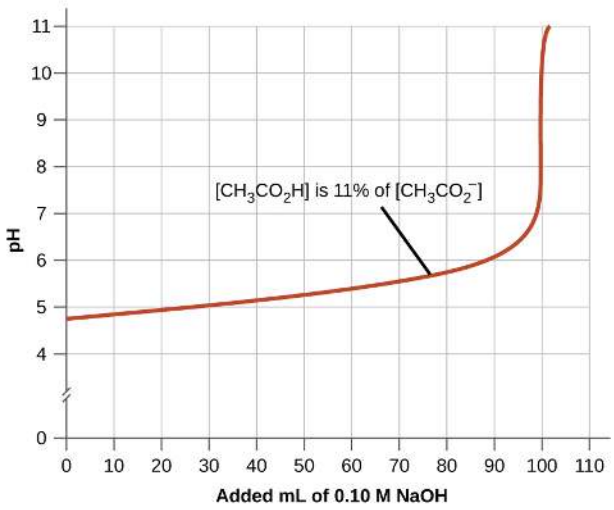


Figure 6.1.4: The graph, an illustration of buffering action, shows change of pH as an increasing amount of a 0.10-M NaOH solution is added to 100 mL of a buffer solution in which, initially, $[\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H}] = 0.10\ M$ and $[\mathrm{CH_3CO_2^-}] = 0.10\ M$.

2. Weak acids and their salts are better as buffers for pHs less than 7; weak bases and their salts are better as buffers for pHs greater than 7.

Blood is an important example of a buffered solution, with the principal acid and ion responsible for the buffering action being carbonic acid, H_2CO_3, and the bicarbonate ion, HCO_3^-. When an excess of hydrogen ion enters the blood stream, it is removed primarily by the reaction:

$$\mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq) + \mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2CO_3}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

When an excess of the hydroxide ion is present, it is removed by the reaction:

$$\mathrm{OH^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2CO_3}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$$

The pH of human blood thus remains very near 7.35, that is, slightly basic. Variations are usually less than 0.1 of a pH unit. A change of 0.4 of a pH unit is likely to be fatal.

The Henderson-Hasselbalch Approximation

The ionization-constant expression for a solution of a weak acid can be written as:

$$K_\mathrm{a} = \frac{[\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{A^-}]}{[\mathrm{HA}]}$$

Rearranging to solve for $[H_3O^+]$, we get:

$$[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = K_\mathrm{a} \times \frac{[\mathrm{HA}]}{[\mathrm{A^-}]}$$

Taking the negative logarithm of both sides of this equation, we arrive at:

$$-\log[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = -\log K_\mathrm{a} - \log\frac{[\mathrm{HA}]}{[\mathrm{A^-}]}$$

which can be written as

$$\mathrm{pH} = \mathrm{p}K_\mathrm{a} + \log\frac{[\mathrm{A^-}]}{[\mathrm{HA}]}$$

where pK_a is the negative of the common logarithm of the ionization constant of the weak acid ($pK_a = -\log K_a$). This equation relates the pH, the ionization constant of a weak acid, and the concentrations of the weak acid and its salt in a buffered solution.

Scientists often use this expression, called the Henderson-Hasselbalch approximation, to calculate the pH of buffer solutions. It is important to note that the "*x* is small" assumption must be valid to use this equation.

Lawrence Joseph Henderson and Karl Albert Hasselbalch

Lawrence Joseph Henderson (1878–1942) was an American physician, biochemist and physiologist, to name only a few of his many pursuits. He obtained a medical degree from Harvard and then spent 2 years studying in Strasbourg, then a part of Germany, before returning to take a lecturer position at Harvard. He eventually became a professor at Harvard and worked there his entire life. He discovered that the acid-base balance in human blood is regulated by a buffer system formed by the dissolved carbon dioxide in blood. He wrote an equation in 1908 to describe the carbonic acid-carbonate buffer system in blood. Henderson was broadly knowledgeable; in addition to his important research on the physiology of blood, he also wrote on the adaptations of organisms and their fit with their environments, on sociology and on university education. He also founded the Fatigue Laboratory, at the Harvard Business School, which examined human physiology with specific focus on work in industry, exercise, and nutrition.

In 1916, Karl Albert Hasselbalch (1874–1962), a Danish physician and chemist, shared authorship in a paper with Christian Bohr in 1904 that described the Bohr effect, which showed that the ability of hemoglobin in the blood to bind with oxygen was inversely related to the acidity of the blood and the concentration of carbon dioxide. The pH scale was introduced in 1909 by another Dane, Sørensen, and in 1912, Hasselbalch published measurements of the pH of blood. In 1916, Hasselbalch expressed Henderson's equation in logarithmic terms, consistent with the logarithmic scale of pH, and thus the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation was born.

Medicine: The Buffer System in Blood

The normal pH of human blood is about 7.4. The carbonate buffer system in the blood uses the following equilibrium reaction:

$$\mathrm{CO_2}(g) + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_2CO_3}(aq) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{HCO_3^-}(aq) + \mathrm{H_3O^+}(aq)$$

The concentration of carbonic acid, $\mathrm{H_2CO_3}$ is approximately 0.0012 *M*, and the concentration of the hydrogen carbonate ion, $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$, is around 0.024 *M*. Using the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation and the pK_a of carbonic acid at body temperature, we can calculate the pH of blood:

$$\mathrm{pH} = \mathrm{p}K_a + \log\frac{[\mathrm{base}]}{[\mathrm{acid}]} = 6.1 + \log\frac{0.024}{0.0012} = 7.4$$

The fact that the $\mathrm{H_2CO_3}$ concentration is significantly lower than that of the $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$ ion may seem unusual, but this imbalance is due to the fact that most of the by-products of our metabolism that enter our bloodstream are acidic. Therefore, there must be a larger proportion of base than acid, so that the capacity of the buffer will not be exceeded.

Lactic acid is produced in our muscles when we exercise. As the lactic acid enters the bloodstream, it is neutralized by the $\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$ ion, producing $\mathrm{H_2CO_3}$. An enzyme then accelerates the breakdown of the excess carbonic acid to carbon dioxide and water, which can be eliminated by breathing. In fact, in addition to the regulating effects of the carbonate buffering system on the pH of blood, the body uses breathing to regulate blood pH. If the pH of the blood decreases too far, an increase in breathing removes $\mathrm{CO_2}$ from the blood through the lungs driving the equilibrium reaction such that $[\mathrm{H_3O^+}]$ is lowered. If the blood is too alkaline, a lower breath rate increases $\mathrm{CO_2}$ concentration in the blood, driving the equilibrium reaction the other way, increasing $[\mathrm{H^+}]$ and restoring an appropriate pH.

Summary

A solution containing a mixture of an acid and its conjugate base, or of a base and its conjugate acid, is called a buffer solution. Unlike in the case of an acid, base, or salt solution, the hydronium ion concentration of a buffer solution does not change greatly when a small amount of acid or base is added to the buffer solution. The base (or acid) in the buffer reacts with the added acid (or base).

Key Equations

- $pK_a = -\log K_a$
- $pK_b = -\log K_b$
- $\text{pH} = pK_a + \log \frac{[A^-]}{[HA]}$

Glossary

buffer capacity

amount of an acid or base that can be added to a volume of a buffer solution before its pH changes significantly (usually by one pH unit)

buffer

mixture of a weak acid or a weak base and the salt of its conjugate; the pH of a buffer resists change when small amounts of acid or base are added

Henderson-Hasselbalch equation

equation used to calculate the pH of buffer solutions

This page titled 6.1: Buffers is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **14.6: Buffers** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

6.2: Acid-Base Titrations

Learning Objectives

- Interpret titration curves for strong and weak acid-base systems
- Compute sample pH at important stages of a titration
- Explain the function of acid-base indicators

As seen in the chapter on the stoichiometry of chemical reactions, titrations can be used to quantitatively analyze solutions for their acid or base concentrations. In this section, we will explore the changes in the concentrations of the acidic and basic species present in a solution during the process of a titration.

Titration Curves

Previously, when we studied acid-base reactions in solution, we focused only on the point at which the acid and base were stoichiometrically equivalent. No consideration was given to the pH of the solution before, during, or after the neutralization.

Example 6.2.1: Calculating pH for Titration Solutions: Strong Acid/Strong Base

A titration is carried out for 25.00 mL of 0.100 *M* HCl (strong acid) with 0.100 *M* of a strong base NaOH the titration curve is shown in Figure 6.2.1. Calculate the pH at these volumes of added base solution:

a. 0.00 mL
b. 12.50 mL
c. 25.00 mL
d. 37.50 mL

Solution

Since HCl is a strong acid, we can assume that all of it dissociates. The initial concentration of H_3O^+ is $[H_3O^+]_0 = 0.100\ M$. When the base solution is added, it also dissociates completely, providing OH^- ions. The H_3O^+ and OH^- ions neutralize each other, so only those of the two that were in excess remain, and their concentration determines the pH. Thus, the solution is initially acidic (pH < 7), but eventually all the hydronium ions present from the original acid are neutralized, and the solution becomes neutral. As more base is added, the solution turns basic.

The total initial amount of the hydronium ions is:

$$\mathrm{n}(H^+)_0 = [H_3O^+]_0 \times 0.02500\ \mathrm{L} = 0.002500\ \mathrm{mol}$$

Once X mL of the 0.100-*M* base solution is added, the number of moles of the OH^- ions introduced is:

$$\mathrm{n}(OH^-)_0 = 0.100\ M \times \mathrm{X\ mL} \times \left(\frac{1\ \mathrm{L}}{1000\ \mathrm{mL}}\right)$$

The total volume becomes:

$$V = (25.00\ \mathrm{mL} + \mathrm{X\ mL})\left(\frac{1\ \mathrm{L}}{1000\ \mathrm{mL}}\right)$$

The number of moles of H_3O^+ becomes:

$$\mathrm{n}(H^+) = \mathrm{n}(H^+)_0 - \mathrm{n}(OH^-)_0 = 0.002500\ \mathrm{mol} - 0.100\ M \times \mathrm{X\ mL} \times \left(\frac{1\ \mathrm{L}}{1000\ \mathrm{mL}}\right)$$

The concentration of H_3O^+ is:

$$[H_3O^+] = \frac{\mathrm{n}(H^+)}{\mathrm{V}} = \frac{0.002500\ \mathrm{mol} - 0.100\ M \times \mathrm{X\ mL} \times \left(\frac{1\ \mathrm{L}}{1000\ \mathrm{mL}}\right)}{(25.00\ \mathrm{mL} + \mathrm{X\ mL})\left(\frac{1\ \mathrm{L}}{1000\ \mathrm{mL}}\right)}$$

$$= \frac{0.002500 \text{ mol} \times \left(\frac{1000 \text{ mL}}{1 \text{ L}}\right) - 0.100\ M \times \text{X mL}}{25.00 \text{ mL} + \text{X mL}}$$

with the definition of pH:

$$\text{pH} = -\log([\text{H}_3\text{O}^+]) \tag{6.2.1}$$

The preceding calculations work if $\text{n}(\text{H}^+)_0 - \text{n}(\text{OH}^-)_0 > 0$ and so $\text{n}(\text{H}^+) > 0$. When $\text{n}(\text{H}^+)_0 = \text{n}(\text{OH}^-)_0$, the H_3O^+ ions from the acid and the OH^- ions from the base mutually neutralize. At this point, the only hydronium ions left are those from the autoionization of water, and there are no OH^- particles to neutralize them. Therefore, in this case:

$$[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] = [\text{OH}^-],\ [\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] = K_\text{w} = 1.0 \times 10^{-14};\ [\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] = 1.0 \times 10^{-7}$$

$$\text{pH} = -\log(1.0 \times 10^{-7}) = 7.00$$

Finally, when $\text{n}(\text{OH}^-)_0 > \text{n}(\text{H}^+)_0$, there are not enough H_3O^+ ions to neutralize all the OH^- ions, and instead of $\text{n}(\text{H}^+) = \text{n}(\text{H}^+)_0 - \text{n}(\text{OH}^-)_0$, we calculate: $\text{n}(\text{OH}^-) = \text{n}(\text{OH}^-)_0 - \text{n}(\text{H}^+)_0$

In this case:

$$[\text{OH}^-] = \frac{\text{n}(\text{OH}^-)}{V} = \frac{0.100\ M \times \text{X mL} \times \left(\frac{1\text{ L}}{1000\text{ mL}}\right) - 0.002500 \text{ mol}}{(25.00 \text{ mL} + \text{X mL})\left(\frac{1\text{ L}}{1000\text{ mL}}\right)}$$

$$= \frac{0.100\ M \times \text{X mL} - 0.002500 \text{ mol} \times \left(\frac{1000\text{ mL}}{1\text{ L}}\right)}{25.00 \text{ mL} + \text{X mL}}$$

then using the definition of pOH and its relationship to pH in room temperature aqueous solutios (Equation 6.2.1):

$$\begin{aligned} pH &= 14 - pOH \\ &= 14 + \log([OH^-]) \end{aligned}$$

Let us now consider the four specific cases presented in this problem:

(a) X = 0 mL

$$[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] = \frac{\text{n}(\text{H}^+)}{V} = \frac{0.002500 \text{ mol} \times \left(\frac{1000 \text{ mL}}{1 \text{ L}}\right)}{25.00 \text{ mL}} = 0.1\ M$$

then using the definition of pH (Equation 6.2.1):

$$\begin{aligned} pH &= -\log(0.100) \\ &= 1.000 \end{aligned}$$

(b) X = 12.50 mL

$$[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] = \frac{\text{n}(\text{H}^+)}{V} = \frac{0.002500 \text{ mol} \times \left(\frac{1000 \text{ mL}}{1 \text{ L}}\right) - 0.100\ M \times 12.50 \text{ mL}}{25.00 \text{ mL} + 12.50 \text{ mL}} = 0.0333\ M$$

then using the definition of pH (Equation 6.2.1):

$$\begin{aligned} pH &= -\log(0.0333) \\ &= 1.477 \end{aligned}$$

(c) X = 25.00 mL

Since the volumes and concentrations of the acid and base solutions are the same:

$$\text{n}(\text{H}^+)_0 = \text{n}(\text{OH}^-)_0$$

and

$$pH = 7.000$$

as described earlier.

(d) X = 37.50 mL

In this case:

$$\mathrm{n(OH^-)_0 > n(H^+)_0}$$

$$[\mathrm{OH^-}] = \frac{\mathrm{n(OH^-)}}{V} = \frac{0.100\ M \times 35.70\ \mathrm{mL} - 0.002500\ \mathrm{mol} \times \left(\frac{1000\ \mathrm{mL}}{1\ \mathrm{L}}\right)}{25.00\ \mathrm{mL} + 37.50\ \mathrm{mL}} = 0.0200\ M$$

then using the definition of pH (Equation 6.2.1):

$$\begin{aligned}[pH = 14 - pOH \\ &= 14 + \log([OH^-]) \\ &= 14 + \log(0.0200) \\ &= 12.30\end{aligned}$$

Exercise 6.2.1

Calculate the pH for the strong acid/strong base titration between 50.0 mL of 0.100 *M* $HNO_3(aq)$ and 0.200 *M* NaOH (titrant) at the listed volumes of added base:

a. 0.00 mL,
b. 15.0 mL,
c. 25.0 mL, and
d. 40.0 mL.

Answer a

0.00: 1.000

Answer b

15.0: 1.5111

Answer c

25.0: 7e. Do not delete this text first.

Answer d

40.0: 12.523

In Example 6.2.1, we calculated pH at four points during a titration. Table 6.2.1 shows a detailed sequence of changes in the pH of a strong acid and a weak acid in a titration with NaOH.

Table 6.2.1: pH Values in the Titrations of a Strong Acid with a Strong Base and of a Weak Acid with a Strong Base

Volume of 0.100 M NaOH Added (mL)	Moles of NaOH Added	pH Values 0.100 M HCl[1]	pH Values 0.100 M CH_3CO_2H[2]
0.0	0.0	1.00	2.87
5.0	0.00050	1.18	4.14
10.0	0.00100	1.37	4.57
15.0	0.00150	1.60	4.92
20.0	0.00200	1.95	5.35

Volume of 0.100 M NaOH Added (mL)	Moles of NaOH Added	pH Values 0.100 M HCl[1]	pH Values 0.100 M CH_3CO_2H[2]
22.0	0.00220	2.20	5.61
24.0	0.00240	2.69	6.13
24.5	0.00245	3.00	6.44
24.9	0.00249	3.70	7.14
25.0	0.00250	7.00	8.72
25.1	0.00251	10.30	10.30
25.5	0.00255	11.00	11.00
26.0	0.00260	11.29	11.29
28.0	0.00280	11.75	11.75
30.0	0.00300	11.96	11.96
35.0	0.00350	12.22	12.22
40.0	0.00400	12.36	12.36
45.0	0.00450	12.46	12.46
50.0	0.00500	12.52	12.52

1. Titration of 25.00 mL of 0.100 *M* HCl (0.00250 mol of HCl) with 0.100 *M* NaOH.
2. Titration of 25.00 mL of 0.100 *M* CH_3CO_2H (0.00250 mol of CH_3CO_2H) with 0.100 *M* NaOH.

The simplest acid-base reactions are those of a strong acid with a strong base. Table 6.2.1 shows data for the titration of a 25.0-mL sample of 0.100 *M* hydrochloric acid with 0.100 *M* sodium hydroxide. The values of the pH measured after successive additions of small amounts of NaOH are listed in the first column of this table, and are graphed in Figure 6.2.1, in a form that is called a titration curve. The pH increases slowly at first, increases rapidly in the middle portion of the curve, and then increases slowly again. The point of inflection (located at the midpoint of the vertical part of the curve) is the equivalence point for the titration. It indicates when equivalent quantities of acid and base are present. For the titration of a strong acid with a strong base, the equivalence point occurs at a pH of 7.00 and the points on the titration curve can be calculated using solution stoichiometry (Table 6.2.1 and Figure 6.2.1).

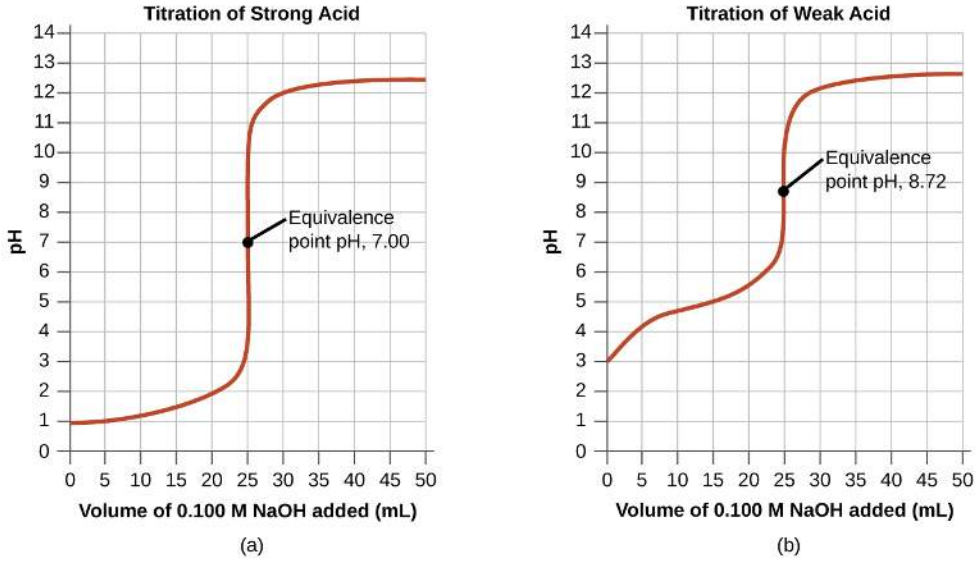


Figure 6.2.1: (a) The titration curve for the titration of 25.00 mL of 0.100 M HCl (strong acid) with 0.100 M NaOH (strong base) has an equivalence point of 7.00 pH. (b) The titration curve for the titration of 25.00 mL of 0.100 M CH_3CO_2H (weak acid) with 0.100 M NaOH (strong base) has an equivalence point of 8.72 pH.

Two graphs are shown. The first graph on the left is titled “Titration of Weak Acid.” The horizontal axis is labeled “Volume of 0.100 M N a O H added (m L).” Markings and vertical gridlines are provided every 5 units from 0 to 50. The vertical axis is labeled “p H” and is marked every 1 unis beginning at 0 extending to 14. A red curve is drawn on the graph which increases steadily from the point (0, 3) up to about (20, 5.5) after which the graph has a vertical section from (25, 7) up to (25, 11). The graph then levels off to a value of about 12.5 from about 40 m L up to 50 m L. The midpoint of the vertical segment of the curve is labeled “Equivalence point p H, 8.72.” The second graph on the right is titled “Titration of Strong Acid.” The horizontal axis is labeled “Volume of 0.100 M N a O H added (m L).” Markings and vertical gridlines are provided every 5 units from 0 to 50. The vertical axis is labeled “p H” and is marked every 1 units beginning at 0 extending to 14. A red curve is drawn on the graph which increases gradually from the point (0, 1) up to about (22.5, 2.2) after which the graph has a vertical section from (25, 4) up to nearly (25, 11). The graph then levels off to a value of about 12.4 from about 40 m L up to 50 m L. The midpoint of the vertical segment of the curve is labeled “Equivalence point p H, 7.00.”

The titration of a weak acid with a strong base (or of a weak base with a strong acid) is somewhat more complicated than that just discussed, but it follows the same general principles. Let us consider the titration of 25.0 mL of 0.100 *M* acetic acid (a weak acid) with 0.100 *M* sodium hydroxide and compare the titration curve with that of the strong acid. Table 6.2.1 gives the pH values during the titration, Figure 6.2.1*b* shows the titration curve.

Although the initial volume and molarity of the acids are the same, there are important differences between the two titration curves. The titration curve for the weak acid begins at a higher value (less acidic) and maintains higher pH values up to the equivalence point. This is because acetic acid is a weak acid, which is only partially ionized. The pH at the equivalence point is also higher (8.72 rather than 7.00) due to the hydrolysis of acetate, a weak base that raises the pH:

$$CH_3CO_2^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons CH_3CO_2H(l) + OH^-(aq)$$

After the equivalence point, the two curves are identical because the pH is dependent on the excess of hydroxide ion in both cases.

Example 6.2.2: Titration of a Weak Acid with a Strong Base

The titration curve shown in Figure 6.2.1*b* is for the titration of 25.00 mL of 0.100 *M* CH_3CO_2H with 0.100 *M* NaOH. The reaction can be represented as:

$$CH_3CO_2H + OH^- \longrightarrow CH_3CO_2^- + H_2O$$

a. What is the initial pH before any amount of the NaOH solution has been added? $K_a = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$ for CH_3CO_2H.
b. Find the pH after 25.00 mL of the NaOH solution have been added.
c. Find the pH after 12.50 mL of the NaOH solution has been added.
d. Find the pH after 37.50 mL of the NaOH solution has been added.

Solution

(a) Assuming that the dissociated amount is small compared to 0.100 *M*, we find that:

$$K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+][CH_3CO_2^-]}{[CH_3CO_2H]} \approx \frac{[H_3O^+]^2}{[CH_3CO_2H]_0}$$

and

$$[H_3O^+] = \sqrt{K_a \times [CH_3CO_2H]} = \sqrt{1.8 \times 10^{-5} \times 0.100} = 1.3 \times 10^{-3}$$

$$pH = -\log(1.3 \times 10^{-3}) = 2.87$$

(b) After 25.00 mL of NaOH are added, the number of moles of NaOH and CH_3CO_2H are equal because the amounts of the solutions and their concentrations are the same. All of the CH_3CO_2H has been converted to $CH_3CO_2^-$. The concentration of the $CH_3CO_2^-$ ion is:

$$\frac{0.00250 \text{ mol}}{0.0500 \text{ L}} = 0.0500 \text{ M} CH_3CO_2^-$$

The equilibrium that must be focused on now is the basicity equilibrium for $CH_3CO_2^-$:

$$CH_3CO_2^-(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons CH_3CO_2H(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

so we must determine K_b for the base by using the ion product constant for water:

$$K_b = \frac{[CH_3CO_2H][OH^-]}{[CH_3CO_2^-]}$$

$$K_a = \frac{[CH_3CO_2^-][H^+]}{[CH_3CO_2H]}, \text{ so } \frac{[CH_3CO_2H]}{[CH_3CO_2^-]} = \frac{[H^+]}{K_a}.$$

Since $K_w = [H^+][OH^-]$:

$$K_b = \frac{[H^+][OH^-]}{K_a} \tag{6.2.2}$$

$$= \frac{K_w}{K_a} \tag{6.2.3}$$

$$= \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{1.8 \times 10^{-5}} \tag{6.2.4}$$

$$= 5.6 \times 10^{-10} \tag{6.2.5}$$

Let us denote the concentration of each of the products of this reaction, CH_3CO_2H and OH^-, as *x*. Using the assumption that *x* is small compared to 0.0500 *M*, $K_b = \frac{x^2}{0.0500\ M}$, and then:

$$x = [OH^-] = 5.3 \times 10^{-6}$$

$$pOH = -\log(5.3 \times 10^{-6}) = 5.28$$

$$pH = 14.00 - 5.28 = 8.72$$

Note that the pH at the equivalence point of this titration is significantly greater than 7.

(c) In (a), 25.00 mL of the NaOH solution was added, and so practically all the CH_3CO_2H was converted into $CH_3CO_2^-$. In this case, only 12.50 mL of the base solution has been introduced, and so only half of all the CH_3CO_2H is converted into $CH_3CO_2^-$. The total initial number of moles of CH_3CO_2H is 0.02500L × 0.100 $\underline{M}$ = 0.00250 mol, and so after adding the NaOH, the numbers of moles of CH_3CO_2H and $CH_3CO_2^-$ are both approximately equal to $\frac{0.00250 \text{ mol}}{2} = 0.00125 \text{ mol}$, and their concentrations are the same.

Since the amount of the added base is smaller than the original amount of the acid, the equivalence point has not been reached, the solution remains a buffer, and we can use the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation:

$$\text{pH} = \text{p}K_\text{a} + \log\frac{[\text{Base}]}{[\text{Acid}]} = -\log(K_\text{a}) + \log\frac{[\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2^-]}{[\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}]} = -\log(1.8\times10^{-5}) + \log(1)$$

(as the concentrations of CH_3CO_2^- and $\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ are the same)

Thus:

$$\text{pH} = -\log(1.8\times10^{-5}) = 4.74$$

(the pH = the pK_a at the halfway point in a titration of a weak acid)

(d) After 37.50 mL of NaOH is added, the amount of NaOH is 0.03750 L × 0.100 *M* = 0.003750 mol NaOH. Since this is past the equivalence point, the excess hydroxide ions will make the solution basic, and we can again use stoichiometric calculations to determine the pH:

$$[\text{OH}^-] = \frac{(0.003750\text{ mol} - 0.00250\text{ mol})}{0.06250\text{ L}} = 2.00\times10^{-2}\ M$$

So:

$$\text{pOH} = -\log(2.00\times10^{-2}) = 1.70,\ \text{and pH} = 14.00 - 1.70 = 12.30$$

Note that this result is the same as for the strong acid-strong base titration example provided, since the amount of the strong base added moves the solution past the equivalence point.

? Exercise 6.2.2

Calculate the pH for the weak acid/strong base titration between 50.0 mL of 0.100 *M* HCOOH(*aq*) (formic acid) and 0.200 *M* NaOH (titrant) at the listed volumes of added base:

a. 0.00 mL,
b. 15.0 mL,
c. 25.0 mL, and
d. 30.0 mL.

Answer a

0.00 mL: 2.37

Answer b

15.0 mL: 3.92

Answer c

25.00 mL: 8.29

Answer d

30.0 mL: 12.097

Acid-Base Indicators

Certain organic substances change color in dilute solution when the hydronium ion concentration reaches a particular value. For example, phenolphthalein is a colorless substance in any aqueous solution with a hydronium ion concentration greater than 5.0 × 10^{-9} *M* (pH < 8.3). In more basic solutions where the hydronium ion concentration is less than 5.0 × 10^{-9} *M* (pH > 8.3), it is red or pink. Substances such as phenolphthalein, which can be used to determine the pH of a solution, are called acid-base indicators. Acid-base indicators are either weak organic acids or weak organic bases.

The equilibrium in a solution of the acid-base indicator methyl orange, a weak acid, can be represented by an equation in which we use HIn as a simple representation for the complex methyl orange molecule:

$$\underbrace{\text{HIn(aq)}}_{\text{red}} + \text{H}_2\text{O(l)} \rightleftharpoons \text{H}_3\text{O}^+\text{(aq)} + \underbrace{\text{In}^-\text{(aq)}}_{\text{yellow}}$$

$$K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+][In^-]}{[HIn]} = 4.0 \times 10^{-4}$$

The anion of methyl orange, In^-, is yellow, and the nonionized form, HIn, is red. When we add acid to a solution of methyl orange, the increased hydronium ion concentration shifts the equilibrium toward the nonionized red form, in accordance with Le Chatelier's principle. If we add base, we shift the equilibrium towards the yellow form. This behavior is completely analogous to the action of buffers.

An indicator's color is the visible result of the ratio of the concentrations of the two species In^- and HIn. If most of the indicator (typically about 60−90% or more) is present as In^-, then we see the color of the In^- ion, which would be yellow for methyl orange. If most is present as HIn, then we see the color of the HIn molecule: red for methyl orange. For methyl orange, we can rearrange the equation for K_a and write:

$$\frac{[In^-]}{[HIn]} = \frac{[\text{substance with yellow color}]}{[\text{substance with red color}]} = \frac{K_a}{[H_3O^+]} \tag{6.2.6}$$

Equation 6.2.6 shows us how the ratio of $\frac{[In^-]}{[HIn]}$ varies with the concentration of hydronium ion. The above expression describing the indicator equilibrium can be rearranged:

$$\frac{[H_3O^+]}{K_a} = \frac{[HIn]}{[In^-]} \tag{6.2.7}$$

$$\log\left(\frac{[H_3O^+]}{K_a}\right) = \log\left(\frac{[HIn]}{[In^-]}\right) \tag{6.2.8}$$

$$\log([H_3O^+]) - \log(K_a) = -\log\left(\frac{[In^-]}{[HIn]}\right) \tag{6.2.9}$$

$$-pH + pK_a = -\log\left(\frac{[In^-]}{[HIn]}\right) \tag{6.2.10}$$

$$pH = pK_a + \log\left(\frac{[In^-]}{[HIn]}\right) \tag{6.2.11}$$

or in general terms

$$pH = pK_a + \log\left(\frac{[base]}{[acid]}\right) \tag{6.2.12}$$

Equation 6.2.12 is the same as the *Henderson-Hasselbalch equation*, which can be used to describe the equilibrium of indicators.

When $[H_3O^+]$ has the same numerical value as K_a, the ratio of $[In^-]$ to [HIn] is equal to 1, meaning that 50% of the indicator is present in the red form (HIn) and 50% is in the yellow ionic form (In^-), and the solution appears orange in color. When the hydronium ion concentration increases to 8×10^{-4} *M* (a pH of 3.1), the solution turns red. No change in color is visible for any further increase in the hydronium ion concentration (decrease in pH). At a hydronium ion concentration of 4×10^{-5} *M* (a pH of 4.4), most of the indicator is in the yellow ionic form, and a further decrease in the hydronium ion concentration (increase in pH) does not produce a visible color change. The pH range between 3.1 (red) and 4.4 (yellow) is the color-change interval of methyl orange; the pronounced color change takes place between these pH values.

There are many different acid-base indicators that cover a wide range of pH values and can be used to determine the approximate pH of an unknown solution by a process of elimination. Universal indicators and pH paper contain a mixture of indicators and exhibit different colors at different pHs. Figure 6.2.2 presents several indicators, their colors, and their color-change intervals.

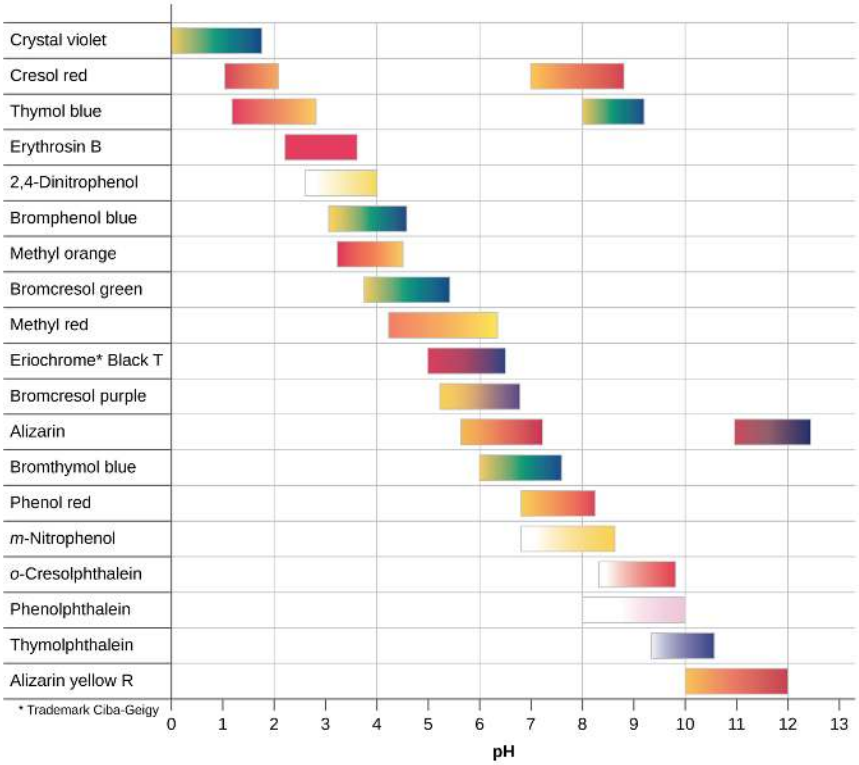


Figure 6.2.2: This chart illustrates the ranges of color change for several acid-base indicators.

Titration curves help us pick an indicator that will provide a sharp color change at the equivalence point. The best selection would be an indicator that has a color change interval that brackets the pH at the equivalence point of the titration.

The color change intervals of three indicators are shown in Figure 6.2.3. The equivalence points of both the titration of the strong acid and of the weak acid are located in the color-change interval of phenolphthalein. We can use it for titrations of either strong acid with strong base or weak acid with strong base.

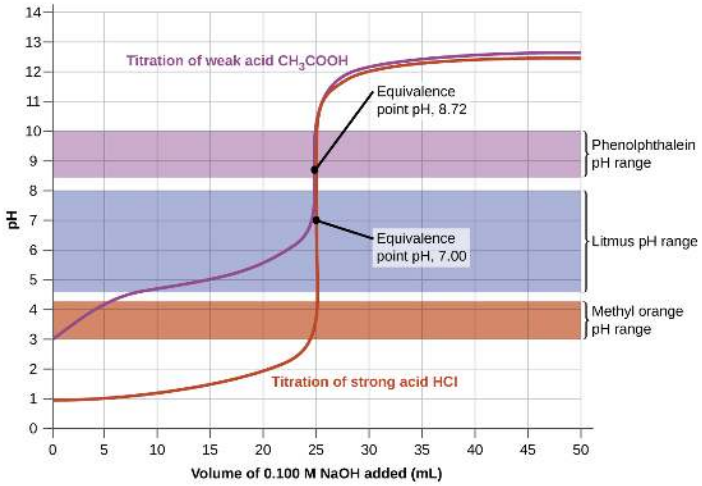


Figure 6.2.3: The graph shows a titration curve for the titration of 25.00 mL of 0.100 M CH_3CO_2H (weak acid) with 0.100 M NaOH (strong base) and the titration curve for the titration of HCl (strong acid) with NaOH (strong base). The pH ranges for the color change of phenolphthalein, litmus, and methyl orange are indicated by the shaded areas.

A graph is shown which is titled “Titration of Weak Acid.” The horizontal axis is labeled “Volume of 0.100 M N a O H added (m L)” and begins at 0 with markings every 5 units up to 50. The vertical axis is labeled “p H” and begins at 0 and increases by single units up to 14. A red curve is drawn on the graph. The curve begins at (0, 3) and passes through the points (5, 4.1), (10, 4.7), (15, 5), (20, 5.5), and (22.5, 6), after which it rapidly increases, forming a vertical section centered at the point (25, 8.7). The rapid increase of the curve then levels off and the curve passes through the points (30, 12), (35, 12.4), (40, 12.5), (45, 12.6), and (50, 12.6). A brown rectangle extends horizontally across the graph covering the p H of 3 to 4.2 range. To the right, this rectangle is labeled “Methyl orange p H range.” A blue rectangle extends horizontally across the graph covering the p H of 4.6 to 8 range. To the right, this rectangle is labeled “Litmus p H range.” A purple rectangle extends horizontally across the graph covering the p H of 8.4 to 10 range. To the right, this rectangle is labeled “Phenolphthalein p H range.” The midpoint of the vertical segment of the curve is labeled “Equivalence point p H, 8.72.”

Litmus is a suitable indicator for the HCl titration because its color change brackets the equivalence point. However, we should not use litmus for the CH_3CO_2H titration because the pH is within the color-change interval of litmus when only about 12 mL of NaOH has been added, and it does not leave the range until 25 mL has been added. The color change would be very gradual, taking place during the addition of 13 mL of NaOH, making litmus useless as an indicator of the equivalence point.

We could use methyl orange for the HCl titration, but it would not give very accurate results: (1) It completes its color change slightly before the equivalence point is reached (but very close to it, so this is not too serious); (2) it changes color, as Figure 6.2.2 demonstrates, during the addition of nearly 0.5 mL of NaOH, which is not so sharp a color change as that of litmus or phenolphthalein; and (3) it goes from yellow to orange to red, making detection of a precise endpoint much more challenging than the colorless to pink change of phenolphthalein. Figure 6.2.2 shows us that methyl orange would be completely useless as an indicator for the CH_3CO_2H titration. Its color change begins after about 1 mL of NaOH has been added and ends when about 8 mL has been added. The color change is completed long before the equivalence point (which occurs when 25.0 mL of NaOH has been added) is reached and hence provides no indication of the equivalence point.

We base our choice of indicator on a calculated pH, the pH at the equivalence point. At the equivalence point, equimolar amounts of acid and base have been mixed, and the calculation becomes that of the pH of a solution of the salt resulting from the titration.

Summary

A titration curve is a graph that relates the change in pH of an acidic or basic solution to the volume of added titrant. The characteristics of the titration curve are dependent on the specific solutions being titrated. The pH of the solution at the equivalence point may be greater than, equal to, or less than 7.00. The choice of an indicator for a given titration depends on the expected pH at the equivalence point of the titration, and the range of the color change of the indicator.

Glossary

acid-base indicator

organic acid or base whose color changes depending on the pH of the solution it is in

color-change interval

range in pH over which the color change of an indicator takes place

titration curve

plot of the pH of a solution of acid or base versus the volume of base or acid added during a titration

---

This page titled 6.2: Acid-Base Titrations is shared under a CC BY license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax.

- **14.7: Acid-Base Titrations** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

Index

A

acid ionization
5.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases
acid ionization constant
5.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases
acidic
5.2: pH and pOH
amorphous solid
3.4: The Solid State of Matter
amphiprotic
5.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases
amphoteric
5.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases
atomic mass
1.11: Molar Mass
atomic mass units
1.11: Molar Mass
atomic theory
1.6: Atomic Theory
atoms
1.6: Atomic Theory
autoionization
5.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases
Avogadro’s hypothesis
1.10: Measurement and Scale - The Mole Concept
Avogadro’s number
1.10: Measurement and Scale - The Mole Concept
axial position
2.10: Molecular Structure and Polarity

B

base ionization
5.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases
base ionization constant
5.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases
basic
5.2: pH and pOH
bond angle
2.10: Molecular Structure and Polarity
bond dipole moment
2.10: Molecular Structure and Polarity
bond distance
2.10: Molecular Structure and Polarity
bond length
2.3: Covalent Bonding
buffer
6.1: Buffers
buffer capacity
6.1: Buffers

C

common ion effect
4.6: Precipitation and Dissolution
complex ion
5.6: Lewis Acids and Bases
conjugate acid
5.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases
conjugate base
5.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases
conversion factor
1.5: Converting Units
coordinate covalent bond
5.6: Lewis Acids and Bases
covalent bond
2.3: Covalent Bonding
covalent network solid
3.4: The Solid State of Matter
crystalline solid
3.4: The Solid State of Matter

D

dimensional analysis
1.5: Converting Units
dipole moment
2.10: Molecular Structure and Polarity
diprotic acid
5.5: Polyprotic Acids
diprotic base
5.5: Polyprotic Acids
dissociation constant
5.6: Lewis Acids and Bases
double bond
2.6: Lewis Symbols and Structures

E

electron
1.6: Atomic Theory
electronegativity
2.3: Covalent Bonding
equatorial position
2.10: Molecular Structure and Polarity
equilibrium
4.2: Chemical Equilibria
equilibrium constant
4.3: Equilibrium Constants
exact number
1.5: Converting Units

F

formal charge
2.7: Formal Charges and Resonance
formation constant
5.6: Lewis Acids and Bases
Formula Mass
1.11: Molar Mass
free radical
2.6: Lewis Symbols and Structures

G

g/mol
1.11: Molar Mass
gas
3.9: Kinetic Theory of Gases
gases
3.9: Kinetic Theory of Gases
gimli flier
1.5: Converting Units
grams per mole
1.11: Molar Mass
1.12: Mole-Mass Conversions

H

Henry's Law
3.12: Solubility
heterogeneous equilibria
4.3: Equilibrium Constants
homogeneous equilibria
4.3: Equilibrium Constants
hypervalent molecule
2.6: Lewis Symbols and Structures

I

ideal gas
3.9: Kinetic Theory of Gases
immiscible
3.12: Solubility
inert pair effect
2.2: Ionic Bonding
interstitial sites
3.4: The Solid State of Matter
ionic bond
2.2: Ionic Bonding
ionic solid
3.4: The Solid State of Matter
isotopic atomic mass
1.11: Molar Mass

K

Kc
4.3: Equilibrium Constants
kinetic theory
3.9: Kinetic Theory of Gases
kinetic theory of gases
3.9: Kinetic Theory of Gases
Kp
4.3: Equilibrium Constants

L

Law of Mass Action
4.3: Equilibrium Constants
Le Chatelier's principle
4.4: Shifting Equilibria - Le Chatelier’s Principle
leveling effect of water
5.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases
Lewis acid
5.6: Lewis Acids and Bases
Lewis base
5.6: Lewis Acids and Bases
Lewis structure
2.6: Lewis Symbols and Structures
Lewis symbol
2.6: Lewis Symbols and Structures
ligand
5.6: Lewis Acids and Bases
limiting reactant
1.16: Calculations Involving a Limiting Reactant
linear
2.10: Molecular Structure and Polarity
lone pair
2.6: Lewis Symbols and Structures

M

matter
1.6: Atomic Theory
metallic solid
3.4: The Solid State of Matter
miscible
3.12: Solubility
molar
1.13: Concentration and Molarity
molar mass
1.11: Molar Mass
1.12: Mole-Mass Conversions
molar solubility
4.6: Precipitation and Dissolution
molarity
1.13: Concentration and Molarity
mole
1.11: Molar Mass
molecular mass
1.11: Molar Mass
molecular solid
3.4: The Solid State of Matter
molecular structure
2.7: Formal Charges and Resonance
2.10: Molecular Structure and Polarity
molecules per mole
1.12: Mole-Mass Conversions
monoprotic acid
5.5: Polyprotic Acids

N

neutral
5.2: pH and pOH
neutron
1.6: Atomic Theory
nonpolar covalent bond
2.3: Covalent Bonding

O

octahedral
2.10: Molecular Structure and Polarity
octet rule
2.6: Lewis Symbols and Structures
oxyacid
5.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases

P

partially miscible
3.12: Solubility
percent of ionization
5.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases
pH
5.2: pH and pOH
pOH
5.2: pH and pOH
polar covalent bond
2.3: Covalent Bonding
polar molecule
2.10: Molecular Structure and Polarity
polyatomic ions
1.8: Polyatomic Ions
position of equilibrium
4.4: Shifting Equilibria - Le Chatelier's Principle
proton
1.6: Atomic Theory
pure covalent bond
2.3: Covalent Bonding

R

ratio
1.12: Mole-Mass Conversions
reaction quotient
4.3: Equilibrium Constants
resonance
2.7: Formal Charges and Resonance
resonance forms
2.7: Formal Charges and Resonance
resonance hybrid
2.7: Formal Charges and Resonance
reversible reaction
4.2: Chemical Equilibria

S

saturated
1.13: Concentration and Molarity
3.12: Solubility
scale
1.10: Measurement and Scale - The Mole Concept
selective precipitation
4.6: Precipitation and Dissolution
significant figures
1.4: Significant Figures
single bond
2.6: Lewis Symbols and Structures
solubility
3.12: Solubility
solubility product
4.6: Precipitation and Dissolution
stepwise ionization
5.5: Polyprotic Acids
stress
4.4: Shifting Equilibria - Le Chatelier's Principle
supersaturated
3.12: Solubility

T

Tetrahedral
2.10: Molecular Structure and Polarity
titration curve
6.2: Acid-Base Titrations
trigonal bipyramidal
2.10: Molecular Structure and Polarity
Trigonal Planar
2.10: Molecular Structure and Polarity
triple bond
2.6: Lewis Symbols and Structures
triprotic acid
5.5: Polyprotic Acids

U

unit conversion
1.12: Mole-Mass Conversions
unsaturated
3.12: Solubility

V

vacancy
3.4: The Solid State of Matter
valence shell electron pair repulsion theory
2.10: Molecular Structure and Polarity
VSEPR
2.10: Molecular Structure and Polarity

W

water gas shift reaction
4.3: Equilibrium Constants

Glossary

Sample Word 1 | Sample Definition 1

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: AUCHE 110: General Chemistry I (Rempel)

Webpages: 69

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- Undeclared: 37.7% (26 pages)
- CC BY 4.0: 33.3% (23 pages)
- CC BY-NC-SA 4.0: 21.7% (15 pages)
- CC BY-SA 4.0: 7.2% (5 pages)

By Page

- AUCHE 110: General Chemistry I (Rempel) - *Undeclared*
  - Front Matter - *Undeclared*
    - TitlePage - *Undeclared*
    - InfoPage - *Undeclared*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - 1: Review - *Undeclared*
    - 1.1: The Scientific Method - *Undeclared*
    - 1.2: SI Units - *Undeclared*
    - 1.3: Measurements - *Undeclared*
    - 1.4: Significant Figures - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.5: Converting Units - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.6: Atomic Theory - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.7: Molecules and Ions - *Undeclared*
    - 1.8: Polyatomic Ions - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
    - 1.9: An Introduction to the Periodic Table - *Undeclared*
    - 1.10: Measurement and Scale - The Mole Concept - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
    - 1.11: Molar Mass - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
    - 1.12: Mole-Mass Conversions - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
    - 1.13: Concentration and Molarity - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
    - 1.14: Balancing Chemical Equations - *Undeclared*
    - 1.15: Stoichiometric Calculations- Amounts of Reactants and Products - *Undeclared*
    - 1.16: Calculations Involving a Limiting Reactant - *Undeclared*
  - 2: Molecules and Shapes - *Undeclared*
    - 2.1: Prelude to Chemical Bonding and Molecular Geometry - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.2: Ionic Bonding - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.3: Covalent Bonding - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.4: Metallic Bonds - *Undeclared*
    - 2.5: Electronegativity - *Undeclared*
    - 2.6: Lewis Symbols and Structures - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.7: Formal Charges and Resonance - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.8: Organic Structural Representations- Bond-Line Notation - *Undeclared*
    - 2.9: Functional Groups and Classes of Organic Compounds - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.10: Molecular Structure and Polarity - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 3: States of Matter - *Undeclared*
    - 3.1: Overview of States of Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.2: Intermolecular forces - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.3: Crystalline and Amorphous Solids - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.4: The Solid State of Matter - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.5: Gaseous Elements and Compounds - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.6: Gas Pressure - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.7: The Ideal Gas Law - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.8: Gas Mixtures - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.9: Kinetic Theory of Gases - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.10: Real Gases - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.11: Unique Properties of Liquids - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.12: Solubility - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.13: Vapor Pressure - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 4: Equilibrium - *Undeclared*
    - 4.1: Prelude to Equilibrium - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.2: Chemical Equilibria - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.3: Equilibrium Constants - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.4: Shifting Equilibria - Le Chatelier's Principle - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.5: Equilibrium Calculations - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.6: Precipitation and Dissolution - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 5: Acids and Bases - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 5.1: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 5.2: pH and pOH - *CC BY 4.0*

- 5.3: Relative Strengths of Acids and Bases - *CC BY 4.0*
- 5.4: Hydrolysis of Salt Solutions - *CC BY 4.0*
- 5.5: Polyprotic Acids - *CC BY 4.0*
- 5.6: Lewis Acids and Bases - *CC BY 4.0*

6: Buffers and Titrations - *Undeclared*

- 6.1: Buffers - *CC BY 4.0*
- 6.2: Acid-Base Titrations - *CC BY 4.0*

Back Matter - *Undeclared*

- Index - *Undeclared*
- Glossary - *Undeclared*
- Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*